

Owner's Manual

e-tron

Warranty entitlement record

Vehicle identification number	
Model, motor output, gearbox, month and year of manufacture	
Motor and gearbox code	
Paint no., interior equipment no.	
Optional equipment no.	

Date of delivery to customer:
Audi dealer's stamp

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi.

Your new Audi is a combination of superb craftsmanship and state-of-the-art technology. We recommend that you read this Owner's Manual carefully so that you quickly become familiar with your vehicle and can take full advantage of all its functions in everyday use.

In addition to information on how to use the controls and equipment, this Manual also contains important information on looking after your vehicle. This is relevant for your safety and will help preserve your car's value. The Manual also offers useful driving tips and advice, together with some suggestions on how to drive your car with minimum impact on the environment.

We wish you safe and enjoyable motoring with your Audi.

AUDI AG



WARNING

Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇒ *page 73*.

Table of Contents

Notes on this Owner's Manual	5	Panorama sun roof	45
Quick reference	6	Garage door opener	46
Getting started	6	Lights and vision	49
Online information	6	Exterior lights	49
FAQs	6	Interior lights	52
Front cabin	8	Clear vision	53
Overview of warning and indicator lamps	9	Wipers	57
Displays and controls	14	Sitting correctly and safely	60
Instrument cluster	14	Correct seating position for vehicle occupants	60
Overview of instrument cluster	14	Front seats	61
Loading a personal profile	14	Steering wheel	64
How to use the multi-function steering wheel	15	Head restraints	65
Selecting the display	15	Seat belts	66
Power meter	16	Memory function	69
Mileage recorder	16	Airbag system	70
Outside temperature display	16	Child restraint systems	73
Vehicle functions	16		
Touch displays	18	Storage and convenience	80
General instructions for using the touch displays	18	Ashtray and cigarette lighter	80
Multi Media Interface	20	Power sources	80
Head-up display	26	Cup holders	81
Description	26	Roof carrier	81
Speech dialogue system	27	Storage compartments	82
General notes	27	Luggage compartment	82
Description	27		
External voice control function	28	Heating and cooling	87
Global functions	29	Air conditioner	87
Other function selector buttons	29	Auxiliary air conditioner	90
Setting off	30		
Personal settings	30	Driving	92
Users	30	Starting the vehicle	92
Doors and windows	32	Driving	93
Central locking system	32	Power unit	96
Keys	37	Brakes	98
Boot lid	41	Electro-mechanical parking brake	99
Child lock	44	Special driving situations	102
Electric windows	44		
		Handling dynamics	105
		Audi drive select	105
		Suspension	106
		Steering	107
		Four-wheel drive (quattro)	108
		Electronic stabilisation control	108

High-voltage system	111	Disconnecting a mobile phone	189
General notes	111	Using the Audi phone box	189
Charging the high-voltage battery	112	Using the telephone	190
Charging equipment	119	Messages	195
Towing a trailer	127	Settings	198
Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan	127	Instrument cluster	200
Removable towing bracket	130	Troubleshooting	200
Assistance systems	134	Audi connect	202
Driver assist systems	134	General information	202
General notes	134	Audi connect infotainment	203
Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings	135	Using the Wi-Fi hotspot	205
Switching systems on/off	137	Audi connect infotainment services	205
Driver information	139	Functions on demand	206
Speed warning function	139	Audi connect vehicle control services	207
Camera-based traffic sign recognition	139	Settings	208
Rest recommendation	141	Troubleshooting	210
Night vision assist	142	Emergency call	212
Driver assistance	145	Overview	212
Speed regulation systems	145	Emergency call	212
Efficiency assist	147	Online roadside assistance call	213
Adaptive cruise assist	150	Information on data processing	214
Distance warning	158	Information about third-party services and other services with added benefit	215
Lane departure warning	159	Navigation	216
Audi pre sense	161	Calling up the navigation menu	216
Side assist	166	myAudi navigation	216
Exit warning system	168	Entering a destination	217
Intersection assist	169	Stopping route guidance	222
Emergency assist	170	Map	222
Parking and manoeuvring	172	Personal route assist	224
Introduction	172	Alternative routes	225
Parking system plus	172	Further functions	225
Reversing camera/surround view cameras	174	Satellite map	227
Rear cross-traffic assist	179	Electric range	227
Assisted parking	180	Map update	228
Park assist	182	Traffic information	229
Settings for parking aids	184	Hazard alerts	230
Infotainment	185	Options and settings	231
Telephone	185	Troubleshooting	234
Introduction	185	Radio	235
Setting up	186	Calling up the radio menu	235
		Radio functions	236
		Options and settings	239
		Troubleshooting	241

Table of Contents

Media	242	Notes on cleaning and care	285
General notes	242	Taking the vehicle out of service	289
SD card reader	242		
DVD drives	242		
Bluetooth audio player	243	Self-help	290
Online media	244	Mobility	290
Amazon Alexa	245	General notes	290
Multimedia connections	245	Equipment	290
Playing media	246	Tyre repair kit	291
Options and settings	250	Changing a wheel	293
Supported media and file formats	252	Collapsible spare wheel	296
Troubleshooting	253	Jump-starting	297
		Towing away	298
TV	255	Fuses and bulbs	301
Introduction	255	Fuses	301
Calling up the TV menu	255	Bulbs	304
TV functions	256		
Further settings	258	Customer information	305
Interference	259	Data protection	305
Receiving encrypted TV channels	259	Image recording	305
Audi smartphone interface	261	Data recorders	305
Setting up	261	Information transmitted	306
Troubleshooting	262	Information on EU Directive 2014/53/EU	308
		Further customer information	308
Further settings	263	Accessories and modifications to the vehicle	309
System settings	263	Maintenance, repairs and technical changes	309
Connected devices	264	Accessories and replacement parts	310
Legal information	265		
Service and care	267	Technical data	312
Checking and topping up fluids	267	Identification data	312
Motor compartment	267	Vehicle data	312
Cooling system	269		
Brake fluid	271	Index	313
Electrical system	271		
Battery	272		
Windscreen washer	273		
Service interval display	274		
Wheels	275		
Tyres and rims	275		
Tyre pressure loss indicator	280		
Tyre pressure monitoring system	281		
Care of vehicle and cleaning	284		
General notes	284		
Washing the vehicle	284		

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of your particular Audi model and contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings.

Please ensure that this Owner's Manual and all associated documents are always kept in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

This manual describes the equipment available for the vehicle at the time of going to print.

Some of the equipment described here will not be available until a later date, or may only be available in certain markets.

Some sections of this Owner's Manual do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the start of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, e.g. "Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function". This optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also marked with an asterisk "*".

Illustrations are intended as a general guide, and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

All references to **positions** such as "left", "right", "front" or "rear" are given as seen facing in the direction of travel.

- * Optional or vehicle-specific equipment
- The section is continued on the following page.

⇒  Refers to a "WARNING" within the same section. If the WARNING symbol is followed by a page number, the warning text referred to is included in a different section.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature.

Getting started

Online information

myAudi

You can access your Owner's Manual in digital form on myAudi using Audi online manuals. You can also find information on Audi Service, the maintenance of your vehicle or the Digital Service Schedule.

Important: You must have created a myAudi account and must have added your vehicle to it.

- ▶ Go online to my.audi.com, or:
- ▶ Start the myAudi app on your mobile device.

Note

Audi online manuals and the Digital Service Schedule are not available in all countries or on all mobile devices.

FAQs

Before you set off

- How do I adjust the seats? [⇒ page 61](#)
- How do I adjust the steering wheel?
[⇒ page 64](#)
- How does the selector lever work? [⇒ page 94](#)
- What is a transmission position and what is a driving program? [⇒ page 94](#)
- How does the electro-mechanical parking brake work? [⇒ page 99](#)
- How do I adjust the exterior mirrors?
[⇒ page 53](#)
- How do I operate the windscreen wipers on vehicles with rain sensor? [⇒ page 57](#)
- Where is the windscreen washer container?
[⇒ page 269](#)
- How can I store the tyre pressures? [⇒ page 281](#) or [⇒ page 283](#)
- How do I drive with a trailer or caravan?
[⇒ page 127](#)

e-tron

- How do I charge my vehicle? [⇒ page 112](#)

- What do I need to consider when setting off in an electric vehicle? [⇒ page 93](#)
- How can I use recuperation to recover energy while driving? [⇒ page 96](#)
- What can I use the paddle levers for in an electric vehicle? [⇒ page 96](#)
- How do I find the next charging station?
[⇒ page 219](#), *Special destinations (points of interest)*
- How can I increase the vehicle's electric range?
[⇒ page 97](#)

Breakdowns and emergencies

- Where can I find the warning triangle?
[⇒ page 290](#)
- Where can I find the first-aid kit? [⇒ page 290](#)
- Where can I find the recommended tyre pressures? [⇒ page 277](#)
- Which airbags are installed in my vehicle?
[⇒ page 70](#)
- Where are the towline anchorages on the vehicle? [⇒ page 298](#)
- How do I release the charging flap or charging connector manually? [⇒ page 118](#)

Useful functions

- How can I use a mobile phone as a key to the vehicle? [⇒ page 32](#) or [⇒ page 39](#)
- How can I open the boot lid with my foot?
[⇒ page 43](#)
- How can I automatically control the distance to the vehicle in front? [⇒ page 150](#)
- How can I have the adaptive cruise assist system react automatically to speed limits and the road ahead? [⇒ page 148](#)
- How can I stay in my lane more easily?
[⇒ page 154](#)
- How can I receive a warning if I don't stay in my lane? [⇒ page 159](#)
- How can I use the parking aid? [⇒ page 172](#)
- How can I safely navigate blind exits and intersections where it is difficult to see? [⇒ page 169](#) or [⇒ page 177](#)
- How can I operate the main beam headlights automatically? [⇒ page 50](#)
- How can I drive off more easily? [⇒ page 101](#)

- How can I check the blind spot more easily when changing lanes? ⇒ *page 166, Side assist*
- How can I change the vehicle set-up in different driving situations depending on my personal mood and driving style? ⇒ *page 105, Audi drive select*
- How can I benefit from using the swerve assist and turn-off assist features? ⇒ *page 164* or ⇒ *page 164*

Displays and controls

- How do I turn on the displays? ⇒ *page 20*
- How do I use the touch displays? ⇒ *page 18*
- How do I adjust the volume? ⇒ *page 29*
- How do I navigate through the menus? ⇒ *page 21*
- How can I enter letters and numbers by handwriting? ⇒ *page 24*
- How can I control functions such as the air conditioning or navigation system by voice? ⇒ *page 27*
- Which functions can I control using the buttons on the steering wheel? ⇒ *page 15* or ⇒ *page 29*
- How can I have information projected onto the windscreen? ⇒ *page 26, Head-up display*
- How can I adjust the brightness of the instrument and display lighting? ⇒ *page 53*

Infotainment

- How can I connect my mobile phone to the handsfree telephone system? ⇒ *page 186*
- How can I switch between connected devices? ⇒ *page 264*
- How can I call up information online? ⇒ *page 202, Audi connect*
- How can I use the Wi-Fi hotspot? ⇒ *page 205*
- What ways are there to enter a navigation destination? ⇒ *page 217*
- How do I operate the map functions? ⇒ *page 222*
- How can I display traffic information? ⇒ *page 229*
- How can I listen to the radio? ⇒ *page 235*
- How can I play media? ⇒ *page 246*

- How can I play music from my mobile phone via the infotainment system? ⇒ *page 243, Bluetooth audio player*

Tips and tricks

- How can I unlock my vehicle from inside to let passengers in? ⇒ *page 34*
- How can I open all the windows from outside using the remote control key? ⇒ *page 45, Convenience open/close function*
- How can I adjust the opening position of the boot lid? ⇒ *page 42*
- How can I operate both sides of the air conditioner together? ⇒ *page 88*
- How can I deactivate the front passenger's airbag? ⇒ *page 73*
- How do I secure a child restraint system? ⇒ *page 73*
- What do I have to be aware of when driving through an automatic car wash? ⇒ *page 284*
- How can I see when the next service date is? ⇒ *page 274*

Front cabin

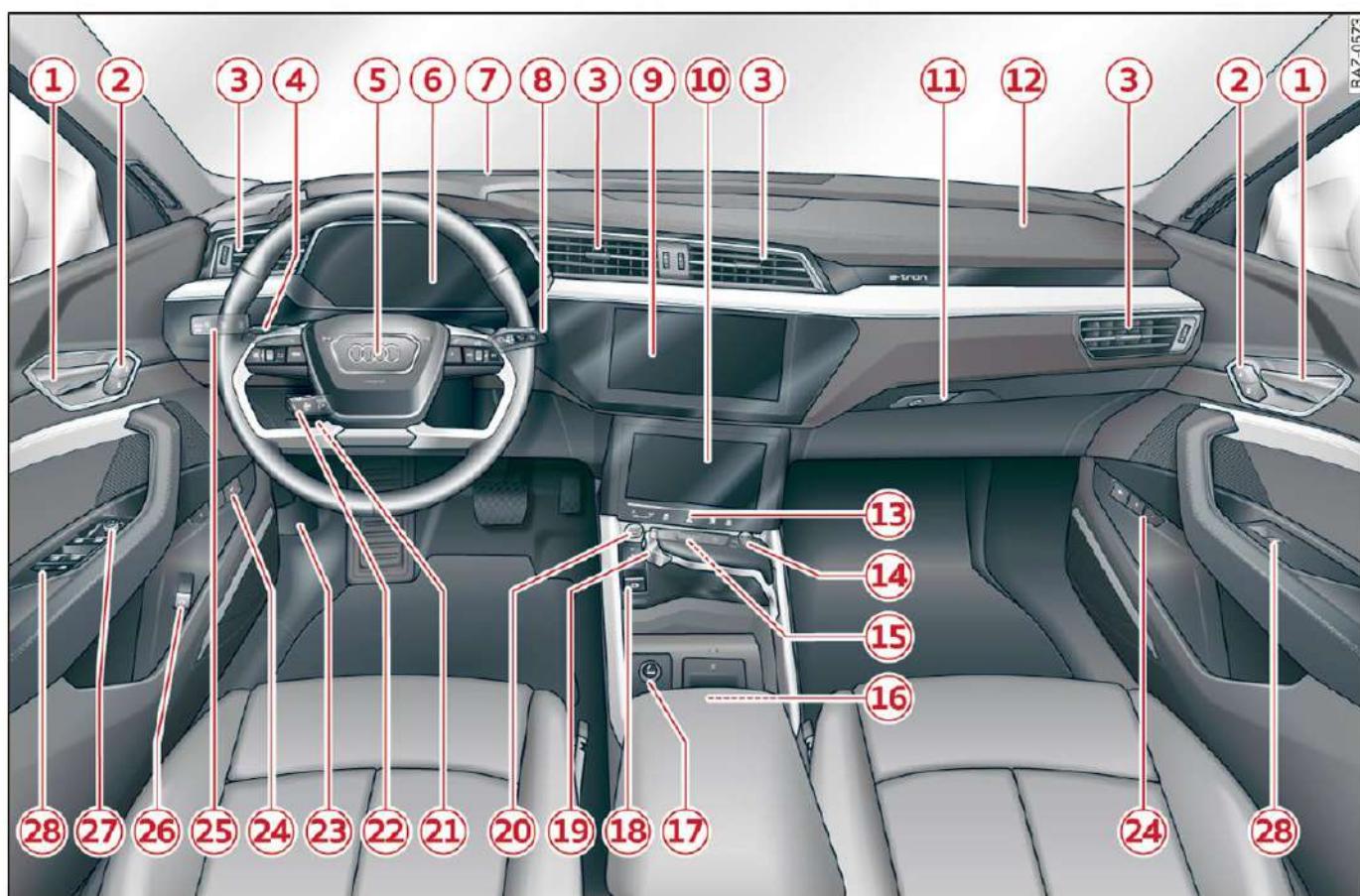


Fig. 1 Front cabin

① Interior door handle	34	⑧ Control lever for windscreen wipers and washer	57
② Central locking switch		⑨ Upper display	20
③ Air outlet		⑩ Lower display	20
④ Control lever for:		⑪ Lockable glove box with:	
– Turn signals and main beam headlights	50	– CD/DVD drive	242
– Main beam assist	50	– Key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag	73
– Lane departure warning	159	⑫ Front passenger's airbag	70
– Lane guidance	154	⑬ Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:	
⑤ Multi-function steering wheel with:		– Drive select	105
– Horn	70	– Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)	110
– Driver's airbag		– Hazard warning lights	52
– Controls for driver information system	15	– Defroster	87
– Controls for audio/video, telephone, navigation system and speech dialogue system	29	– Rear window heating	87
– Paddle levers	96	⑭ On/off button for MMI system	20, 29
⑥ Instrument cluster	14	⑮ Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:	
⑦ Head-up display	26	– Parking aids	172 ►

– Driver assistance systems	137
⑯ Depending on equipment fitted:	
– Cup holder	81
– Ashtray	80
– Audi phone box	189
– Starting the power unit after a malfunction	93
⑰ Depending on equipment fitted:	
– Electrical socket	80
– Cigarette lighter	80
⑯ Switch for electro-mechanical parking brake	99
⑯ Selector lever	94
⑯ START STOP button	92
㉑ Steering wheel adjustment	65
㉒ Control lever for:	
– Speed regulation systems	145
– Adaptive cruise assist	150
㉓ Bonnet lock release	268
㉔ Buttons for memory function	69
㉕ Switches for:	
– Lights	49
– All-weather lights	49
– Rear fog light	49
㉖ Button for boot lid	41
㉗ Adjuster for exterior mirrors	53
㉘ Switches for:	
– Window regulators	44
– Child lock	44

i Note

- Some of the items of equipment listed in this section are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.
- The arrangement of switches and controls on right-hand drive models* may be slightly different from the layout shown on **⇒ page 8**. However, the symbols used to identify the controls are the same.

Overview of warning and indicator lamps

Description

The warning and indicator lamps light up or flash in the instrument cluster. Their purpose is to indicate functions or faults.

Some of the warning and indicator lamps may be accompanied by a driver message and a warning tone. The warning/indicator lamps and driver messages can be masked by further displays. To display a warning or message again, use the controls on the multi-function steering wheel to select the second display tab (driver messages) **⇒ page 15**.

Some of the warning lamps may be displayed in different colours.

⚠ Central warning/indicator lamps

If the warning lamp  or indicator lamp  lights up, note the information in the instrument cluster.

Overview

When you switch on the ignition, some of the warning and indicator lamps light up briefly to show that the associated systems are working properly. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these warning/indicator lamps does not light up, there is a fault in the associated system.

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following warning/indicator lamps are shown:

Red warning lamps

	Central warning lamp ✓ ⇒ page 9
	Brake system ✓ ⇒ page 99, page 102, page 271
	Cooling system ⇒ page 269

	Electrical system ⇒ page 271
	Drive system ⇒ page 97, Electrical system ⇒ page 271, Charging system ⇒ page 119
	Seat belt ✓ ⇒ page 68
	Steering ✓ ⇒ page 107
	Steering lock ⇒ page 107
	Motor start system ⇒ page 93
	Gearbox ⇒ page 96
	Bonnet ⇒ page 268
	Virtual exterior mirror ⇒ page 55
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 158
	Safe start monitor ⇒ page 156, driver intervention prompt ⇒ page 157
	Lane departure warning ⇒ page 160
	Lane departure warning ⇒ page 160
	Distance warning ⇒ page 158
	Audi pre sense ⇒ page 162, intersection assist ⇒ page 169
	Night vision assist ⇒ page 143
	Night vision assist ⇒ page 143

	Air suspension ⇒ page 107
	Charging system ⇒ page 119
	Loose wheel warning ⇒ page 278
Yellow indicator lamps	
	Central indicator lamp ⇒ page 9
	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) ✓ ⇒ page 108
	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) ✓ ⇒ page 108
	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) ⇒ page 110
	Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ✓ ⇒ page 110
	Safety systems ✓ ⇒ page 71
	Brake system ⇒ page 99
	Brake pads ⇒ page 99
	Electro-mechanical parking brake ⇒ page 102
	Door lock ⇒ page 34
	Tyre pressure ⇒ page 280, ⇒ page 281
	Tyre pressure ✓ ⇒ page 280, ⇒ page 281
	Loose wheel warning ⇒ page 278
	Drive system ⇒ page 97
	Drive system ⇒ page 97
	Electrical system ⇒ page 271



	High-voltage battery range ⇒ page 119
	Virtual exterior mirror ⇒ page 56
	Washer fluid level ⇒ page 273
	Windscreen wipers ⇒ page 59
	Key ⇒ page 93
	Battery in vehicle key ⇒ page 39
	Bulb monitor ⇒ page 52
	Adaptive light ⇒ page 52
	Light sensor/rain sensor ⇒ page 52, ⇒ page 59
	Gearbox ⇒ page 96
	Steering lock ⇒ page 107
	Motor start system ⇒ page 93
	Steering ⇒ page 107
	Air suspension ⇒ page 107
	Suspension control ⇒ page 107
	Four-wheel drive ⇒ page 108
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 158
	Distance warning ⇒ page 158
	Lane departure warning ⇒ page 161, adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 158
	Lane departure warning ⇒ page 161

	Audi pre sense ⇒ page 165
	Side assist ⇒ page 167; Exit warning system ⇒ page 168
	Intersection assist ⇒ page 169
	Emergency assist ⇒ page 170
	Emergency call function ⇒ page 213
	Night vision assist ⇒ page 144
	Parking system plus ⇒ page 173
	Park assist ⇒ page 184
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇒ page 179

Further indicator lamps

	Turn signals ⇒ page 50
	Trailer turn signals ⇒ page 128
	Night vision assist ⇒ page 144
	Camera-based traffic sign recognition ⇒ page 141
	Cruise control ⇒ page 146
	Cruise control ⇒ page 145
	Speed limiter ⇒ page 146
	Rear seat belt ✓ ⇒ page 68
	Rear seat belt ✓ ⇒ page 68
	High-voltage battery range ⇒ page 119

	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 151
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 158, Efficiency assist ⇒ page 149
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 151, Efficiency assist ⇒ page 147
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 151
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 155
	Lane guidance of adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 151
	Lane guidance of adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 151
	Efficiency assist ⇒ page 147
	Distance warning ⇒ page 158
	Lane departure warning ⇒ page 160

	Lane departure warning ⇒ page 160
	Lane departure warning ⇒ page 161
	Audi pre sense ✓ ⇒ page 165
	Side assist ⇒ page 167
	Intersection assist ⇒ page 169
	Emergency assist ⇒ page 170
	Door lock ⇒ page 34
	Electro-mechanical parking brake ⇒ page 102
	Hold assist ⇒ page 99, ⇒ page 101
	Hill hold assist ⇒ page 102
	Downhill assist function ⇒ page 103
	Downhill assist function ⇒ page 103
	Key ⇒ page 93
	Air suspension ⇒ page 107
	Speed warning function ⇒ page 139
	Speed limiter ⇒ page 145
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇒ page 179
	Park assist ⇒ page 184
	Rest recommendation ⇒ page 141
	Virtual exterior mirror ⇒ page 56
	Dipped headlights ⇒ page 49



	Side lights ⇒ page 49
	Main beam headlights ⇒ page 50
 AUTO	Main beam assist ⇒ page 50
 AUTO	Main beam assist ⇒ page 50
	Charging system ⇒ page 119
	Child lock ⇒ page 44
	

Instrument cluster

Overview of instrument cluster



Fig. 2 Overview of instrument cluster (Audi virtual cockpit)

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following content may be displayed in the instrument cluster:

① Left dial	
– Power meter	16
– Charge level of high-voltage battery	
② Tab area	15
③ Central area	15
④ Status line (one or two lines)	
⑤ Right dial	
– Convenience display	
⑥ Additional display on right with speedometer	
⑦ Additional display on left with:	
– Transmission position	94
– Audi drive select	105

i Note

- You can change the measurement units for temperature or speed, etc. via the infotainment system *⇒ page 263*.
- If there is a fault in the instruments, the letters DEF appear in the trip recorder display. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible.

- Certain contents of the instrument cluster can also be projected onto the head-up display* *⇒ page 26*.
- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Loading a personal profile



Fig. 3 Instrument cluster: Loading a personal profile

You can manage your personal profiles on the MMI *⇒ page 30*. Before driving off, you can select your personal profile in the instrument cluster. This will allow you to apply individual vehicle settings such as the seating position.

Important: The driver's door must have been opened, and the ignition must not be switched on.

► Confirm the profile shown ①, or

- ▶ Select and confirm **Change profile** ② to select a different profile.
- ▶ Select and confirm the desired profile. The settings stored for this user will be loaded.
- ▶ To interrupt the adjustment of the seat, mirror and steering wheel, select **Cancel**.

Note

For more information and options for using personal profiles, refer to [page 30](#).

How to use the multi-function steering wheel



Fig. 4 Instrument cluster: Driver information system

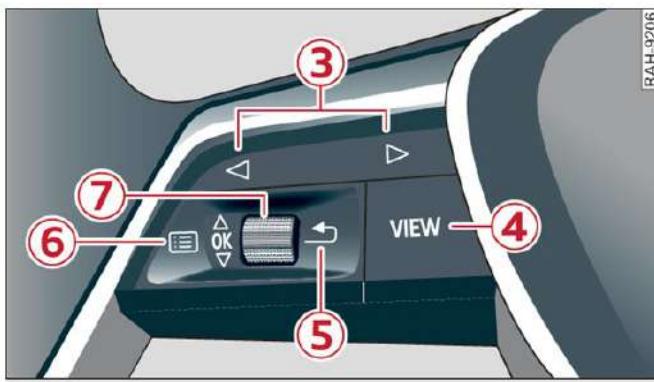


Fig. 5 Left side of multi-function steering wheel

The information in the instrument cluster is organised in different tabs ①. The details from each tab are displayed in the central area ②.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

Selecting a tab

- ▶ Press the ▲ or ▼ button ③ repeatedly until the desired tab is selected.

Returning to the previous function level

- ▶ Press the ↶ button ⑤.

Opening/closing a menu

- ▶ Press the ☰ button ⑥.

Selecting and confirming a function

Important: A menu or a list must be displayed.

- ▶ To select a function, scroll the left thumbwheel ⑦ to the desired function.
- ▶ To confirm a selection, press the left thumbwheel ⑦.

Changing views

- ▶ Press the VIEW button ④ [⇒ page 15](#).

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following tabs are available:

1st tab	Vehicle functions ⇒ page 16
2nd tab	Driver messages (only visible if one or more warning/indicator lamps or driver messages are displayed)
3rd tab	Night vision assist (only visible if night vision assist is activated) ⇒ page 142
4th tab	Radio ⇒ page 235
	Media ⇒ page 246
	TV ⇒ page 255
5th tab	Telephone ⇒ page 200
6th tab	Navigation ⇒ page 216

Selecting the display

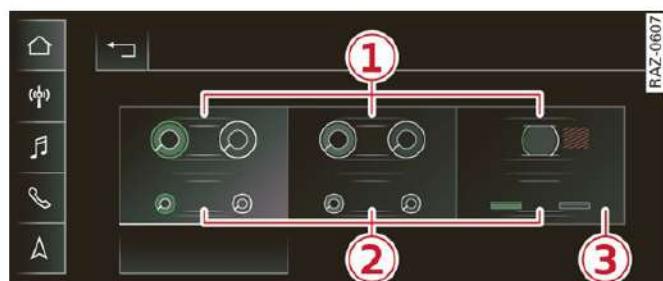


Fig. 6 Upper display: Selecting display

Changing views

- ▶ Press the VIEW button to switch between the standard view ① and the extended view ②.

Selecting a layout

Different layouts may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Virtual cockpit**.
- ▶ Press on the desired layout to select it ③.

Setting additional display

The additional displays that can be selected vary depending on the equipment installed on your vehicle.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Virtual cockpit > Configure**.
- ▶ Select the desired additional display.

Reducing the view

On some equipment versions you can hide the central area in the instrument cluster.

- ▶ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > button > **Reduced display**.

Power meter



Fig. 7 Instrument cluster: Power meter

The power meter gives a measure of the drive system capacity being utilised. The needle of the power meter indicates the current capacity utilisation. A colour border indicates how heavily the drive system can currently be utilised. The colour borders may vary depending on which driving program is selected and how much electric power is currently available.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the power meter may indicate the following driving states:

- ① Drive system switched off
- ② Vehicle recuperating electrical energy

- ③ Drive system switched on
- ④ Vehicle moving; drive system utilisation displayed in percent
- ⑤ Vehicle is being driven briefly with maximum power

Mileage recorder

The trip recorder and odometer are displayed in the status line ④ [page 14](#).

The trip recorder shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. It is used to measure individual journeys. The odometer records the vehicle's total mileage.

Resetting trip recorder

- ▶ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > button > **Reset kilometres**.

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status line ④ [page 14](#).

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed in the instrument cluster may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the power unit.

At temperatures below +5°C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display .

WARNING

Do not rely on the outside temperature display as an ice warning. Bear in mind that there may be patches of ice on the roads even at outside temperatures around +5 °C – risk of accident!

Vehicle functions

Overview

The on-board computer is displayed in the first tab of the driver information system. Further vehicle functions are available depending on the equipment on your vehicle.

- ▶ Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- On-board computer \Rightarrow page 17
- Charging \Rightarrow page 115
- Reduced display \Rightarrow page 16
- Reset trip recorder \Rightarrow page 16

On-board computer

Resetting values to zero

Important: The **consumption, short-term memory or long-term memory** display must be selected.

- ▶ To reset the figures in the selected memory to zero, press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel for one second. Or:
- ▶ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab >  button > **Reset kilometres**.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel to call up the following displays on the on-board computer one after another:

- Time and date \Rightarrow page 263
- Range display \Rightarrow page 97
- Average fuel consumption \Rightarrow page 17
- Short-term memory summary
- Long-term memory summary
- Driver assistance
- Traffic sign recognition \Rightarrow page 139

Short-term/long-term memory

The short-term memory collects the information on a journey from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed within two hours after the ignition is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

Average consumption

The current power consumption can be shown in a bar display. The average power consumption from the short-term memory can also be displayed. If the bar turns green, your vehicle is saving energy using the following function:

- **Recuperation:** Electrical energy can be stored in the battery (recuperation) if the vehicle is travelling downhill or coasting in gear (overrun). The bar will move into the negative area of the scale.

Note

The date, the time and the time/date display format can be changed via the infotainment system \Rightarrow page 263.

Touch displays

General instructions for using the touch displays

General notes

Applies to: touch displays

The touch-sensitive displays in the vehicle are controlled in much the same way as a smartphone.

The instructions below describe methods for operating all the touch displays in the vehicle.

Note

Some of these methods may not be available on every touch display or in every menu.

Pressing

Applies to: touch displays

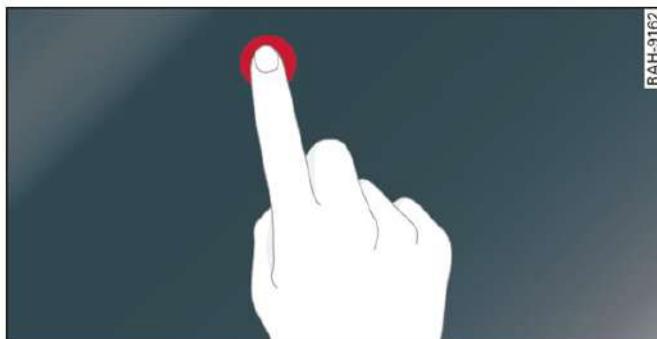


Fig. 8 Touch display: Pressing

Selecting a function or button

- ▶ Press the desired function or button.

Pressing and holding

Applies to: touch displays



Fig. 9 Touch display: Pressing and holding

Calling up options

For certain items, you can call up further options which are not immediately visible.

- ▶ Press and hold an item until the corresponding options are displayed.

Pressing and dragging

Applies to: touch displays



Fig. 10 Touch display: Pressing and dragging

Moving an object

You can re-arrange certain objects on the screen as desired.

- ▶ Press and hold an object and drag it with your finger to the desired position.

Pinching/spreading your fingers

Applies to: touch displays

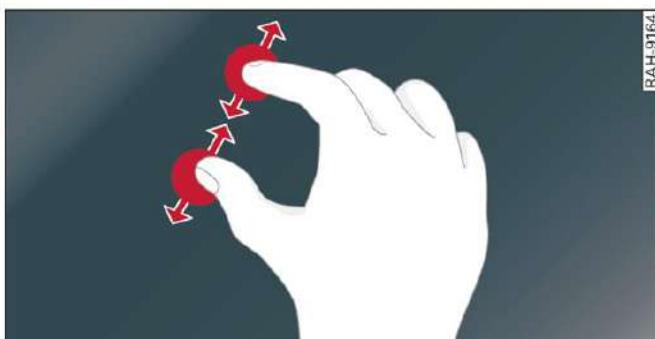


Fig. 11 Touch display: Pinching/spreading your fingers

Zooming in/out on an object

- ▶ Spread two fingers to zoom in on the screen content.
- ▶ Pinch two fingers together to zoom out.

Rotating

Applies to: touch displays

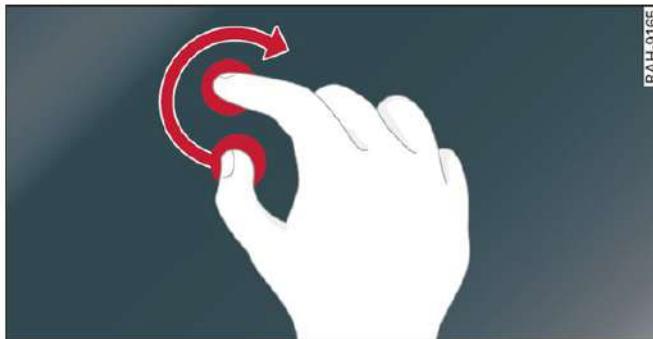


Fig. 12 Touch display: Rotating

Rotating the view or angle

- ▶ Rotate the object with two fingers.

Swiping

Applies to: touch displays

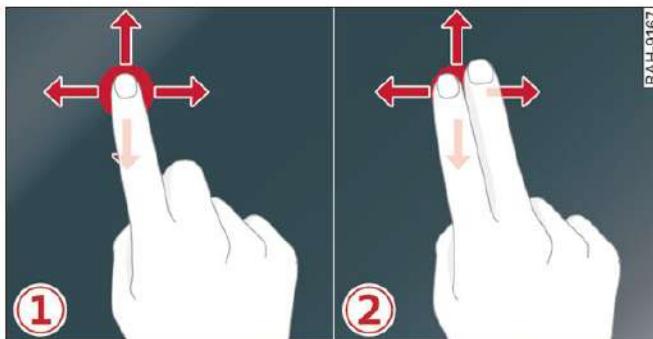


Fig. 13 Touch display: ① Swiping with one finger, ② swiping with two fingers

Scrolling or paging in menus/lists

- ▶ To scroll in menus/lists, swipe up/down with one finger.
- ▶ To page through menus/lists, swipe up/down with two fingers.

Angling 3D views

- ▶ Swipe up/down with two fingers.

Swiping away from/towards the edge

Applies to: touch displays

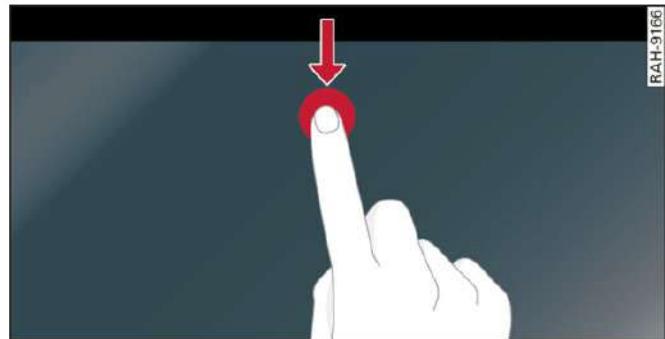


Fig. 14 Touch display: Swiping away from the edge (example)

Opening hidden menus

The symbol indicates a hidden menu.

- ▶ Swipe your finger from the top/bottom edge of the screen towards the centre. Or:
- ▶ Press the button.

Closing a hidden menu

- ▶ Press within the menu and swipe it towards the top/bottom edge of the screen.

Closing an item

- ▶ Press on an item and swipe it towards the right edge of the screen.

Notes on path descriptions

The path descriptions in this manual show you at a glance how to call up the menu you require along with its settings and functions.

Example of a path description

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

Using a path description

- ▶ The *Applies to:* preamble tells you which display is used to call up the corresponding menu.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: Press to call up the home screen.
- ▶ If the **SETTINGS** button is not displayed, swipe to the left/right with one finger until it appears.
- ▶ Press the **SETTINGS** button.



- ▶ If the **General** button is not displayed, swipe to the left/right with one finger until it appears.
- ▶ Press the **General** button.
- ▶ If the **Date & time** button is not displayed, swipe up/down with one finger until it appears.
- ▶ Press the **Date & time** button.

Note

Menus or symbols in the path description that are shown in brackets, e.g. (**General**) or (⌚), are optional menu items which do not need to be selected in all systems.

Settings

You can adjust or switch off the feedback of the MMI touch display.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > MMI**.

Available settings:

- **Brightness**
- **Touchscreen feedback**

Multi Media Interface

Notes on traffic safety

You should only use certain infotainment system functions, e.g. enter a navigation destination, while the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the infotainment system in the interest of your own safety and that of other road users.

WARNING

Only operate the infotainment system when the road, traffic, visibility and weather conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle – risk of accident!

Note

Certain functions are not available while the vehicle is in motion.

Switching on/off

Switching the MMI system on/off

- ▶ To switch the MMI system off, press and hold the on/off button  *page 29, Fig. 21* until the upper display and all the infotainment functions are switched off.
- ▶ To switch the MMI system on, press the on/off button.

Restarting the MMI system

- ▶ Press and hold the on/off button for at least ten seconds.

Switching the displays on/off

- ▶ To switch the upper display off, press  on the lower display.
- ▶ You can switch the upper display on by touching it or pressing  on the lower display.
- ▶ To switch both displays off/on, press and hold  on the lower display.

Introduction

You can display and operate different infotainment and vehicle functions using the two touch displays of the Multi Media Interface (MMI).

Setup wizard

After switching on the system for the first time, you can use the wizard to set up your vehicle, e.g. to select the desired system language and connect a telephone.

- ▶ Follow the directions given on the display.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: To access the setup wizard at a later time, select the following on the home screen: **HELP > Setup wizard**.

Usage tips

After switching on the system for the first time, usage tips will be shown on the upper display as an interactive introduction to the different MMI functions.

- ▶ Follow the directions given on the display.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: To call up the usage tips at a later time, select the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS > Help > Display usage tips**. ▶

► Applies to MMI: To call up further usage tips, select the following on the home screen: **HELP**

> **Usage tips > Basic information or Expert information.**

Menus and symbols

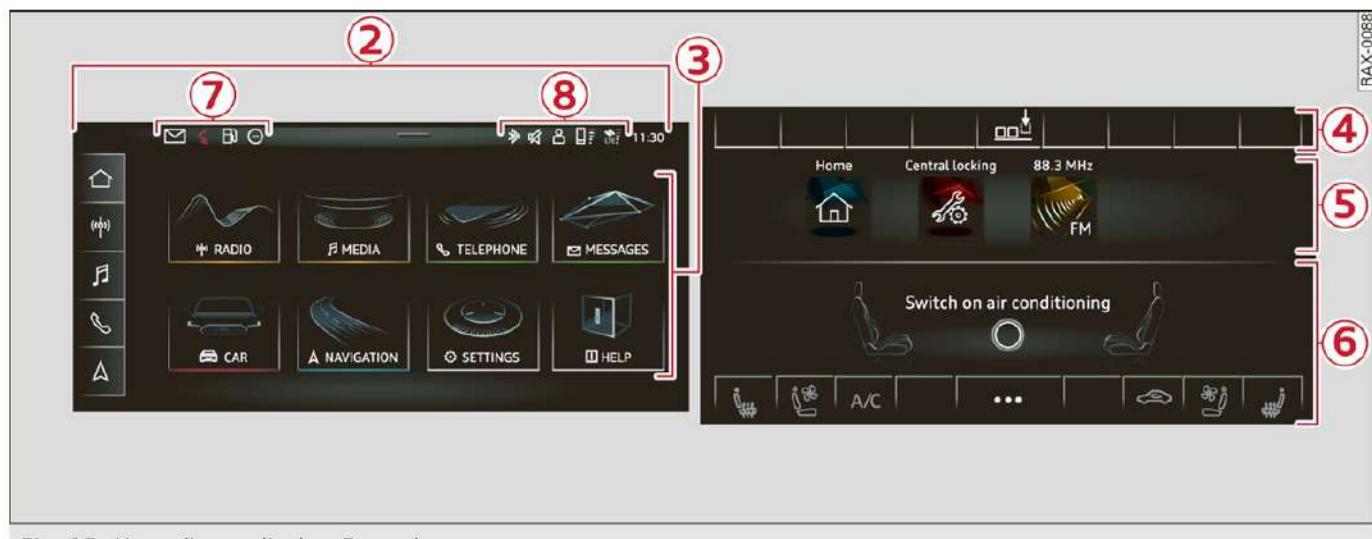


Fig. 15 Upper/lower display: Example

	Name	Description
①	Quick access bar	Returning to the home screen or quickly accessing a menu ⇒ page 22
②	Status bar	Displaying current notifications ⑦ ⇒ page 23, status display ⑧ ⇒ page 22, time
③	Display area	Selecting a menu, changing settings, displaying content ⇒ page 22
④	Function bar	Activating functions or calling up associated information ⇒ page 23
⑤	Shortcuts	Using shortcuts ⇒ page 23
⑥	Climate control settings	Adjusting the air conditioning ⇒ page 87

Description of global symbols

The symbols below allow you to control standard functions. These symbols may appear in all menus in the appropriate context.

Symbol	Description
◀	Go back one level
×	Close menu
🔍	Search for content
ⓘ	Call up explanatory information for a menu
⚙️	Call up settings for the selected menu
☰	Call up sub-menu
🔧	Adjust settings

Symbol	Description
★/☆	Assign favourite/favourite assigned
□/✓	Switch functions on/off
○/○	Switch functions on/off
○/○	Switch functions on/off
...	Call up additional functions
>	Call up additional information on the selected menu
⊕	Purchase functions on demand

Note
Most of the illustrations on the following pages show the upper display with the largest

possible screen. The display and position of the elements may be different, depending on the equipment in your vehicle.

Quick access bar

You can use the quick access bar to return to the home screen and switch easily between four menus which can be configured as desired.

Returning to the home screen or quickly accessing a menu

- ▶ Press  or one of the four buttons.

Configuring the quick access bar

- ▶ Press and hold a button in the display area of the start screen or on the quick access bar.
- ▶ To move a button to the quick access bar, drag it from the display area to the quick access bar.
- ▶ To re-arrange the buttons, drag them within the quick access bar to the desired position.

Note

It is not possible to move  to another position.

Display area

The buttons in the display area of the home screen can be re-arranged as desired.

Configuring the display area

- ▶ Press and hold a button in the display area of the start screen.
- ▶ To re-arrange the buttons, drag them to the desired position.

Switching between menu pages

If a menu contains more than one page,  is shown in the display area. The white bars indicate the position of the current menu page.

- ▶ To switch between menu pages, swipe your finger to the right/left.

Status display

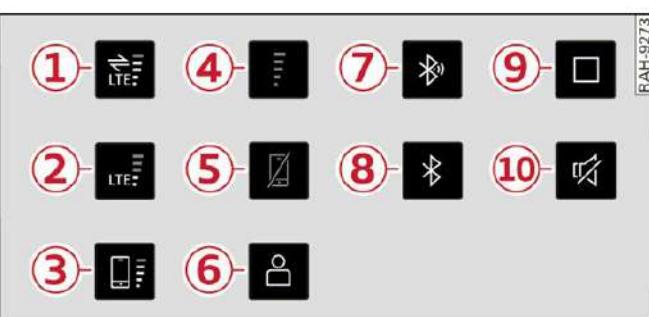


Fig. 16 Upper display: Frequent symbols in the status bar

The symbols in the status bar show you at a glance whether e.g. a mobile phone is connected or a data connection is available. The most frequent symbols are listed in the table.

	Description
①	A data connection is available. The bars indicate the strength of the data connection. Data transfer is in progress.
②	A data connection is available. The bars indicate the strength of the data connection. No data transfer is in progress.
③	A mobile phone is connected. The bars indicate the strength of the mobile reception.
④	No data connection is available.
⑤	A problem occurred when connecting the mobile phone to the MMI.
⑥	Personal profiles are switched on. The number 1 - 6 indicates which personal profile is currently activated. If no number is shown, the guest profile is activated.
⑦	A Bluetooth device is connected.
⑧	Bluetooth is switched on, but no Bluetooth device is connected.
⑨	Audio playback has been interrupted.
⑩	The audio source is muted.

Notification centre

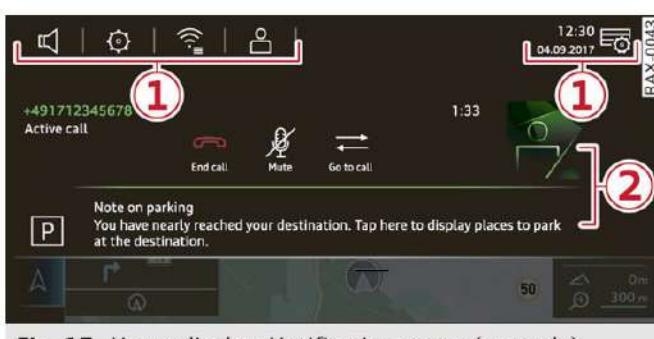


Fig. 17 Upper display: Notification centre (example)

Notifications may be shown on the upper display. They will disappear after a certain time, and the corresponding symbol will appear in the status bar ⑦ ⇒ page 21, Fig. 15. You can view these notifications in the notification centre ② ⇒ Fig. 17 and adjust the quick settings ①.

How to use the notification centre

- ▶ To open the notification centre, drag the status bar downwards. Or:
- ▶ Press the  button in the status bar.
- ▶ To adjust the quick settings, press the corresponding symbol ①.
- ▶ Press on a notification to receive further information about it.
- ▶ To delete a notification, drag it to the right edge of the screen.
- ▶ If there are more than four notifications in the notification centre, the older ones will be hidden. To display older notifications, swipe upwards with one finger.

Setting which information is displayed

You can determine whether or not certain notifications are displayed.

- ▶ To set which information is displayed, press the  button. Or:
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Notifications**.
- ▶ Select and confirm which notifications you would like to have displayed.

Possible quick settings

Symbol	Description
	Manage connected devices
	Manage personal profiles
04.09.2017	Set the date and time
	Set which information is displayed in the notification centre

Function bar

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can operate different functions from the function bar.

Symbol	Description
	Switch downhill assist function on/off
	Call up parking space search function
	Call up garage door opener
	Press: Show settings for head-up display Press and hold: Switch head-up display on/off
	Press: Switch upper display on/off Press and hold: Switch both displays on/off

Shortcuts

You can create shortcuts for quick access e.g. to radio stations, frequently used contacts or vehicle settings.

Adding shortcuts

The ... buttons indicate that e.g. a selected radio station can be added to the shortcuts. In certain contexts, you can also add items from a list to the shortcuts.

- ▶ Press and hold ... or an item in a list.
- ▶ Press **Store as a shortcut**. The selected item will be added to the shortcuts on the lower display and shown as a tile.

Symbol	Description
	Adjust the sound settings
	Call up the settings menu

Using shortcuts

- On the lower display, press the button ④ \Rightarrow page 21, Fig. 15 on the function bar. The stored shortcuts will be shown/hidden.
- To call up a stored function, press the corresponding tile.

Moving/deleting shortcuts

- Press and hold a shortcut on the lower display.
- To re-arrange the shortcuts, drag a shortcut to the desired position.
- To delete a shortcut, press ④.

Text entry

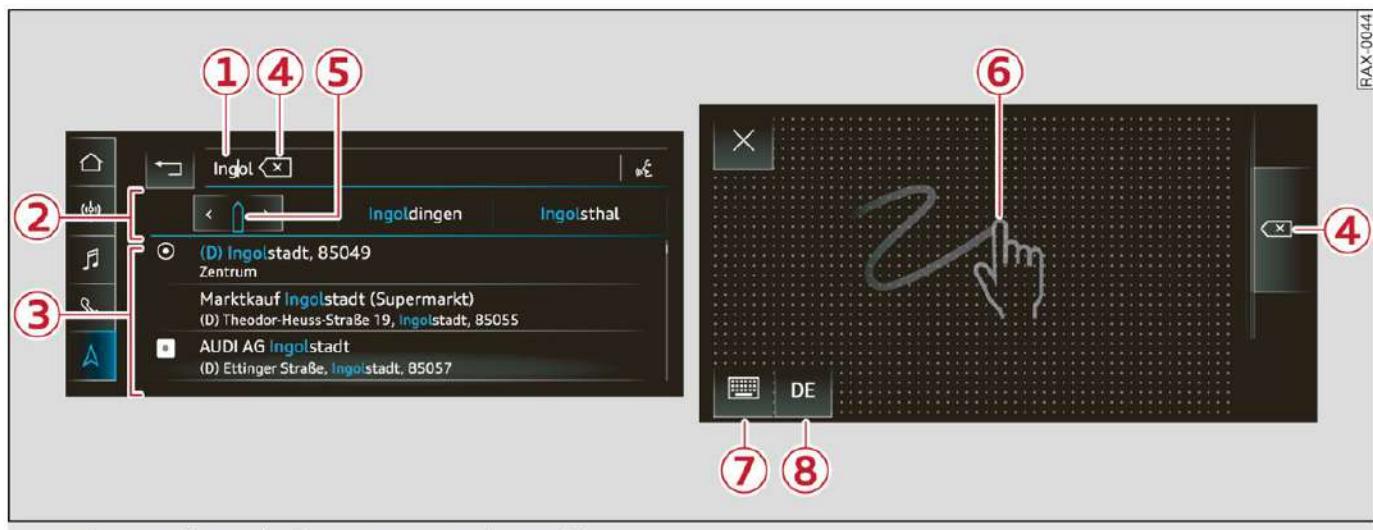


Fig. 18 Upper/lower display: Entering text (example)

You can enter letters, numbers and characters in the entry fields of different menus, e.g. to find an address in the navigation system.

On the lower display, you can enter text using handwriting recognition or the on-screen keyboard. The upper display will show the text as it is entered ①. In certain contexts, the system will suggest words based on the characters you have entered ② and display them in a results list ③.

Calling up the text entry function

- Press within the entry field ①.

Changing the input language

Important: More than one input language must be set in the MMI \Rightarrow page 25.

- To switch between the set input languages, press the button ⑧.

Changing the input method

- To switch between handwriting recognition and the on-screen keyboard, press the button ⑦.

Entering text

- Applies to handwriting recognition: Text can be entered by simply writing with your finger in the entry area ⑥. You can write individual characters one over the other or one after the other without having to lift your finger from the screen. When you have finished, the system will interpret what you have written.
- Applies to on-screen keyboard: You can enter text by pressing the keys on the keyboard. In certain contexts, you can also swipe your finger over the letters¹⁾.
- Applies to on-screen keyboard with diacritical marks: To enter diacritical marks (e.g. à, ç, ñ, ö), press and hold the appropriate character and select the desired diacritical mark.

¹⁾ Depending on country

- ▶ Applies to handwriting recognition: To enter a space, draw a line from left to right¹⁾ in the entry area ⑥.
- ▶ To select the position where the text is entered, press within the entry field at the desired position. You can adjust the position even more precisely using the slider ⑤ displayed on the screen.
- ▶ To delete a single character, press ✖ ④. Or:
- ▶ Applies to handwriting recognition: Draw a line from right to left¹⁾ in the entry area ⑥.
- ▶ To delete more than one character, press and hold ✖ ④.
- ▶ To delete all characters up to a certain position, press and hold ✖ ④ and drag your finger to the desired position²⁾. The characters that disappear when you do this will be deleted when you let go.
- ▶ To delete all characters, press ✘ ④²⁾.

Using suggested words or entries from the results list

- ▶ You can use a suggested word ② or an entry from the results list ③ by pressing on it.
- ▶ To display more entries in the results list, swipe up/down with one finger.

Setting the input language/keyboard layout

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Language & keyboard > Keyboard**.
- ▶ To set additional input languages, press the ☰ button.
- ▶ To change the keyboard layout for one of the input languages, press >. Select e.g. QWERTZ or QWERTY.

¹⁾ If you have chosen to enter characters in Arabic, make the gestures described in the opposite direction.

²⁾ Depending on country

Head-up display

Description

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

The head-up display projects certain warnings and selected information from supporting systems onto the windscreen. The display appears within the driver's field of vision.

Switching on/off

The  button is located on the function bar on the lower display *⇒ page 21*.

- ▶ To switch the head-up display on/off, press and hold the  button.

Settings on infotainment system

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Head-up display**. Or:
- ▶ Press the  button.

Available settings:

- **Display rotation**
- **Brightness**

Display height

The height of the display can be adjusted. Assume an appropriate seating position *⇒ page 60* and make adjustments on the image of the head-up display.

Display contents

You can determine which types of information are displayed. The display of certain information and some of the red warning lamps cannot be deactivated.



CAUTION

Do not place any objects over the opening for the head-up display to avoid scratching the glass cover.



Note

- The display may be harder to see in unfavourable light conditions or if you are wearing polarised sunglasses.

- To be able to see the display as clearly as possible, adjust the position of your seat and the height setting for the head-up display.
- A special windscreen is required for the head-up display.
- Notes on cleaning *⇒ tab. Cleaning the interior on page 286*.
- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Speech dialogue system

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

You can operate many vehicle functions conveniently by voice.

For best results when using the speech dialogue system

- ▶ Speak clearly in a normal volume. Speak louder if you are driving fast.
- ▶ Speak in a normal tone without long pauses.
- ▶ Close the doors, windows and sun roof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not talking when you say a command.
- ▶ Keep the air outlets pointed away from the microphones located near the front interior lights in the headliner.
- ▶ The system should only be operated by the driver, since the microphones are directed towards this seating position.



WARNING

- Please direct your full attention to the road at all times! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations - accident risk!
- The speech dialogue system must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!



Note

No navigation cues* or traffic announcements* are played when a dialogue is active.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system



Fig. 19 Upper display: Speech dialogue system (example)

Switching the speech dialogue system on/off

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. The system language must be set to one supported by the speech dialogue system. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

- ▶ To switch the speech dialogue system on, press the button on the multi-function steering wheel, or, in certain contexts, press on the upper display.
- ▶ To switch the speech dialogue system off, briefly press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel or say **Cancel**. Alternatively, press ①.

How to use the speech dialogue system

The speech dialogue system menu shows possible commands or helpful hints for the current dialogue ③.

- ▶ Give a spoken command after the tone.
- ▶ For additional assistance for the current dialogue, say **Help** or press ②.
- ▶ To pause the speech recognition, say **Pause** or press ④. To resume using the speech recognition, press ④ again or briefly press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > (Speech dialogue system) > Allow command during speech dialogue**. When this function is switched on, you can simply say a new command while the system is giving a spoken cue.

Activating online recognition

Applies to: vehicles with online recognition

You can activate online recognition for additional functions and even better results when using the speech recognition. A supported system language must be selected. When the system is connected to the Internet, your spoken commands will be evaluated online as well as in the vehicle.

- ▶ A menu for the online recognition function is displayed when you switch the speech dialogue system on for the first time. Or:
- ▶ Applies to: MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > Speech dialogue system > Agreement for speech dialogue system online recognition.**
- ▶ Read and accept the licence conditions.

Activating Amazon Alexa¹⁾²⁾

Applies to: vehicles with Amazon Alexa integration

You can activate Amazon Alexa in order to access certain additional functions. A supported system language must be selected. A reduced number of commands is available.

Important: You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the vehicle.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **USER > Connect to Amazon Alexa.**
- ▶ Follow the directions given on the display.
- ▶ After connecting successfully, switch on the speech dialogue system in the usual way
⇒ page 27, *Switching the speech dialogue system on/off* and say the activation word "Alexa" followed by the desired command.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs
⇒  in *General information on page 202*.

External voice control function

Applies to: vehicles with external voice control function

You can use the system in the vehicle to call up and operate the voice control function of a connected mobile phone.

Switching the external voice control function on/off

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI system via the **Handsfree** profile ⇒ page 186. The mobile phone connected must have a voice control function that can be controlled externally. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

- ▶ To switch on the external voice control function, press and hold the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- ▶ To switch off the external voice control function, press and hold the  button on the multi-function steering wheel, or press **Cancel**.

Operating the external voice control function

- ▶ Give a spoken command after the tone.
- ▶ To resume using the voice control function after pausing it, briefly press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel or press **Resume**.

Note

AUDI AG only enables you to access your mobile phone's voice control function and accepts no responsibility for the content and commands of the external voice control function.

¹⁾ AUDI AG only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available indefinitely; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

²⁾ Still under development at the time of print

Global functions

Other function selector buttons

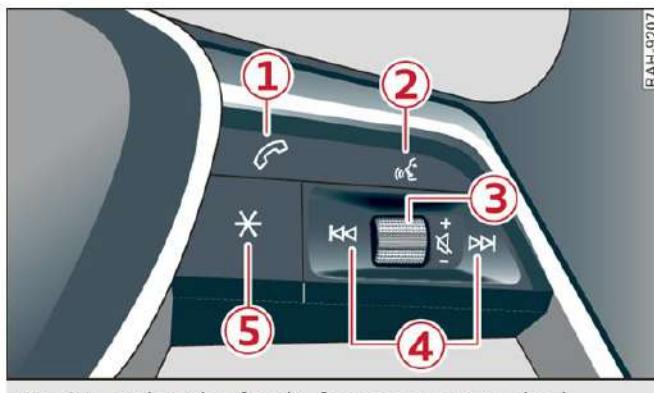


Fig. 20 Right side of multi-function steering wheel



Fig. 21 Centre console: MMI ON/OFF button with joystick function

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a speech dialogue) directly while it is being played.

- ▶ To turn the volume up/down, scroll the right thumbwheel ③ \Rightarrow Fig. 20 up/down or turn the on/off button ③ \Rightarrow Fig. 21 clockwise or anti-clockwise.
- ▶ To mute the sound, press the right thumbwheel or the on/off button.

Selecting the previous/next track/station

- ▶ Press the $\leftarrow\rightleftharpoons/\rightarrow\rightleftharpoons$ button ④ or briefly push the on/off button to the left/right.

Fast forward/rewind

- ▶ Press and hold the $\leftarrow\rightleftharpoons/\rightarrow\rightleftharpoons$ button ④ or push the on/off button to the left/right and hold it there until the desired playing position is reached.

Programmable steering wheel button

The * button ⑤ can be programmed as desired to allow you to access different functions quickly.

- ▶ To use the function currently programmed, press the * button.
- ▶ To find out which function is currently programmed, press and hold the * button. Or:
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Settings & service > Steering wheel button.
- ▶ Select and confirm the desired function.

Switching the speech dialogue system on/off

$\leftarrow\rightleftharpoons$ button ②; refer to \Rightarrow page 27.

Operating telephone functions

c^\wedge button ①; refer to \Rightarrow page 190.

⚠ WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

Personal settings

Users

Personal profiles

Applies to: vehicles with personal profiles

You can store your individual settings in a personal profile. Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the profile you are using is assigned to the vehicle key or Audi connect key or Audi connect key card currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked, the system will load the last active profile for the key.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **USER**.

You can link different profiles to particular vehicle settings.

- Create your own personal profile. This is a good idea, for example, if several people share the vehicle and each of them would like to use their own individual vehicle settings.
- **Guest:** The guest profile can be used to adjust the settings in the vehicle without changing the other profiles.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, certain settings can be stored for the following systems:

- Air conditioner
- Central locking system
- Interior/exterior lighting
- Parking aid \Rightarrow page 172
- Driver assistance \Rightarrow page 145
- Driver information \Rightarrow page 139
- Seats
- Mirrors
- Steering wheel
- MMI
- Head-up display
- Instrument cluster

Active profile

- **Rename:** You can rename your profile so that you remember which settings are stored in it.
- **Copy:** You can copy your profile by selecting where you would like to copy the profile to or

which profile you would like to overwrite. The settings will be applied.

- **Reset:** The active profile can be reset to the factory settings.
- **Load settings***: Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. You can load the settings for your profile e.g. if the settings for the seat, mirror and steering wheel could not yet be applied after switching profiles.

Profile selection

If you would like to switch profiles, select a different profile from the list.

Switching off personal profiles

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **USER** \Rightarrow  **Personal profiles**.

Personal profiles are switched on when the vehicle leaves the factory; you can switch them off if you do not want to use them.



Note

- The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- When you switch profiles, the vehicle will load the settings from the new profile.
- You can reset all personal profiles to the factory settings.

myAudi

Applies to: vehicles with myAudi log-in.

Important: You must have registered at my.audi.com.

Logging on in the vehicle

Applies to: MMI

- On the home screen, select **USER** \Rightarrow **Log in to myAudi**.
- Log into myAudi with your e-mail address and password.

You can set when and if the vehicle should log in to myAudi automatically.

- **Personal profile:** The personal profiles must be switched on and you must not be logged on with the guest account. Log into myAudi in the vehicle. Follow the instructions given by the

system and save the desired personal profile. In this case, you will always be logged in automatically when your personal profile is active.

- **Bluetooth device 1/Bluetooth device 2***: You must have logged into myAudi in the vehicle after a Bluetooth device was connected to the MMI. Follow the instructions given by the system and save the desired Bluetooth device. You will be logged in automatically when your Bluetooth device is connected to the MMI, and logged out automatically when the device is disconnected.

To have existing destinations transferred once from the MMI to your myAudi account, confirm the system query with **Yes**.

Note

- When you call up certain Audi connect infotainment services on the MMI, you may also need to enter your myAudi access data.
- Only one myAudi account can be connected to your vehicle, irrespective of the key user and further users.

User management

Applies to: vehicles with user management

The owner of the vehicle must be set as the key user for certain Audi connect vehicle control services and functions on demand, depending on the vehicle's equipment.

Setting the key user

Important: You must not have set a key user yet.

- ▶ You need a myAudi account in order to set a key user for the vehicle. Register at my.audi.com.
- ▶ Add your vehicle at my.audi.com and then verify your myAudi account immediately.
- ▶ Alternatively, you can verify your myAudi account later on. Log into my.audi.com with your access data and verify your myAudi account using one of the verification procedures available.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **USER > User management > (Key user) > Set key user**.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: Follow the instructions given by the system and enter the 10-character vehicle code [page 37](#). The key user will be set.

You now have the authorisation to use the Audi connect vehicle control services [page 207](#) and other available vehicle functions, and to manage further users.

Managing further users

As the key user, you can authorise further users for equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services on my.audi.com.

Removing the key user

Removing the key user will delete all further users, their authorisations and all Audi connect keys (depending on the vehicle's equipment). It will no longer be possible to use the equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.

Important: A key user must have been set, and the vehicle must not have been started using an Audi connect key* or an Audi connect key card*.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **USER > User management > (Key user) > Remove key user**.

Note

- Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can reset certain functions to the factory settings.
- It is not necessary to log in to myAudi from the vehicle in order to use the equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.
- Before you sell your vehicle, remove the key user and reset all the settings to the factory defaults.
- Store the vehicle code in a safe place as you may need to enter it again.
- When entering the vehicle code, please note that the system is case-sensitive.
- If you do not have the 10-character vehicle code, please contact your Audi dealer.

Doors and windows

Central locking system

General notes



WARNING

- Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the vehicle or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries.
- Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇒ page 36, *Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Description

All doors and the boot lid can be locked or unlocked simultaneously via the central locking system. When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the entire vehicle or the driver's door only, depending on the setting you have selected on the MMI system ⇒ page 33. The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked. If the turn signals do not flash when you lock the vehicle, one of the doors, the bonnet or the boot lid is still open.

You can use any of the following to lock/unlock the vehicle via the central locking system:

- Vehicle key ⇒ page 38
- Sensors* in the door handles ⇒ page 38
- Lock on the driver's door ⇒ page 35
- Interior central locking switch ⇒ page 34
- Audi connect key on your mobile device ⇒ page 39
- Audi connect key card ⇒ page 40

Key / vehicle key

The term "key" may refer to the remote control key or convenience key*, a mobile device with the Audi connect key* or the activated Audi connect key card*.

"Vehicle key" refers to the remote control key or convenience key*. The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇒ page 38 and ⇒ page 92.

Power-close function*

When closing one of the doors or the boot lid, just push it gently so that it falls into the latch. The door will now close automatically ⇒ ▲.

Automatic locking function

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors, the boot lid or the bonnet within a short time after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake.

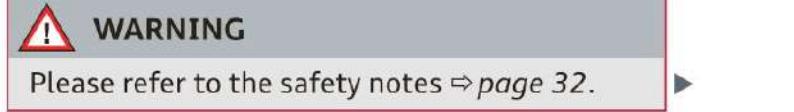
Accidental lock-out

To prevent yourself from being locked out, only lock the vehicle when there are no keys in the vehicle and all of the doors and the boot lid are closed.

The central locking system prevents you from being locked out of the vehicle in the following situations:

- When the driver's door is open, you cannot lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the remote control key or touching the locking sensor* on one of the doors.
- The boot lid will spring open again automatically if the convenience key* that was last in use is left inside the boot when the boot lid is closed.
- If the most recently used convenience key* is detected in the vehicle, it is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside ⇒ !.

It is not possible to detect an Audi connect key* or an Audi connect key card in the vehicle.



WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 32.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with power-close function

- When closing, make sure that nothing obstructs the doors – risk of injury!
- You can stop the closing function at any time by pulling on the outer or inner door handle.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- If the most recently used convenience key is detected in the passenger compartment, it is not possible to lock the vehicle **by sensor** from the outside. Take the convenience key with you and lock the vehicle again; otherwise the vehicle will not be secure.
- If you attempt to lock the vehicle **using the button on the vehicle key** while the front passenger's door or a rear door is open, the vehicle will not be locked when you close the door if you have accidentally left the key in the vehicle. The turn signals flash several times to indicate this. However, if you do not open the vehicle and take out the convenience key within a short period of time, the vehicle will be locked automatically (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely). In this case, the key will be locked inside the passenger compartment.
- The boot lid cannot be locked and will spring open again if the convenience key* that was last in use is detected inside the boot. The turn signals flash several times to indicate this. The doors will be locked. Take the convenience key with you; otherwise the vehicle will not be secure.

Note

- Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Even a locked vehicle is not a safe.
- When you lock the vehicle, the LED on the driver's window sill flashes. If the LED is still on about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the central locking system is not

working properly. You should have the mal-function repaired by a qualified workshop.

Adjusting the settings for the central locking system

The central locking system can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Central locking**.

Doors to unlock

- If you select **all**, all doors and the boot lid will be unlocked when you unlock the vehicle.
- If you select **driver's door**, only the driver's door will be unlocked. You can still unlock all the doors and the boot lid by pressing the  button on the vehicle key twice. On vehicles with convenience key*, only the driver's door will be unlocked when you take hold of the door handle. Gripping any of the other door handles unlocks the whole vehicle.

The whole vehicle is always locked when you press the  button.

Long press to open windows

You can set whether all windows and the panorama sun roof* can be opened using the vehicle key  page 45, *Convenience open/close function*. Pressing and holding the  button on the vehicle key will always close all the windows and the panorama sun roof*.

Lock when driving (Auto Lock)

To prevent unauthorised access from the outside (e.g. when stopped at traffic lights), you can set the system to automatically lock the doors and the boot lid when the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 km/h.

The vehicle will be unlocked again when you press the  button on the central locking switch or pull one of the door handles. You can select which doors are opened in the settings on the MMI system.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, the doors will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

Disable boot lid handle

You can select whether the luggage compartment can be opened via the release catch on the boot lid. When this function is activated, the boot lid can only be opened using the  /  button on the vehicle key or in the driver's door. On vehicles with convenience key*, the release catch on the boot lid can still be used to open the luggage compartment if an authorised convenience key is detected [⇒ page 41](#).

Fold mirrors

You can set whether the exterior mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Tone when locking¹⁾

You can set the system to give an acoustic signal when you lock the vehicle.

Open with convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle via sensor. It is still possible to lock the vehicle via sensor [⇒ page 38](#).

Note

These settings are stored automatically and assigned to the personal profile currently active.

Central locking switch

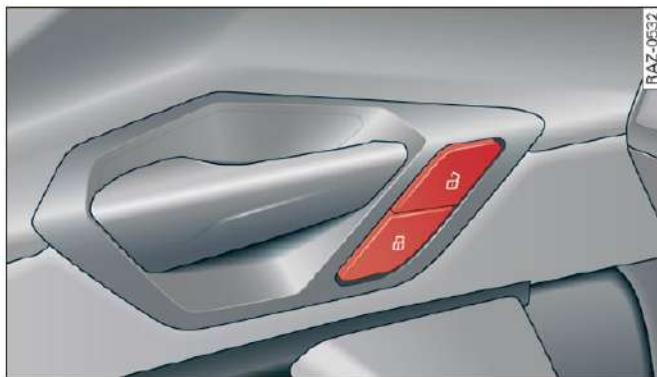


Fig. 22 Driver's door: Central locking switch

- ▶ To lock/unlock the vehicle, press the  /  button [⇒ !](#).

Please note the following when you use the central locking switch to lock your vehicle:

- The doors and the boot lid cannot be opened from the outside (for safety reasons, when stopped at traffic lights, etc.).
- The LED in the central locking switch lights up when all of the doors are closed and locked.
- You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

WARNING

- Please refer to the safety notes [⇒ page 32](#).
- The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off.
- The central locking switch inside the vehicle is not operative if you lock the vehicle from the outside.

Driver messages

Driver's door: fault. Shift to P before leaving vehicle. See owner's manual

A malfunction has occurred in the driver's door. Select transmission position P to hold the vehicle before getting out. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Central locking: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the central locking system. If it is not possible to lock the doors via the central locking system, you can lock them manually [⇒ page 35](#). Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Door lock: when the vehicle is moving, door can only be opened via manual release. See owner's manual

¹⁾ This function is not available on all export versions.

The doors cannot be unlocked electrically at speeds above approximately 15 km/h. If you need to open the door in an emergency when the vehicle is travelling at a higher speed, you can manually release the door by pulling the handle out firmly twice. You will feel noticeable resistance when you do so. You may need to press the door handle back into its original position after doing this.

Locking/unlocking the doors manually

If the central locking system fails to work, the doors must be locked/unlocked separately.

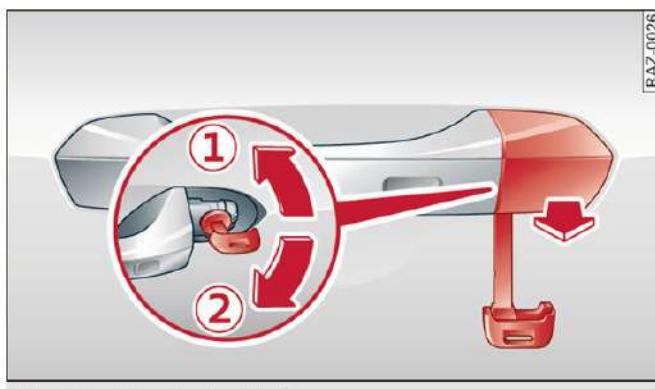


Fig. 23 Driver's door lock



Fig. 24 Door: Locking the door manually

Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system:
Switch on the ignition or press the button on the vehicle key after opening the driver's door manually. Otherwise the alarm will be triggered.

Locking/unlocking the driver's door with the emergency key

- ▶ Take out the emergency key [page 37](#).
- ▶ Insert the emergency key into the slot under the door handle and lever off the cap [Fig. 23](#).
- ▶ To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position ①.

- ▶ To open the driver's door, pull the handle firmly; the handle will extend somewhat further than usual.
- ▶ To lock the driver's door, select transmission position P and turn the key to the lock position ② once .

Locking front passenger's door/rear doors with the emergency key

The mechanical locking device is located on the end face of the doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

- ▶ Take out the emergency key [page 37](#).
- ▶ Pull the cap out of the opening [Fig. 24](#).
- ▶ Insert the emergency key in the slot inside and turn it as far as the stop to the left (if the door is on the right side) or to the right (if the door is on the left side).
- ▶ Insert the cap to seal the opening and close the door.

Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle once. If the vehicle is without electrical power, pulling the door handle once will unlock the door; pull a second time to open the door. You will need to pull firmly and will feel noticeable resistance. If the child lock is engaged on one of the rear doors, the door can be opened by pulling the inside door handle and then opening the door from the outside.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes [page 32](#).

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system



Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

Fig. 25 End face of (open) driver's door: Button for interior monitor/tow-away protection

If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm. The anti-theft alarm system is activated/deactivated automatically when you lock/unlock your vehicle. When the alarm is deployed, it switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Switching the alarm off manually

- ▶ To deactivate the alarm press the button on the vehicle key or switch on the ignition.

Depending on the equipment on your vehicle, the following components may be integrated in the alarm system:

Anti-theft alarm

The alarm is triggered if the boot lid, the bonnet or one of the doors is forced open, or if a door is opened after it is unlocked by turning the key in the lock.

Interior monitor and tow-away protection

The alarm is triggered if movements (e.g. of animals) are detected in the interior or if the vehicle's angle of inclination is changed (e.g. during transport).

You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by deactivating the interior monitor and/or tow-away protection.

Safelock¹⁾

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle ⇒ . The message **Be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual** appears on the instrument cluster display when you switch off the ignition as a reminder that the safelock mechanism* will be activated.

You must deactivate the safelock mechanism if you leave people behind in the vehicle.

Deactivating the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock¹⁾

There are various ways to deactivate the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism*:

- ▶ Press the button on the vehicle key a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
- ▶ Turn the emergency key in the door lock to the lock position a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with Audi connect key: Before locking, press the button ⇒ Fig. 25. The LED in the button will then light up.

If you lock the vehicle in this way, the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism* will remain deactivated until the vehicle is unlocked again.

WARNING

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

CAUTION

If you switch off the safelock mechanism*, the interior monitor and tow-away protection

¹⁾ This function may be optional in your country and is not available in all countries/equipment versions.

are automatically disabled, and vice versa. This means that your vehicle is no longer completely protected against theft.

i Note

- The interior monitor and tow-away protection will only function as intended if the windows and the panorama sun roof* are closed.
- The alarm is triggered if you switch off the safelock mechanism* and an interior door handle is then operated.

Keys

Set of keys



Fig. 26 Keys supplied with the vehicle

① Vehicle key

The vehicle key can be used to lock and unlock the car.

② Emergency key and release button for emergency key

An emergency key is integrated in the vehicle key. To remove it, press the release button and pull out the emergency key.

You can use the emergency key to ...

- activate and deactivate the front passenger's airbag* [page 73](#).
- lock/unlock the glove box.
- lock/unlock the doors manually [page 35](#).
- release the boot lid manually [page 43](#).

③ Key fob with vehicle code

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

Open the key fob and rub off the coating to reveal the vehicle code. You can use the vehicle code to

enable the Audi connect vehicle control services* on your vehicle. For more information, please refer to [page 207](#). If you should lose the key fob, please contact an Audi dealer.

Audi connect key card

Applies to: Audi connect key

The Audi connect key card performs a number of the functions of the vehicle key and is approximately the size and shape of a credit card [page 40](#).

Replacing a key

If you should lose a vehicle key, please contact an Audi dealer. Have the remote control coding for that vehicle key deactivated. For this purpose you should bring all available keys with you.

Applies to Audi connect key: If you should lose a mobile device on which an Audi connect key is stored, the corresponding mobile device must be deactivated [page 39](#). If you do not have short-term access to the myAudi app, it is possible to deactivate all assigned Audi connect keys on the MMI [page 40](#), *Activating/deactivating an Audi connect key*. If you lose the Audi connect key card, you can deactivate it at any time by switching the ignition on with the vehicle key or Audi connect key*. To replace an Audi connect key card, please contact an Audi dealer.

It is also important to notify your insurance company if a key has been lost.

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser is designed to prevent unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

It may not be possible to start the vehicle with the key if there is another vehicle key from a different make of vehicle on the same key ring.

Data stored on the vehicle key

Data related to the service and maintenance of the vehicle are stored continuously on your vehicle key while you are driving. Your Audi dealer can read out the data and will then be able to tell you what service work is required.

⚠ WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 32.

❗ CAUTION

The key must not be exposed to excessive temperatures; do not leave it in the sun.



For the sake of the environment

☒ The vehicle keys contain recyclable materials and must not be disposed of together with ordinary household waste. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

i Note

- The function of the vehicle key may be impaired by interference from other nearby radio signals (for example from a mobile telephone or TV transmitter) if these are in the same frequency range. You should always check that your vehicle is locked.
- Applies to MMI: You can check how many keys are initialised for your vehicle. On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Car information**.

Vehicle keys

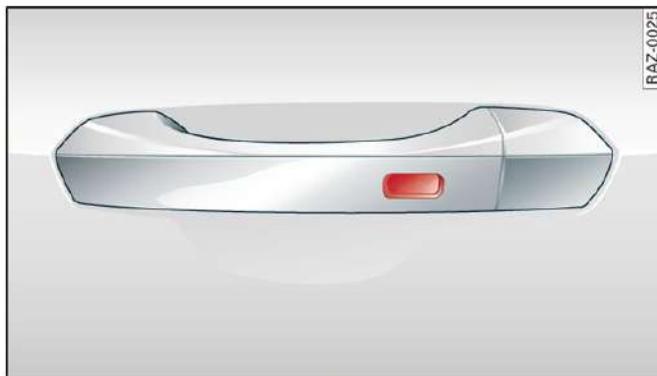


Fig. 27 Door handle: Sensor* for locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be locked/unlocked using either the buttons on the vehicle key or the sensors* in the door handles/in the release catch on the boot lid. You can select which doors are unlocked in the settings on the MMI system ⇒ page 33.

The symbol for the boot lid can vary depending on the type of vehicle key. Either the or symbol may be on the button.

Unlocking/locking via buttons on vehicle key

- To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇒ page 37, Fig. 26.
- To lock the vehicle, press the button **once**.
- To open the boot lid, press the button for at least one second or press the button twice ⇒ **⚠** in General information on page 41 and **💡** in General information on page 41.
- To close¹⁾/lock the boot lid, press the / button for at least one second with the ignition switched off ⇒ **⚠** in General information on page 41.

Unlocking/locking via sensors

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- To unlock the doors/boot lid, take hold of the door handle/release catch on the boot lid.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the exterior door handle **once** ⇒ Fig. 27. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked. Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

⚠ WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 32.

i Note

- Do not use the vehicle key when the vehicle is out of sight.
- The vehicle can only be locked when transmission position P is selected.
- Do not use the vehicle key for unlocking/locking when you are inside the vehicle, as you might trigger the anti-theft alarm*. In this situation, press the unlock button .

¹⁾ The closing function is available on vehicles also equipped with power-operated boot lid.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- The convenience key must be no more than approx. 1.5 m from the door handle/luggage compartment to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key (keyless entry) on the MMI \Rightarrow page 33.
- To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged, the power management system will gradually switch off convenience functions that are not required. In this case you may not be able to unlock the vehicle via sensor.

LED and battery in vehicle key



Fig. 28 Vehicle key: Removing battery holder

LED in the vehicle key

- The LED ① lights up when you press the buttons.
- The LED should flash once when you press one of the buttons briefly.
 - The LED should flash repeatedly when you press and hold one of the buttons (convenience open/close).
 - If the LED does not flash, the battery in the vehicle key is flat. Replace the battery in the vehicle key.

Replacing the battery in the vehicle key

- Take out the emergency key \Rightarrow page 37 and insert it at an angle into the opening \Rightarrow Fig. 28.
- Push the emergency key into the opening in the direction of the arrow to press the release button inside ②. Do not try to prise open the cover when doing so, as this could cause damage.

- Pull the cover off the battery compartment.
- Insert the new battery with the "+" symbol facing up.
- Close the battery compartment with the cover.
- Insert the emergency key.



For the sake of the environment

Used batteries must be disposed of appropriately and must not be discarded with ordinary household waste.



Note

The new battery must be of the same type as the original one in the vehicle key.

Audi connect key

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can use your mobile device to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

Applies to all users: Important: Your mobile device must be compatible (refer to www.audi.com/bluetooth), you must have registered at my.audi.com, the myAudi app must be installed on your mobile device and the service must be activated on the MMI. A key user must have been set \Rightarrow page 31.

Assigning an Audi connect key

Applies to: key user

- Visit the my.audi.com website or use the myAudi app to create a key for yourself or another user.
- Applies to MMI: Call up the security code in your vehicle. On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Audi connect key > Call up security code**. A six-character code will be displayed.
- Enter the security code on the my.audi.com website or in the myAudi app. You will receive your key, or the user you have selected will receive an invitation to install the key.

Accepting an Audi connect key

Applies to: invited users

- Accept the invitation in the myAudi app.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle

- ▶ To unlock/lock the vehicle, hold your mobile device against the centre of the handle on the driver's door.

Starting the vehicle

For information on starting the vehicle using the Audi connect key, please refer to [⇒ page 92](#).

Activating/deactivating an Audi connect key

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle. If you deactivate the function, all Audi connect keys that have been assigned and the Audi connect key card can no longer be used. All assigned Audi connect keys and the Audi connect key card can be used again as soon as you reactivate the function.

- ▶ Use your vehicle key to switch on your vehicle's ignition.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Audi connect key**.
- ▶ Activate or deactivate the option **Audi connect key**.

Note

- Audi connect keys can be managed at [my audi.com](#) or in the myAudi app.
- The key user can remove Audi connect keys that were assigned previously and re-assign them to other users.
- Invited users can also remove existing Audi connect keys.
- The Audi connect key may fail to function properly if the mobile device remains uncharged for several days.
- Before you sell your vehicle, remove the key user [⇒ page 31](#) and reset all the settings to the factory defaults [⇒ page 264](#).

Audi connect key card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can use your Audi connect key card to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

This prevents you from having to give your mobile device to others e.g. for a service appoint-

ment or if you require roadside assistance. The key card must be activated before each use.

Important: You must have an Audi connect key [⇒ page 39](#).

Activating/deactivating an Audi connect key card

- ▶ Switch on the ignition using the Audi connect key [⇒ page 92](#).
- ▶ Remove your mobile device from the Audi phone box.
- ▶ Place the key card in the Audi phone box. Follow the instructions given by the MMI.

The key card is automatically deactivated again as soon as the ignition is switched on using an Audi connect key or a vehicle key. Once deactivated, the key card can therefore be stored in the vehicle.

You can check the status of your key card on the MMI [⇒ page 40](#).

Locking and unlocking the vehicle

- ▶ To unlock/lock the vehicle, hold the key card against the centre of the handle on the driver's door.

Starting the vehicle

For information on starting the vehicle using the Audi connect key card, please refer to [⇒ page 92](#).



For the sake of the environment

Key cards contain recyclable materials and must not be disposed of together with ordinary household waste. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

Checking status

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

The status of assigned Audi connect keys and the Audi connect key card can be checked in the vehicle.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Audi connect key > Audi connect key**.

Boot lid

General information

! WARNING

- Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇒ page 36. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you are not using the vehicle. Children could otherwise enter the vehicle e.g. through the luggage compartment and become locked inside. To avoid risk of injury, never allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
- To prevent any risk of injury, make sure that no one is in the path of the boot lid – in particular around the hinges and the upper and lower edges.
- After closing the boot lid, always check that the catch has engaged properly. The boot lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving – this could result in an accident.
- The boot lid must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving; otherwise toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn from outside the vehicle into the interior.
- Applies to vehicles with power-operated/sensor-controlled boot lid: If a luggage rack (e.g. a bicycle carrier) is mounted to the boot lid, the boot lid may not open completely or may move downwards by itself due to the added weight. For this reason, make sure you support the boot lid or take the luggage off the carrier before opening the boot lid – risk of injury!
- Applies to vehicles with power-operated/sensor-controlled boot lid: Always be careful when closing the boot lid. A safety feature is provided (pinch protection), but this may not always be able to prevent serious inju-

ries to yourself or others in all circumstances.

! CAUTION

To avoid damage, please take care that the boot lid does not hit the ceiling when opening it inside a garage or car park, etc.

i Note

- When the vehicle is locked, you can unlock the boot lid separately by pressing the  /  button on the vehicle key. The boot lid will lock automatically when you close it again.
- You can change the settings on the MMI to activate/deactivate the option for opening the luggage compartment via the release catch ⇒ page 33.

Opening/closing boot lid



Fig. 29 Driver's door: Opening boot lid

Opening boot lid

- ▶ Press the  button on the vehicle key for at least one second with the ignition switched off or press the  button twice. Or:
- ▶ Pull the  switch on the driver's door. Or:
- ▶ Applies to vehicles without convenience key: Unlock the vehicle with the  /  /  button on the vehicle key and press the release catch on the boot lid. Or:
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid. The vehicle key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment.

Closing boot lid

- ▶ Applies to vehicles without power-operated boot lid: Pull down the boot lid by the handle on the inside and let it drop into the latch. Or:
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Refer to [page 42](#).
- ▶ Please refer to [page 42, Power-operated boot lid](#).

WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes [page 41](#).

Power-operated boot lid

Applies to: vehicles with power-operated boot lid

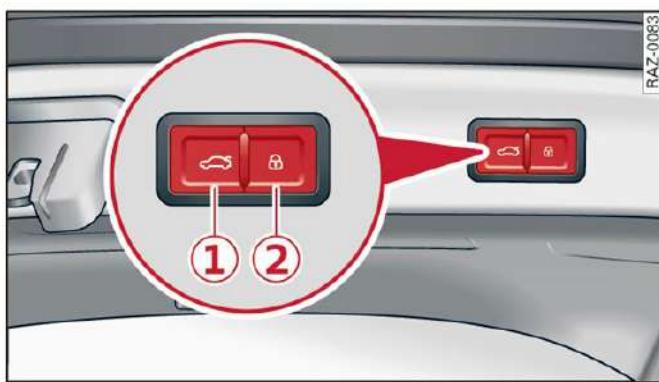


Fig. 30 Boot lid: ① close button*, ② lock button* (vehicles with convenience key*)

Opening boot lid

- ▶ Press the  button on the vehicle key [page 37, Fig. 26](#) for at least one second with the ignition switched off or press the  button twice. Or:
- ▶ Briefly pull the  button in the driver's door [page 41, Fig. 29](#). Or:
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid. The vehicle key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment.

Closing boot lid

- ▶ Press the  button inside the boot lid. Or:
- ▶ Press the release catch on the boot lid. Or:
- ▶ Press the boot lid down slightly. Or:
- ▶ With the ignition switched on, pull and hold the  button in the driver's door [page 41, Fig. 29](#) until the boot lid is closed. Or:
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With the ignition switched off, press and hold the

 /  button on the vehicle key until the boot lid closes. Make sure to stand clear of the boot lid when doing so (do not stand further away than 3 m). Or:

- ▶ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With the ignition switched off, press the  /  button inside the boot lid. The vehicle key should be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment and should not be inside the vehicle. The vehicle will be locked when you press the  button.

Storing the open position of the boot lid

The boot lid must be opened at least as far as the minimum open setting, otherwise it will not be possible to store the setting.

- ▶ Open the boot lid as far as desired. When pulling the boot lid downwards, you should move it slowly in small steps; otherwise the boot lid will close automatically.
- ▶ Press the  button on the inside of the boot lid for at least four seconds to store the desired open position. A visual and audible signal will be given.
- ▶ To set a higher open position, wait for five seconds and then push the boot lid carefully upwards.
- ▶ Then press the  button for at least four seconds again to store the desired open position.

The boot lid will stop moving if:

- You press the  button or the release catch in the boot lid again. Or:
- The boot lid cannot open freely or there is an obstruction.

If you now press the  button or the release catch in the boot lid again, the boot lid will re-open.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes [page 41](#).

Note

If the battery is low, the boot lid can still be opened and closed manually; however, this will require more effort. If you move the boot lid slowly less effort will be required.

Opening/closing boot lid with a foot gesture (kicking movement)

Applies to: vehicles with sensor-controlled boot lid



Fig. 31 Rear of vehicle: Kicking movement (example)

The boot lid can be opened and closed¹⁾ automatically ⇒  in General information on page 41.

Important: The convenience key* must be on your person. The ignition must be switched off. You must be standing behind the boot lid.

- With a single fluid movement, swing your foot forwards and back once under the bumper without touching it ⇒ Fig. 31. Take care not to slip. The boot lid will open/close¹⁾ when the system detects the gesture. The boot lid will stop moving if you perform the described movement again.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 41.

Note

The boot lid will open/close¹⁾ only if you make the exact gesture described above. This is to prevent the boot lid from opening/closing¹⁾ in similar situations, for instance if you walk between the rear of the vehicle and a garage door. In certain situations, the system may be temporarily unavailable or the functionality may be restricted. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

- If you are standing too close to or too far away from the bumper.
- If the boot lid was closed or opened immediately beforehand.
- If you park near a hedge and the wind blows the branches back and forth under the vehicle over an extended period.
- If you wash your vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner or drive through an automatic car wash.
- In heavy rain.
- If the bumper is heavily soiled (e.g. after driving on salted roads).
- If the radio signal from the remote control key was affected by interference from other transmitters (e.g. mobile phones or remote control devices).

Releasing the boot lid manually

The boot lid can be released manually from the inside.

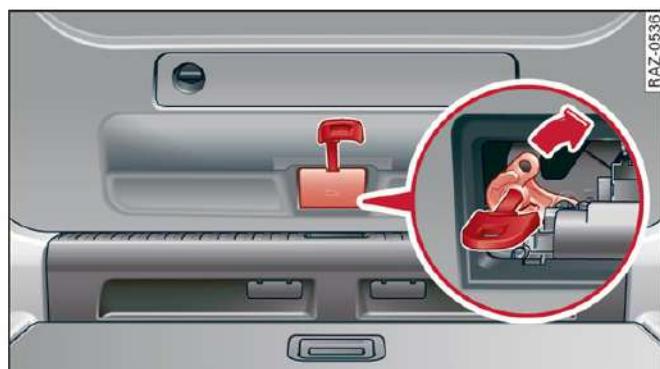


Fig. 32 Inside of boot lid: Access to manual release

- Fold the rear seat backrest forwards ⇒ page 84.
- Take out the emergency key ⇒ page 37 or the screwdriver ⇒ page 291.
- Prise off the cover  in the boot lid trim using the emergency key or the screwdriver²⁾.
- To unlock the boot lid, press the release lever in the direction of the arrow using the emergency key.

¹⁾ The closing function is available on vehicles also equipped with power-operated boot lid.

²⁾ Use the flat-blade side of the reversible screwdriver insert.

⚠️ WARNING

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 41.

⚠️ WARNING

After you have folded the backrest back upwards, always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

Child lock

The child locks disable the rear windows and prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.



Fig. 33 Driver's door: Controls

- ▶ To activate/deactivate the child lock (for the electric window switch and interior door handle on each of the rear doors), press the left/right button  on the driver's door ⇒ Fig. 33. The LED in the button will light up or go out.
- ▶ Make sure that the child lock is working by checking that the rear electric window switches and door handles are out of action.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with rear air conditioner console and MMI: To also limit the use of the air conditioner in the rear of the vehicle, select the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Operation in rear.**

Switching on the child lock deactivates the following functions:

- The rear interior door handles
- The rear window switches
- The air conditioner control console* in the rear cabin

Driver message in the instrument cluster display

 /  Child lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the child lock. Press the  button again.

If the message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

⚠️ WARNING

- Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 32.
- If there is a malfunction in the child lock, it may be possible to open the rear doors from the inside – risk of accident!

Electric windows

Opening/closing windows

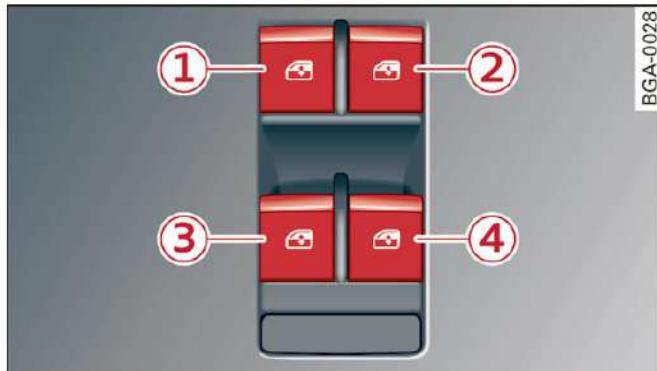


Fig. 34 Driver's door: Switches for electric windows

Switches for electric windows:

- ① Front left window
- ② Front right window
- ③ Rear left window
- ④ Rear right window

Opening/closing the windows

The driver can operate all the electric windows. All electric windows have two-stage switches:

- ▶ Press/pull the switch briefly to the second stop: the window will automatically open/close all the way. The window will stop moving immediately if the switch is operated again.
- ▶ To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first position until the window has reached the desired position.

What to do if the one-touch open/close function fails to operate

You can reactivate the one-touch open and close function if it fails to operate.

- ▶ Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed.
- ▶ Release the switch and then pull it again for at least one second.

WARNING

- Please refer to the safety notes \Rightarrow page 32.
- Take care when closing the windows. Careless use of the windows can cause injuries.

Note

The windows can be operated for a few minutes after the ignition has been switched off. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.

Convenience open/close function

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

Convenience open/close function for windows/panorama sun roof*

You can use the MMI to set whether all the windows and the sun roof* are opened/closed all at once \Rightarrow page 33, *Adjusting the settings for the central locking system*.

- ▶ Press and hold the  /  button on the vehicle key until all the windows and the sun roof* have reached the desired position \Rightarrow .
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Touch and keep your hand in contact with the sensor* on the door handle until all the windows and the sun roof* are closed. Do not rest your hand on the door handle while this is happening.

The turn signals flash once when all the windows and the roof* are closed.

WARNING

- Take care when closing the windows and the panorama sun roof*. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries.

- For safety reasons, you should only use the vehicle key to open and close the windows and panorama sun roof* when you are at least 2 metres away from the vehicle. To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows and the panorama sun roof* when pressing the  button to close them. The windows and sun roof stop moving as soon as the  button is released.

Panorama sun roof

Operating panorama sun roof and sun roof blind

Applies to: vehicles with panorama sun roof and sun roof blinds

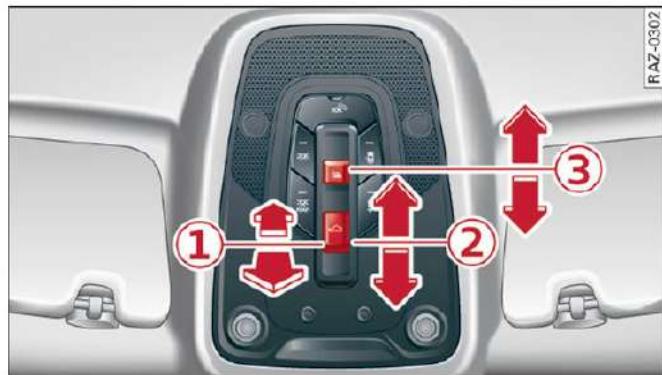


Fig. 35 Headliner: Switches for panorama sun roof and sun blind*

The switches have two stages.

If the sun roof blind is closed when you tilt/slide open the roof, it will automatically be opened partially/all the way.

Operating sun roof blind

- ▶ To open/close the blind: Slide the  switch in the headliner ③ forwards/backwards to the second position.
- ▶ To set an intermediate position: Press/pull the  switch to the first position until the blind has reached the desired position.

Operating sun roof

- ▶ To tilt the roof open: Briefly press the  switch in the headliner upwards to the second position ①.
- ▶ To tilt the roof closed: Briefly pull the  switch downwards to the second position.

- ▶ To slide the roof open: Briefly slide the  switch backwards to the second position ②.
- ▶ To slide the roof closed: Briefly slide the  switch forwards to the second position.
- ▶ To set an intermediate position: Slide, press or pull the  switch to the first position until the roof has reached the desired position.

Opening quickly

The sun roof and sun roof blind can also be opened all at once.

- ▶ Briefly slide the  switch backwards to the second position ②.

Closing the sun roof manually

If a trapped object is detected in the mechanism when the panorama sun roof is closing, a safety cut-out will be triggered and the roof will open again automatically. If this happens, you can use the safety cut-out override to close it.

- ▶ After the sun roof opens automatically, pull and hold the corresponding switch within 5 seconds until the sun roof is closed.



WARNING

Take care when closing the sun roof. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries. For this reason, always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.



CAUTION

Always close the sun roof when you leave your vehicle and when it is raining or snowing to avoid damaging the interior equipment and, in particular, the electronic equipment.



Note

- The roof and the blinds can still be operated for a few minutes after the ignition is switched off if neither of the front doors is opened.
- The sun roof cannot be opened if the temperature is too cold.

Garage door opener

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

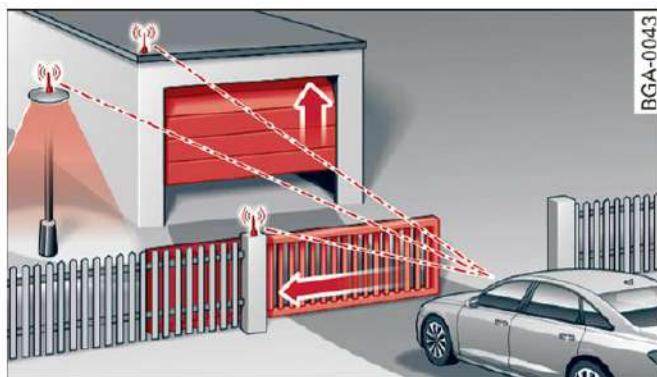
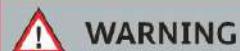


Fig. 36 Garage door opener: Examples of various devices which can be activated

The garage door opener allows you to activate garage doors, security systems, home or office lighting and other electric devices using control buttons inside your car. The functions are operated on the MMI. You can program several receivers, which perform the functions of up to eight¹⁾ hand-held transmitters.



WARNING

- When you are operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no persons or objects are close to the devices receiving the transmitter signals. Otherwise, persons might be injured or other damage caused by moving parts.
- Do not allow the displays and their operation to distract you from watching the traffic.



Note

Before you sell your vehicle, remove the key user ⇒ page 31 and reset all the settings to the factory defaults ⇒ page 264.



Note

Before programming your system for the garage door opener, please check that it is compatible:

¹⁾ The possible number of hand-held transmitters depends on the equipment.

- You can obtain information from your qualified workshop or at www.homelink.com. There you will also find further information on HomeLink.
- You can view information about HomeLink (compatibility level/status/country code/HomeLink generation) on the MMI:
- On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener** > .

How to use

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed \Rightarrow page 47, the vehicle must be within range of the system and the ignition must be switched on.

Several options are available for opening/closing the garage door or other system.

- ▶ If you have programmed only one hand-held transmitter, press the  button on the lower display. Or:
- ▶ If you have programmed more than one hand-held transmitter, press the  button on the lower display, then press the appropriate button for the system. Or:
- ▶ If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button*, press the  button \Rightarrow page 29, then press the appropriate button for the system. Or:
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with GPS link: If you have programmed the **GPS link**, press the appropriate button on the upper display (notification centre \Rightarrow page 23). The button will appear on the MMI shortly before you reach the linked system.

When transmission has been completed successfully, the driver message **Send to: XXX** will appear.

Programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

The procedure described here is suitable for programming both fixed code and rolling code systems on the MMI.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

Programming

Applies to: MMI

Important: You must have the hand-held transmitter with you, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door) you would like to program.

- ▶ To program the garage door opener for the **first time**, press the  button on the lower display. Follow the instructions on the MMI. Or:
- ▶ To program **further** systems, select the following on the home screen: **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**. Select the desired button: . Follow the instructions on the MMI.
- ▶ To **reprogram** a system, select the following on the home screen: **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**. Press the  button and select  for the system you would like to re-program. Select **Program**. Follow the instructions on the MMI.

For some systems, the garage door opener is available immediately after programming; for others, it must be synchronised additionally.

Synchronising¹⁾

Important: You must have already programmed the hand-held transmitter, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door).

To synchronise the system directly following programming, follow the instructions on the MMI.

If you would like to synchronise at a later time:

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**.
- ▶ Press the button for the system you would like to synchronise.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

¹⁾ Applies only to rolling code systems

GPS link

Applies to: vehicles with GPS link

For more convenient operation, you can program in the location of your system.

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇒ *page 47* and the vehicle must be in front of the corresponding system.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**.
- ▶ Press the  button.
- ▶ Press the  button for the system your vehicle is currently positioned in front of.
- ▶ Select **GPS link**.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

The notification centre ⇒ *page 23* can only display up to three programmed systems. If you would like to see all the systems, press .

Renaming an assignment

You can assign individual names to the systems you have programmed.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**.
- ▶ Press the  button.
- ▶ Press the  button for the system you would like to rename.
- ▶ Select **Rename**.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

Deleting an assignment

The programmed systems can be deleted individually or all at once.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**.
- ▶ Press the  button.
- ▶ To delete an **individual** system, press the  button for the corresponding system. After the tick mark  is set, select **Delete**.
- ▶ To delete **all** systems, select: **All > Delete**.



Note

- Before programming a button, make sure that the batteries in the hand-held transmitter are charged.
- The programming process can take up to 30 seconds, and you may need to press the button on the hand-held transmitter again during that time.
- It may be necessary to synchronise the garage door opener with the system after programming. Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the device.



Note

- If a universal receiver is installed, the system must be programmed via “UR mode”.
- Switch on the ignition.
 - Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**.
 - Press and hold the corresponding  button.
 - Select **Yes, in UR-Mode** and follow the instructions on the MMI.

Lights and vision

Exterior lights

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 37 Dashboard: Light switch module

① Light switch ☀

Press ① until the desired lighting function is selected. The selected function will be displayed briefly in the instrument cluster. The AUTO lighting function is selected automatically when the ignition is switched on.

- AUTO - The headlights are switched on automatically according to the ambient light conditions. On vehicles for some markets, the daytime running lights*, tail lights and number plate light are switched on permanently.
- ⚡ - Dipped headlights. The dipped headlights can be switched on manually as soon as the ignition is switched on.
- ⚡ - Side lights. The side lights can be switched on at speeds below 10 km/h.
- OFF - All lighting functions can be switched off at speeds below 10 km/h.

If the dipped headlights or side lights are switched on, the corresponding indicator lamp ⚡ / ⚡ will light up in the instrument cluster.

② All-weather light ☀_{FRONT}

The front lights are adjusted automatically so that you are not dazzled, for instance when driving on a wet road.

③ Rear fog light ☀_{REAR}

To avoid dazzling the traffic behind you, the rear fog light should only be used in accordance with country-specific regulations.

Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. This prevents oncoming traffic from being dazzled when your vehicle is heavily loaded. The headlight range is adjusted automatically.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive light

With the adaptive light feature, you have better vision in the dark because the lights are controlled dynamically to match the vehicle speed and road conditions, e.g. on motorways or country roads, at intersections or through corners. The adaptive light feature can only be used when the AUTO lighting function is activated.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras [⇒ page 134 ff.](#)
- The automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on manually when the light conditions or visibility are poor. For example, the light sensors are not able to detect fog. Therefore, you should always switch on the dipped headlights ⚡ in these conditions and when driving after dark.

Note

- If the vehicle battery has been losing charge for a while, the side lights or parking lights may be switched off automatically. Avoid using the side lights for long periods (several hours). Switch the left or right parking lights on where appropriate.
- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations when parking the vehicle and using the lights.
- A buzzer will sound if you open the door when the exterior lights are on.
- Depending on the export market, the rear lights on some vehicles may be switched on

together with the headlights when the daytime running lights* are activated. On other vehicles, the rear lights remain off.

- In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals or rear lights can sometimes mist up, due to the temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the car. They should clear again partially or completely soon after you switch on the headlights. This phenomenon has no influence on the life expectancy of the vehicle lights.
- When the side lights are switched on with the ignition switched off, the  symbol will light up in the light switch module.

Turn signal and main beam headlight lever

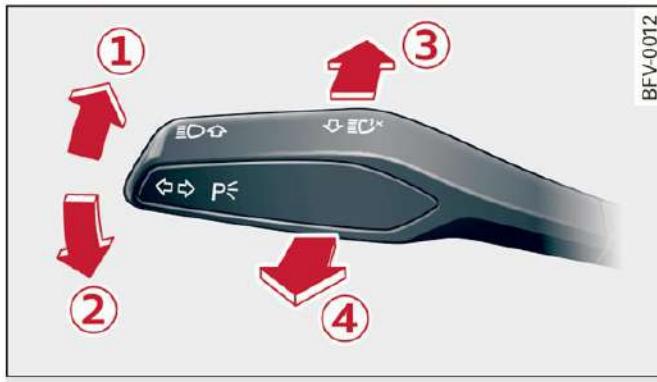


Fig. 38 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever

The turn signal lever also operates the parking lights, main beam headlights and headlight flasher.

Turn signals and parking lights

The turn signals will flash if you move the lever while the ignition is switched on. The corresponding indicator lamp  or  will flash. The parking lights will be switched on if you do this with the ignition switched off.

- ①** - Turn signals/parking lights (right side)
- ②** - Turn signals/parking lights (left side)

If you just tap the lever, the turn signals will flash three times (one-touch signalling).

If one of the indicator lamps flashes twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Drive carefully to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Main beam and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the appropriate position:

- ③** - Main beam headlights on (vehicles with main beam assist*) \Rightarrow page 50

- ④** - Main beam headlights off or headlight flasher

The indicator lamp  will light up in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

The main beam can dazzle other drivers. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.

Note

A buzzer will sound if you open the door when the parking light is on.

Main beam assist

Applies to: vehicles with main beam assist

The main beam assist automatically switches the main beam headlights on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions.

A camera (located in the mounting for the interior mirror) detects light sources from other road users. The main beams are activated or deactivated automatically depending on the position of vehicles on either side of the road, on the road speed, and on other traffic and ambient conditions.

On vehicles with matrix LED headlights, individual segments of the main beam are activated or deactivated. The relevant sector in front of the vehicle is masked, while the surrounding areas remain lit. The ambient surroundings are thus illuminated optimally without dazzling other road users.

Switching main beam assist on

Important: The AUTO lighting function must be switched on, and the main beam assist function must be activated on the MMI \Rightarrow page 51.

- ▶ Briefly press the lever forwards ③ ⇒ page 50, Fig. 38 to activate the main beam assist. The indicator lamp  will light up in the instrument cluster display and the main beams will be switched on/off automatically. The indicator lamp  is lit when the main beams are partially or fully on.

Switching the main beams on/off manually

If the main beams are not switched on or if the headlights are not dipped as expected, you can control the dip function manually:

- ▶ To switch on the main beams manually, briefly press the lever forwards ③ ⇒ page 50, Fig. 38. The indicator lamp  will light up.
- ▶ To dip the headlights manually, pull the lever towards you ④ ⇒ page 50, Fig. 38. The main beam assist will be deactivated.

Flashing the headlights

- ▶ To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you ④ ⇒ page 50, Fig. 38. The main beam assist function will remain activated if it was switched on and the headlights were dipped.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.
- The main beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on or off manually, e.g. when the light conditions or visibility are poor.
- The main beam can dazzle other drivers.
Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.



Note

Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Adjusting the settings for the exterior lighting

The exterior lighting can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > Lights & vision > Exterior lighting.

Automatic headlights

The following settings are available in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time - You can determine how soon the lights are switched on by using the settings **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** to adjust the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Main beam assist - You can switch the main beam assist on/off.

Entry/exit lights

The **entry/exit lights** illuminate the area around the vehicle after dark when you unlock the vehicle or when the ignition has been switched off and the driver's door opened. The entry/exit lights are operational only after dark when the lights are set to **AUTO**.

Lights for driving on left/lights for driving on right¹⁾

The dipped beam headlights are automatically adjusted for driving on the right or left.

Caution! When driving on motorways, please turn the light switch to the dipped headlights setting  (not AUTO); otherwise the adaptive lights may dazzle the oncoming traffic.



Note

Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

¹⁾ This function is not available on all export versions.

Hazard warning lights



Fig. 39 Centre console: Hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights make other road users aware of your vehicle in hazardous situations.

- ▶ Press the button ① to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

If you brake hard at high speed, the brake lights will flash and the hazard warning lights will come on automatically¹⁾.

You can use the turn signals to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard warning lights are on. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

Driver messages

If the indicator lamp lights up, a bulb has failed. The driver message shown indicates the cause and what action should be taken. If a message remains displayed and does not disappear, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Audi adaptive light: fault. See owner's manual

The adaptive lights are out of action. The dipped beam headlights will still be working normally. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Main beam assist: fault. See owner's manual

You can still switch the main beam headlights on and off manually. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Main beam assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

This message will appear if the camera view is obstructed. The system will switch itself off. Try switching the system on again later.

Automatic headlights: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. For safety reasons, the dipped beam headlights will then be switched on permanently when the lights are set to AUTO. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Interior lights

Front interior lights



Fig. 40 Headliner: Interior lights (example)

Press the corresponding switch in the headliner:

- Interior lights on/off

- Courtesy lighting on/off. The interior lights are switched on and off automatically when this function is activated.

Touch-sensitive reading lights*

- ▶ Briefly touch the surface ① to turn the appropriate reading light on/off.
- ▶ To use the manual dimmer function, touch the surface ① when the light is switched off, and ▶

¹⁾ This function is not available on all export versions.

hold your finger on the surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

Rear interior lights

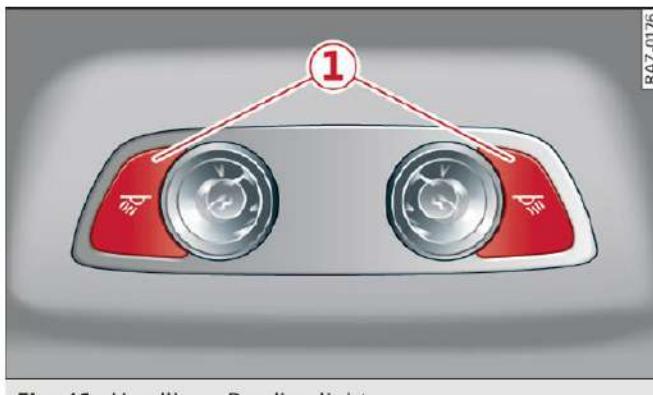


Fig. 41 Headliner: Reading lights

Reading lights

- ▶ Press the button ① to switch the appropriate reading light on/off.
- ▶ To use the manual dimmer function*, press the button ① when the light is switched off, and keep pressing it until the desired brightness level is reached.

Background lighting

Applies to: vehicles with background lighting

The background lighting turns on when the ignition is switched on. The background lighting is deactivated when the light function is OFF.

The background lighting can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Lights & vision > Background lighting**.

You can select from pre-set colour profiles, e.g. **Maritime**.

Additional settings and profiles:

- **Brightness**: You can adjust the brightness of the entire background lighting.
- **Individual**: You can adjust the brightness and colour of the background lighting individually for discrete linear and surface lighting zones.
- **Drive select**: The colour of the linear and surface lighting changes depending on the Audi drive select* mode set.

Note

If the **Drive select** function is activated on some equipment versions, the current colour of the linear and surface lighting will change briefly to red or blue whenever the interior temperature is increased or reduced manually.

Note

Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Display brightness

You can adjust the standard brightness of the instrument cluster and display lighting as desired. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Display & brightness**.

Settings available on the MMI:

- **Cockpit dimming**
- **Head-up display**
- **MMI**
- **Virtual cockpit**
- **Virtual exterior mirrors**

Clear vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 42 Driver's door: Adjuster knob for exterior mirrors

Turn the knob in the driver's door to the appropriate position:

- 0 - To deactivate all setting functions.

◀/▶ - To adjust the exterior mirror (left or right side). Move the knob in the desired direction.

■ - To heat* the mirrors (depends on the outside temperature).

■ - To fold in the exterior mirrors*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to any of the other positions. One of the MMI settings allows you to control whether or not the mirrors are folded in when you lock the vehicle ⇒ page 33.

Tilt function* for front passenger's exterior mirror

The mirror is tilted slightly to provide a better view of the kerb when parking backwards. This feature only works when the knob is in the position for adjusting the mirror on the passenger side.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by moving the knob in the desired direction.

The mirror returns to its original position from the reversing position:

- When you switch off the ignition
- As soon as you drive forwards faster than 15 km/h
- If the knob is no longer in the position for adjusting the mirror on the passenger side



WARNING

Convex or wide-angle* exterior mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects look smaller and further away than they really are. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could misjudge the distance. Risk of accident!



CAUTION

– Applies to vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), the mirrors must be fully retracted with the electric control. You will hear a loud noise when the mirrors snap back into place. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.

– Applies to vehicles without electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), it must be returned to its proper position by hand.

– Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent them from being damaged. Electrically retractable exterior mirrors* must NOT be folded in or out by hand. Always use the electrical power control.

i Note

- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.
- If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

Anti-dazzle setting

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

► Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you.

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors*

► The interior and exterior mirrors will darken when bright light (e.g. from the headlights of a following vehicle) shines on the surface of the interior mirror.



WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if needed.



CAUTION

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can damage plastic surfaces and paintwork. Use a wet sponge or similar to remove the fluid as soon as possible.

Note

- The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors may not function as intended if the light falling on the surface of the interior mirror is obstructed.
- The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors do not darken if the interior lighting is on or the car is in reverse gear.

Virtual exterior mirrors

Applies to: vehicles with virtual exterior mirrors

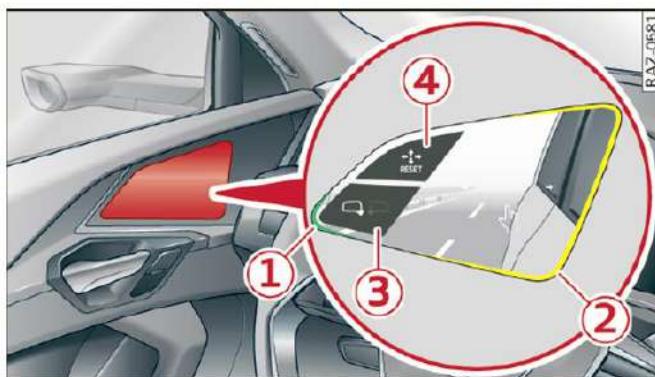


Fig. 43 Driver's door: Virtual exterior mirror (example)

Cameras are fitted on the driver's and front passenger's side in place of exterior mirrors. The images from the cameras are shown on a display on each front door. The displays have a light sensor which detects the ambient brightness and automatically adjusts the display brightness accordingly.

The turn signal **①** and lane change and exit warning **②** appear at the edge of the display when activated ⇒ page 166, ⇒ page 168.

The field of vision is automatically adjusted according to the load the vehicle is carrying. The field of vision is larger than in conventional mirrors and the blind spot is therefore smaller.

The cameras are automatically heated to prevent them from misting up.

Switching the system on

The system is started when the vehicle is unlocked. The image from the camera is shown on the displays for a certain length of time as soon as the driver's or front passenger's door is opened. The camera image is displayed permanently when the ignition is switched on.

Settings

You can adjust the brightness of the display and the field of vision in the display as desired.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Virtual exterior mirrors**.

Available settings:

Brightness - As an alternative to automatic adjustment, you can adjust the display brightness manually.

Applies to vehicles with navigation system: **Motorway view** - To make it easier to judge how fast vehicles are travelling on the motorway, the field of vision in the display is reduced at speeds above approx. 90 km/h using data from the navigation system as a reference. This causes objects to appear larger.

Turn signal view - When you use the turn signals to indicate that you are turning off or changing lane, the field of vision is extended on the same side of the vehicle as the turn signal activated. This reduces the blind spot.

Kerb view - To give you a better overview when parking and manoeuvring, the field of vision in the display is extended downwards when you engage reverse gear and at speeds below approx. 10 km/h.

Controls

While the standard or kerb view is active, you can adjust the field of vision in the virtual exterior mirrors using the touch display in the driver's door.

- ▶ To select the display on the driver's or front passenger's side, press the corresponding button  **③**. The display which is not selected will be greyed out.
- ▶ You can use gestures on the touch display to move the image accordingly ⇒ page 18.
- ▶ To restore the field of vision's default setting, press the  button **④**.

Switching the system off

The camera image remains visible for about two minutes after the ignition is switched off. The

system is shut down immediately when you lock the vehicle from outside.

WARNING

- Only operate the virtual exterior mirrors when the road, traffic, visibility and weather conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle – risk of accident!
- Depending on which field of vision is selected, the cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.
- The display contrast is reduced when a strong light source, such as direct sunlight, falls on the display. Take particular care to watch the area around the vehicle.
- It is possible that the warnings in the virtual exterior mirror may be displayed incorrectly or may not be displayed in time, e.g. if a vehicle is approaching very quickly.

Note

- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.
- Picture errors may occur in certain situations; for instance the display may be out of focus or the colours may not be reproduced accurately. This may cause parts of the field of vision to be hidden.
- The display may make it difficult for the eyes to focus on moving objects and can cause eye strain over long periods. Use the display to check the field of vision or to make necessary settings.
- Please ensure that all cameras are clean and kept free of snow and ice. They must not be covered by stickers, deposits or any other substances which could impair the function of the systems.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with virtual exterior mirrors

Exterior mirrors: fault. Safely stop vehicle

Both of the displays will be switched off. Park and then restart the vehicle. If the fault persists, drive carefully to a qualified workshop without delay and have it rectified.

Left exterior mirror: fault. Please contact workshop

Right exterior mirror: fault. Please contact workshop

The display on the corresponding side will be switched off. Park and then restart the vehicle. If the fault persists, drive carefully to a qualified workshop and have it rectified.

Exterior mirrors: camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

Please observe the notes on cleaning and care ⇒ *table on page 285*.

Sun visors



Fig. 44 Sun visor

Sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and the front passenger can be pulled out of their mountings and turned towards the doors ①.

In this position you can also slide the sun visors in or out (depending on the vehicle's equipment).

Make-up mirrors

The light for the make-up mirror comes on automatically when you slide open the mirror cover ②.

Sun blinds

Applies to: vehicles with sun blind



Fig. 45 Rear door: Sun blind

Sun blinds on rear side windows

- Pull out the sun blind and hook it into the retainer at the top of the door frame.

Wipers

Switching on the windscreen wipers



Fig. 46 Operating lever: Windscreen wipers

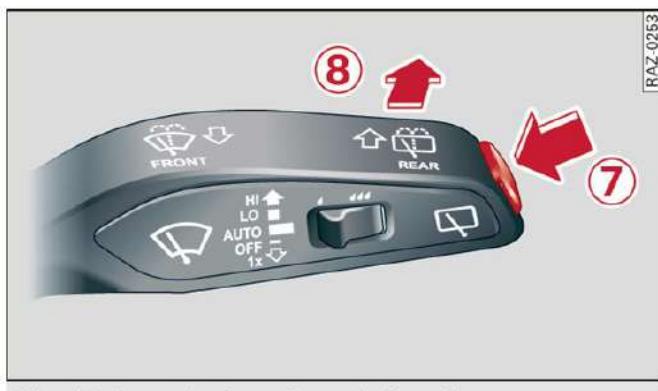


Fig. 47 Operating lever: Rear window wiper

Move the windscreen wiper lever to the appropriate position:

- ① - Wipers off
- ② - Rain sensor/intermittent wipe. As long as the vehicle has been moving faster than approx.

4 km/h at least once, the windscreen wipers will be activated automatically in the rain. The higher the sensitivity level for the rain sensor (i.e. the further switch ⑥ is moved to the right), the sooner the windscreen wipers react to moisture on the windscreen. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode (this will activate the intermittent wipe mode). In intermittent wipe mode, you can adjust the interval with switch ⑥. On the home screen, select CAR > Lights & vision > Rain sensor.

- ② - Slow wipe
- ③ - Fast wipe
- ④ - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position, the wipers will switch from slow continuous wiping to fast continuous wiping after a while.

⑤ - Wash/wipe . The screen is given an extra wipe a few seconds later to remove any dribbles of water (if the vehicle is moving). You can deactivate this function by moving the lever to position ⑤ again within 10 seconds after the extra wipe. The extra-wipe function is activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.

Headlight washers*. The headlight washer system* only operates when the dipped headlights are switched on. The headlights and the camera for the night vision assist* are also automatically washed intermittently when you move the lever to position ⑤.

⑦ - Rear window wipe . The frequency of the rear wiper depends on the frequency of the windscreen wipers.

If the windscreen wipers are on and in operation, the rear window wiper will also be switched on automatically when you engage reverse gear.

⑧ - Rear window wash/wipe . The number of wiper cycles depends on how long you hold the lever in position ⑧. The reversing camera is also washed (depends on the vehicle's equipment).

WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still obliged to manually operate the windscreen wipers as required depending on visibility.

- Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.
- Poor visibility can cause accidents. Always ensure that the wiper blades are in good condition ⇒ *page 58, Cleaning/changing the wiper blades*.

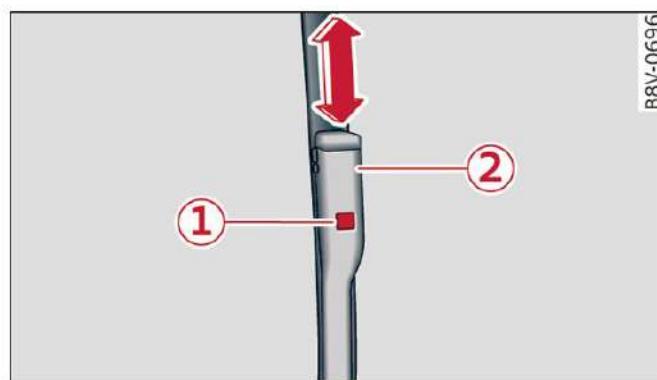
! CAUTION

- In icy conditions, check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen when you switch on the windscreen wipers, this could damage the wiper blades.
- Make sure you switch off the windscreen wiper system (lever in position ①) before you use an automatic car wash. This will avoid inadvertent triggering of the wipers and possible damage to the wiper system.

i Note

- The windscreen wipers are deactivated when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windscreen wipers after switching the ignition on again by moving the windscreen wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty wiper blades can cause smearing on the glass. This can also impair the effectiveness of the rain sensor. Please check the wiper blades regularly.
- The windscreen washer jets are heated when the ignition is switched on if the outside temperature is low.
- If you stop briefly, e.g. at traffic lights, the wiper speed setting will automatically be reduced by one level.

Cleaning/changing the wiper blades



R8V-0696

Fig. 48 Wipers: Taking off wiper blades

Service position / wiper change position

- Switch the ignition off and move the windscreen wiper lever to position ④ ⇒ *page 57, Fig. 46* and hold it there until the wipers move into the service position.
- To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch on the ignition and hold the windscreen wiper lever in position ④ until the wipers have returned to their original position or drive faster than 12 km/h.

You can also switch the service position on/off on the MMI system:

- Switch the windscreen wipers off (position ① ⇒ *page 57, Fig. 46*).
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Wiper change position**.

Cleaning wiper blades

The wipers must be in the service position before you clean the wiper blades.

- Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- Notes on cleaning ⇒ *table on page 285*.

Changing wiper blades

The wipers must be in the service position before you remove the wiper blades.

- Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- Press the release button ① on the wiper blade. Keep hold of the wiper blade while doing so.
- Pull the wiper blade out of the mounting on the wiper arm ②.
- Fit the new wiper blade into the mounting on the wiper arm. You should hear it engage.

- ▶ Fold the wiper arm back down onto the windscreen.
- ▶ Switch off the service position.

! WARNING

- For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.
- Dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view - risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- The wipers must be in the service position before lifting them off the windscreens! Otherwise the wiper motor or the paintwork on the bonnet may be damaged.
- Never move your vehicle or operate the windscreen wiper lever while the wiper arms are off the glass in a raised position. The wipers will otherwise automatically return to their park position and may damage the bonnet and windscreens.

i Note

- You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreens in the winter to keep it clear of ice.
- You cannot activate the service position when the bonnet is open.

Changing/cleaning the rear wiper blade



Fig. 49 Rear window wiper: Attaching the wiper blade

Taking off the wiper blade

- ▶ Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- ▶ Pull the wiper blade out of the retainer.

Fitting the wiper blade

- ▶ Press the mounting on the wiper blade into the retainer.
- ▶ Fold the wiper arm back down onto the rear window.

! WARNING

For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.

Driver messages

If the indicator lamp  lights up, there is a fault in the wiper system. The driver message shown indicates the cause and what action should be taken. If a message remains displayed and does not disappear, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Automatic wipers: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. You can also continue to use all the other functions of the windscreens wiper lever that do not use the rain sensor. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Sitting correctly and safely

Correct seating position for vehicle occupants

General notes

For safe driving, it is important that all occupants are seated correctly; ensuring this is the driver's responsibility.

Correct seating position

Before starting a trip, sit in the correct position and stay in this position as long as the vehicle is moving. Before every trip, make sure all passengers are sitting in the correct positions and remain correctly seated at all times. Ensure that:

- Every vehicle occupant has adjusted his/her seat correctly ⇒ *page 61*.
- The steering wheel is set correctly ⇒ *page 64*.
- The mirrors have been adjusted so that you have a good view of the surrounding area ⇒ *page 53*.
- Every vehicle occupant has adjusted his/her head restraint correctly ⇒ *page 65*.
- Every vehicle occupant has fastened his/her seat belt correctly ⇒ *page 66*.
- Applies to vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: The front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated as appropriate for the occupant of the front passenger's seat ⇒ *page 73*.
- Any children are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system on an appropriate seat ⇒ *page 73*. Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇒  in *General notes on page 74*.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the belt webbing is positioned correctly. Sitting out of position greatly reduces the effectiveness of the seat belts and increases the risk of injury since the belt webbing is not worn in the position for which it is designed.

The following list shows just some examples of incorrect sitting positions which can be dangerous to all occupants. The list is not complete, but will help to make you aware of possible dangers which can be avoided. Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- Never stand up in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never travel with the backrest reclined too far.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie down on the rear seat.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of the window.
- Never put your feet out of the window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never put your feet on the seat cushion.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never sit on the armrests.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never climb into the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Sitting out of position, not wearing a seat belt or being too close to the airbag exposes the occupants to potentially fatal injuries if, for instance, the airbags inflate and strike an occupant who is not seated in one of the proper positions. Please note the important information and safety precautions in the corresponding chapters on the subjects above.

Note

- Store your seating profile* ⇒ *page 69*. This allows you to access your personal seating profile quickly and easily at any time.
- If physical factors prevent you from being able to assume a correct seating position, please contact a qualified automotive specialist.

Front seats

General notes

Ensure that:

- You can press the pedals down completely with your legs still slightly bent;
- Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel/dashboard;
- Your knees are at least 10 cm away from the dashboard;
- Your thighs are resting lightly on the front of the seat cushion;
- The backrest is in an upright position and makes full contact with the occupant's back;
- You have a good view of the surrounding area;
- You have an unobstructed view of the instrument cluster, warning/indicator lamps and head-up display*;

Accessing the seat settings menu quickly

Applies to: vehicles with seat settings on MMI

Press the image of the driver's seat/passenger's seat \Rightarrow page 87, Fig. 87 ① in the air conditioning menu to access the seat settings for a particular seat directly.

! WARNING

- If you are too close to the steering wheel/dash panel, the airbag system cannot protect you correctly - risk of severe or fatal injury!
- To reduce any risk of injury to the driver during a sudden brake application or in an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted too far back. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. If the backrest is reclined too far to the rear, the seat belt may slide away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach - risk of injury!
- Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
- Be careful when adjusting the seats. Careless use of the seat adjustment controls can

cause injuries to both the front seat and rear seat occupants.

- Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Such objects could move under the pedals and interfere with their proper function. In the event of sudden braking or a change of direction, you would not be able to use the pedals. This could result in a loss of control and possibly cause an accident.
- Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
- Never lay additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the existing floor mats; this would restrict the pedal area and possibly obstruct the pedals, which could cause an accident.
- Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat, as this could lead to injury. This also applies to the rear seat occupants.

! CAUTION

Take care when adjusting the seat to ensure the head restraint does not collide with the headliner or sun roof*. This could cause damage.

i Note

Use only one control at a time to adjust the seat.

Manual adjustment of front seats

Applies to: vehicles with manual seat adjustment

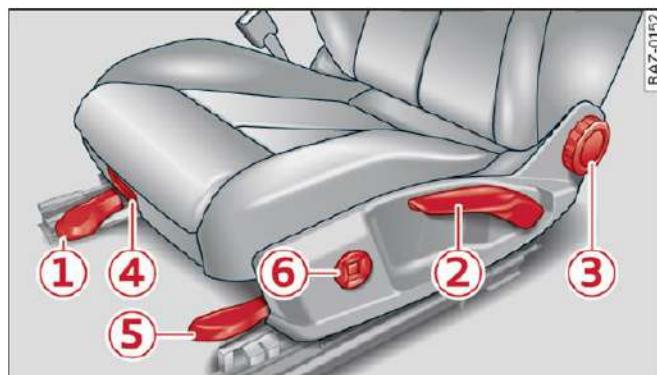


Fig. 50 Front seat: Adjuster controls

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting the seat position

- To move the seat forwards/backwards, pull the lever **①** and move the seat.
- To move the seat upwards/downwards, pull/press the lever **②**.

Adjusting the backrest

- To move the backrest forwards/backwards, turn the knob **③**.

Adjusting the thigh support

- To move the thigh support in or out, lift the handle **④**. The thigh support will spring forward.

Adjusting the seat cushion angle

- To adjust the angle of the seat cushion, pull/press the lever **⑤**.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button **⑥**.

Electric adjustment of front seats

Applies to: vehicles with electric seat adjustment

The basic settings can be adjusted using the buttons.

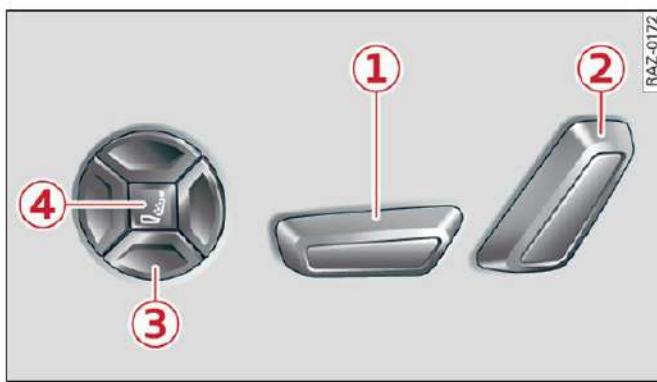


Fig. 51 Front seat: Buttons for seat adjustment

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting the seat position

- To move the seat forwards/backwards, push button **①** forwards/backwards.
- To move the seat upwards/downwards, press button **②** upwards/downwards.

- To adjust the seat cushion, press the front area of button **①** upwards/downwards.

Adjusting the backrest

- To move the backrest forwards/backwards, press button **②** forwards/backwards.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button **③**.

Massage function

Massage function on/off **④**. Setting massage programme and intensity ⇒ page 63.

WARNING

The electric front seat adjustment also works when the ignition is off. To avoid injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Adjusting the front seats on the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with seat adjustment via MMI

Further adjustments can be made using the MMI system.



Fig. 52 Upper display: Seat adjustment

The settings and the number of menus and buttons depend on the vehicle's equipment.

How to use the controls

Applies to: MMI

- On the home screen, select **CAR > Seats**.
- Swipe to the left or right to access the different menus **③**.
- To display the different seats, press on **>** or **<** **④**.

The red highlighting in the symbol **⑤** shows which seat is currently selected.

Seat adjustment

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ To select the seat adjustment type, press ① as necessary.
- ▶ Press and hold the corresponding arrow ② until the desired position is reached.

Massage

Refer to [page 63](#).

Further seat settings

Refer to [page 63](#).

Massage function for front seats

Applies to: vehicles with massage function

How to use the controls

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ To call up the **Massage** menu, press the  button ④ [page 62](#), Fig. 51. Or:
- ▶ On the home screen, select **CAR > Seats > Massage**.

Switching massage function on/off

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ To switch the massage function on/off, press the  button ④ [page 62](#), Fig. 51. Or:
- ▶ On the MMI, press **Start/Stop**.

Setting massage programme and intensity

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ To select the massage programme, press the corresponding button, e.g. **Wave**, on the MMI.
- ▶ To set the intensity of the massage, press **Intensity** on the MMI repeatedly until the desired level is reached.

Note

The massage function switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

Further seat settings on the MMI

You can use the MMI to adjust further seat settings and switch functions on/off.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Seats > Further seat settings**.

The following options may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Reset seat position

You can move the front passenger's seat into the same position as the driver's seat.

Easy entry for driver's seat

The easy entry function gives improved access to the vehicle. The steering column automatically moves upwards [page 65](#).

Important: The ignition must be switched off. The driver's seat moves backwards when the corresponding door is opened. The side cushions can deflate.

Easy entry for passenger's seat

The easy entry function gives improved access to the vehicle.

Important: The ignition must be switched off. The front passenger's seat moves backwards when the corresponding door is opened. The side cushions can deflate.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat

Applies to: vehicles with remote front passenger's seat adjustment

You can adjust the front passenger's seat using the buttons on the driver's seat.

Applies to MMI:

- ▶ On the home screen, select **CAR > Seats**.
- ▶ To display the different seats, press on  or .
- ▶ Press the  button to switch the function on. The bottom edge of the button will light up in red.

Once you have switched the function on, you can adjust the front passenger's seat using the buttons on the driver's seat [page 62](#), Fig. 51.

Note

This function is automatically deactivated when you close the menu.

Front centre armrest

Applies to: vehicles with front centre armrest



Fig. 53 Front cabin: centre armrest

Opening storage compartment

- Move the armrest upwards.

Adjusting the centre armrest

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable centre armrest

You can move the armrest backwards or forwards.

- To adjust the angle, lift the armrest out of the initial position in steps.
- To move the armrest back to the initial position, lift the armrest slightly from the top position and then fold it back down.

WARNING

In certain positions, the centre armrest may limit the movement of the driver's arms - risk of injury!

Steering wheel

General notes

Ensure that:

- Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel
- Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows
- You have a good view of your surroundings and can see the instrument cluster and head-up display* at all times
- You always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the rim at about the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position while driving

WARNING

- If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver airbag cannot protect you correctly - risk of severe or fatal injury!
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or with your hands inside the rim or on the steering wheel hub. This could result in serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the driver's airbag inflates.

Adjusting the steering wheel position (manual adjustment)

Applies to: vehicles with manual steering wheel adjustment

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

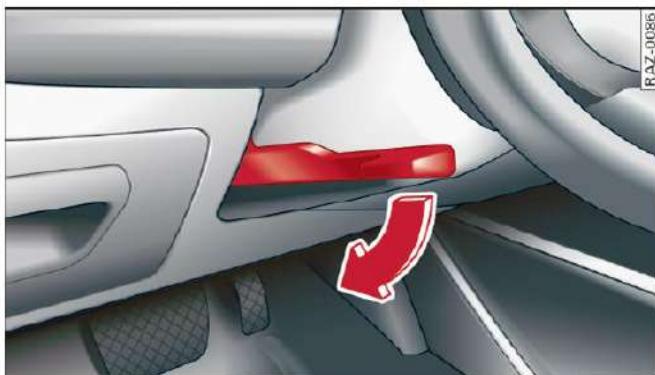


Fig. 54 Steering column: Lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

- Pull the lever in the direction indicated (arrow).
- Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- Push the lever all the way up until the catch engages.

WARNING

- Adjust the position of the steering wheel only before driving off – risk of accident!
- Press the lever upwards so it is secure and so that the position of the steering wheel cannot shift unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

Adjusting the steering wheel position (electric adjustment)

Applies to: vehicles with electric steering wheel adjustment

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted electrically to suit the driver.

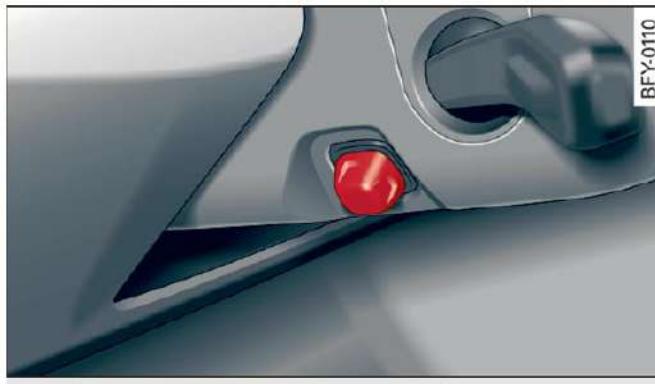


Fig. 55 Steering column: Button for adjusting the steering wheel position

- ▶ To raise/lower the steering wheel, press the switch up/down.
- ▶ To adjust the reach, press the switch forwards/backwards.

The steering wheel can be adjusted even when the ignition is off.

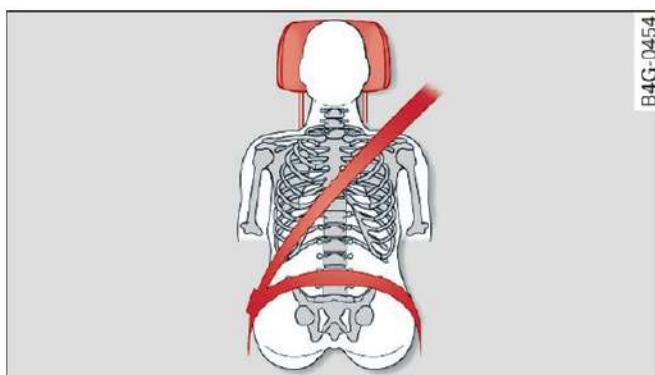
On vehicles with the memory function*, the steering column position is stored together with the seat position.

i Note

The easy entry function gives improved access to the vehicle by raising the steering column to the park position when the ignition is switched off. The steering column moves into the memorised position when the ignition is switched on. To use the easy entry function, select the following on the home screen: **CAR > Seats > Further seat settings > Easy entry for driver's seat.**

Head restraints

General notes



B4G-0454

Fig. 56 Correctly adjusted head restraint

Ensure that:

- The top of the head restraint is level with the top of your head
- The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of your head
- The head restraints on any occupied rear seats are pulled all the way up.

⚠ WARNING

- There is a head restraint for every seat. It is very important that all vehicle occupants adjust their head restraint correctly before every trip. Incorrectly adjusted head restraints can increase the risk of neck injuries in an accident or during sudden or unexpected braking or other manoeuvres.
- Remove the rear head restraints only if this is necessary in order to attach a child restraint system ⇒ *page 73*. Store head restraints securely if you remove them, e.g. in the luggage compartment. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system. Travelling with the head restraints removed increases the risk of severe neck injuries.

Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

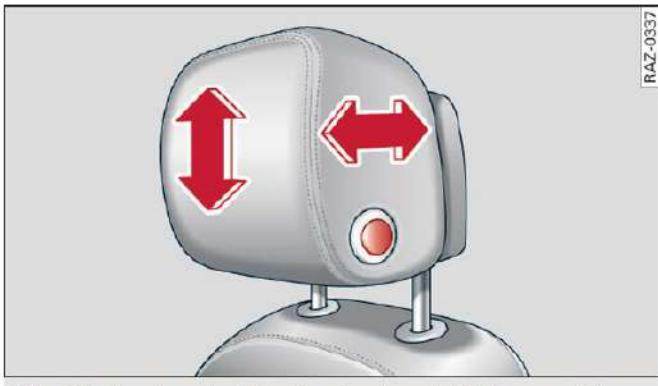


Fig. 57 Front seat: Adjusting head restraint (example)

Adjusting head restraints

- ▶ To raise the head restraint or move it forwards*, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
- ▶ To lower the head restraint or move it backwards*, press the button on the side and adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.

Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

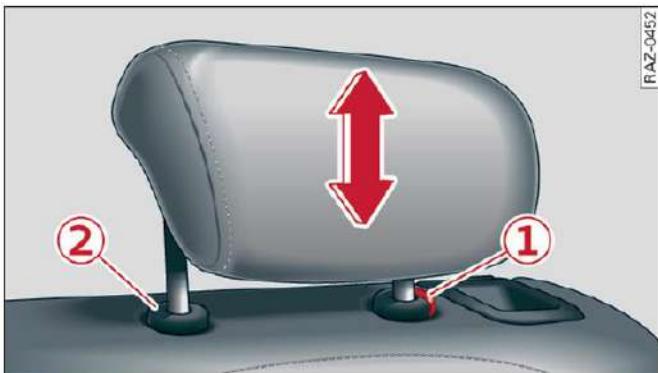


Fig. 58 Rear seat: Adjusting/removing head restraint (example)

Adjusting head restraints

- ▶ Raising: Move the head restraint upwards until you feel it click into place at the desired position.
- ▶ Lowering: Press the button at the base of the head restraint ① → Fig. 58 and move the head restraint downwards. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

Removing head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- ▶ Raise the head restraint as far as it will go.
- ▶ Press the release point ② at the base of the head restraint → Fig. 58 using the emergency key → page 37, Set of keys and press the button ①. At the same time, pull the head restraint out of the backrest → ▲ in General notes on page 65.

Installing head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- ▶ Push the posts of the head restraint into the guides until you feel them click into place.
- ▶ Press the button ① and push the head restraint all the way down. It should no longer be possible to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

Seat belts

General notes

Every seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt. When worn correctly, seat belts are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident. You should therefore ensure that you wear your seat belt correctly and that all vehicle occupants also do so when the vehicle is moving.

Although the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, all vehicle occupants must still wear seat belts. In addition to their normal function of protecting the occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold them in a position where the airbags can inflate properly and provide maximum protection. Seat belts offer protection in accidents in which no airbags are triggered or where they have already been triggered.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injury is increased if the seat belt is worn incorrectly or not at all, or if it is damaged.

- All vehicle occupants (including the driver) must put their seat belt on correctly before every trip and must always keep it on while the vehicle is moving, regardless of whether

the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to children who are being secured in a child restraint system appropriate to their height, weight and age using the seat belt.

- In an accident, unbelted passengers will be thrown around in the vehicle and make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen, doors, etc. They could even be thrown out of the vehicle. Rear passengers who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the other occupants.
- Never allow passengers to share the same seat belt. Never secure more than one person (including small children) with the seat belt.
- Never travel with children or babies on your lap and never share the same seat belt.
- To ensure that the seat belt is fully effective, the latch plate must always be engaged in the correct buckle for a particular seat.
- To ensure that the seat belts can provide maximum protection, all vehicle occupants must be seated in the correct seating position ⇒ page 61.
- Check the condition of the seat belts at regular intervals. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a qualified workshop.
- The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair a damaged belt yourself.
- Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and stretched must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Wearing a seat belt correctly

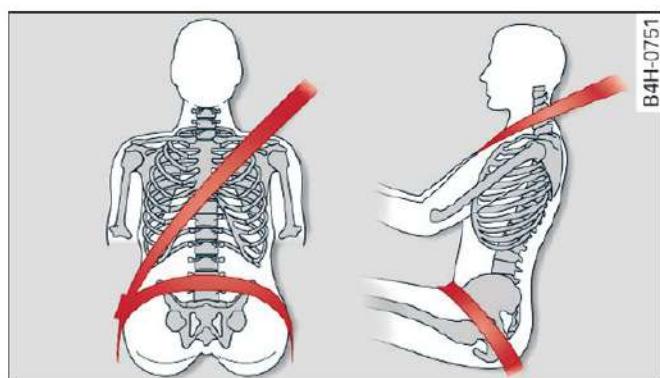


Fig. 59 Seat belt position over lap/shoulder



Fig. 60 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

Seat belts must always be worn correctly in order to provide the best possible protection in the event of an accident and to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Correctly worn seat belts also hold the vehicle occupants in position in such a way that the airbags provide maximum protection if they are triggered. For this reason, it is essential that you always fasten your seat belt and ensure that it is worn correctly ⇒ Fig. 59.

Make sure that you are wearing your seat belt correctly by checking the following points:

- The lap belt section of the belt must be worn across the hips.
- The shoulder section of the belt must be worn across the centre of the shoulder.
- The belt must make firm and even contact with the body.

At all times during pregnancy, women must wear the seat belt so that it runs evenly across the chest and as low as possible over the hips; the belt must make even contact so that there is no pressure on the stomach ⇒ Fig. 60.

WARNING

Wearing a seat belt incorrectly may result in serious injuries in the event of an accident or under sudden braking or manoeuvres.

- Never travel in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt.
- The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if it slides away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach.
- The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder and torso and never under the arm, behind the back or over the neck or face.
- The lap belt section of the seat belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and never over the stomach or abdomen.
- The seat belt must make firm and even contact with the upper body and hips.
- Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- The protection offered by the seat belt in an accident is reduced if the height of the belt is not correctly adjusted or if the seat belt is not properly positioned. Make sure that the seat belts are properly positioned and the height correctly adjusted to suit the vehicle occupants.
- Seat belts worn too loose can result in injuries because they allow excessive forward movement in a crash; the occupant will be brought to a sudden stop by the belt webbing.
- Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts.
- Do not wear the belt over hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.).
- During pregnancy, women must wear the lap belt section of the seat belt as low as possible across the hips and underneath the rounded stomach.

Fastening/unfastening the seat belt



Fig. 61 Latch plate and buckle



Fig. 62 The latch plate of the belt springs out of the buckle

Please refer to the safety notes \Rightarrow page 66.

Fastening the seat belt

- To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click \Rightarrow Fig. 61.
- Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt

- Press the red button in the seat belt buckle \Rightarrow Fig. 62. The latch plate is released and springs out.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it is taken up more easily.

Seat belt monitor

- If the warning lamp lights up/flashes, one of the seat belts is not fastened/was unfastened during driving. Above a certain speed, a warning chime will also sound.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the status of the rear seat belts may also be monitored by the following indicator lamps:

-  - If the indicator lamp lights up, the corresponding rear seat is not occupied.
-  - If the indicator lamp lights up, the rear seat belt has been fastened.

Adjusting seat belt height

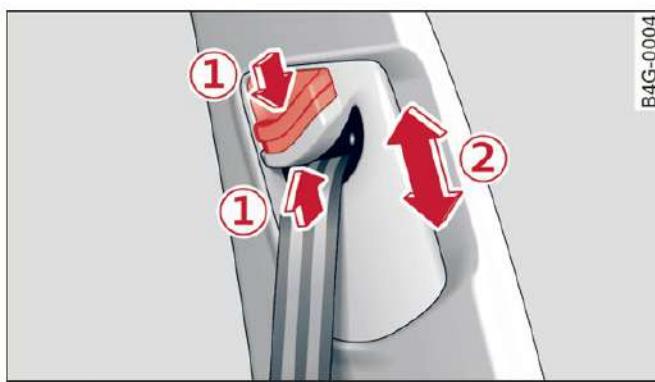


Fig. 63 Belt height adjustment for the front seats: guide fitting

- ▶ To move the seat belt higher, slide the guide fitting ② upwards.
- ▶ To move the seat belt lower, squeeze the release mechanism ① and slide the guide fitting ② downwards.
- ▶ After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the guide fitting is engaged securely.

Note

It is also possible to adjust the height of the front seats to obtain the best position for the front seat belts.

Additional seat belt functions

Automatic belt retractors

The seat belts are equipped with automatic belt retractors. The retractor system gives complete freedom of movement, as long as the pull on the belt is slow. Hard braking locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you accelerate, drive up or down a steep hill or corner sharply.

Belt force limiters

Seat belts with belt force limiters reduce the forces acting on the body from the seat belts themselves in an accident.

Belt tensioners

Seat belts with reversible belt tensioners may be tightened after you drive off or in certain driving situations. This is done if the belt is too loose and needs to be taken up in order to lie more tightly against the body.

Seat belts with pyrotechnic belt tensioners may be tensioned automatically in certain types of collision. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only be activated once. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners have been activated at any time, the system must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Note

Some smoke may be released when the pyrotechnic belt tensioners are activated. This does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Memory function

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The memory function can be used to store and call up seat profiles via the recall buttons in the door trim.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following settings can be stored:

- **Driver's seat:** Seat, steering wheel*, exterior mirrors
- **Front passenger's seat:** Seat

Storing and calling up seat profile

Applies to: vehicles with memory function



Fig. 64 Door trim: Recall buttons for memory function

Storing seat profile

- ▶ Press the [SET] button. When the LED in the button lights up, a seat profile can be stored.
- ▶ Press one of the numbered recall buttons. A tone will sound to confirm that the settings have been stored.

Recalling seat profile

- ▶ If the driver's/front passenger's door is open and the ignition is off, briefly press the recall button once. All the settings for the seat profile will be applied.
- ▶ If the driver's/front passenger's door is closed or the ignition is on, press and hold the recall button until the seat profile settings have been restored.



WARNING

- For safety reasons, never recall seat settings when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
- If necessary, the recall function can be stopped at any time by pressing the seat adjustment button in the door/on the display for the relevant seat.



Note

Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Airbag system

General notes

! WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt or sit in the correct position, or if you are seated too close to the airbag system, you will not be fully protected by the airbag system. This puts you at risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that all occupants are seated in the correct position with their seat belts fastened ⇒ *page 60*. This applies regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
- Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat. Never lean forwards or lean on the door or the side window. Keep as far away from the airbag systems as possible so that they can open without obstructions. You could otherwise sustain potentially fatal injuries if the airbags are triggered.
- Persons, pets or objects positioned between the airbag system and the occupant will prevent the airbag system from inflating properly and could be catapulted through the vehicle cabin - risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that there are no objects between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Never secure or carry objects in the area of inflation of the airbag systems, in particular around the steering wheel, on the dashboard, against the doors, on the windows and in the footwell.
- Never apply stickers or other coverings to the airbag system covers.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- The side airbags inflate from the backrest; for this reason, any protective covers fitted over the seats must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with side

airbags. Other types of covers would seriously impair the protection provided by the side airbags.

- Any damage to the original seat upholstery in the area from which the side airbags inflate must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
- Components of the airbag system are located in various parts of the vehicle. Improper servicing or repairs to the vehicle can cause damage to parts of the airbag system or prevent the airbags from working properly. As a result, the airbags may not inflate correctly or may not be triggered at all in an accident situation, putting the occupants at risk of serious or fatal injury. Have any repairs or modifications to the vehicle carried out by a qualified workshop.
- The airbag system can only be activated once; after it has been triggered, have the airbag system replaced by a qualified workshop without delay.
- The airbag may release a fine dust when it is triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and eyes and/or cause breathing issues, particularly in persons who suffer or have suffered from asthma or other breathing issues. Get out of the

vehicle or open the windows or doors to breathe in fresh air.

Note

If you are travelling with children, please note the information and safety precautions  page 73.

Safety system monitoring

The indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including control units, sensors and wiring) and belt tensioners. It lights up for a few seconds when you switch on the ignition.

If the indicator lamp  does not light up when you switch on the ignition, if it does not go out after a few seconds, or if it lights up or flashes while you are driving, there is a fault in one of the safety systems. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Have the fault in the safety systems examined without delay; otherwise the systems may fail to trigger in an accident – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Description

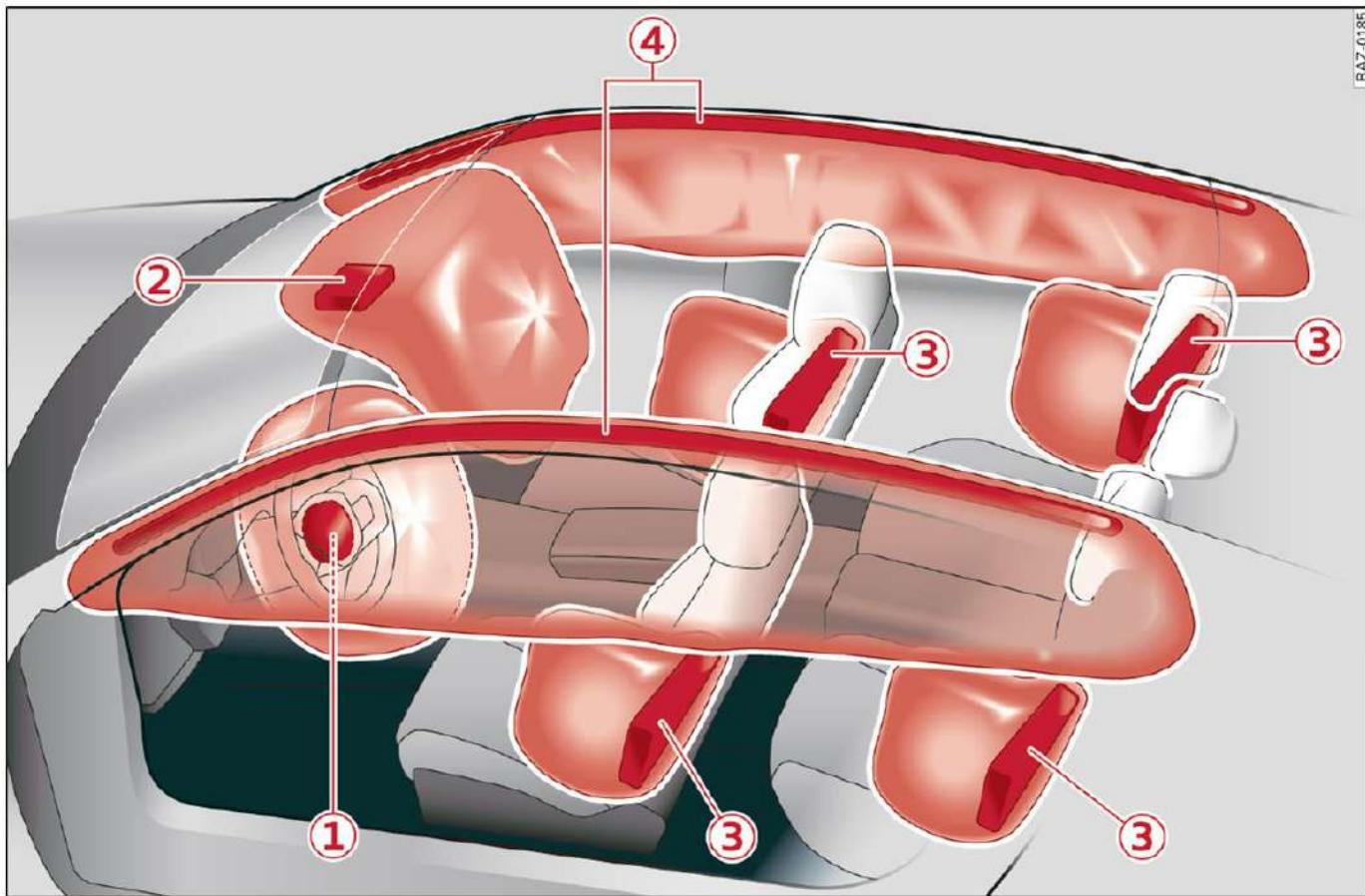


Fig. 65 Overview of airbags (inflation area after airbags are triggered) - example

The locations of the airbags are marked with the word "AIRBAG". Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following airbags may be fitted in your vehicle:

- ① Driver's airbag
- ② Front passenger's airbag
- ③ Front and rear* side airbags
- ④ Head-protection airbags

The airbags in your vehicle provide the greatest possible protection in accident situations when passengers are seated in the correct position with their seat belts properly fastened. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system; they are not a substitute for seat belts.

The airbags may be triggered in accidents affecting the front or side areas of the vehicle or in which the vehicle overturns.

It is not possible to define the exact triggering response of the airbag system in all possible situations, since the circumstances in different types of accident will vary considerably. Impor-

tant factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed and so on. Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision. By processing the signals from the sensors located in the vehicle, the electronic control unit is immediately able to evaluate the severity of the collision and activate the restraint systems accordingly. If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car. In these situations, the occupants are restrained by the correctly fastened seat belts.

When an airbag is triggered, it is filled by a gas generator. This causes the relevant airbag cover panel to break off. The airbag then opens into its deployment zone in milliseconds, with significant force. When the vehicle occupant sinks into the inflated airbag while wearing a seat belt, the gas in the airbag escapes in order to catch the occupant and reduce his/her velocity.

As the occupants move in the direction of the impact, the airbags slow their movement, thereby helping to protect e.g. the head, torso and pelvis. Nonetheless, the possibility cannot be ruled out completely that an airbag might cause injury when triggered.

The airbag system will only work with the ignition on.

Deactivating the passenger's airbag

Applies to: vehicles with key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag



Fig. 66 Glove box: Key-operated switch for deactivating front passenger's airbag



Fig. 67 Headliner: Indicator lamp for status of front passenger's airbag

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.

If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system, always switch the front passenger's airbag off
⇒ page 75. If you have deactivated the front passenger's airbag, reactivate it as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed so that the airbag can continue to give the required protection.

► Take out the emergency key ⇒ page 37.

- To deactivate the front passenger's airbag, turn the emergency key to the **(OFF)** position in the key-operated switch ⇒ Fig. 66. The indicator lamp **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will light up and remain lit.
- The front passenger's airbag can be reactivated by turning the emergency key to the **(ON)** position. The indicator lamp **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON** will light up briefly.

! WARNING

- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy - risk of severe or fatal injury! Always secure any child restraint systems to the rear seats. If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the passenger's seat, always check before driving off that **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** is lit continuously.
- Adults travelling on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the front passenger's airbag if it is deactivated - risk of severe or fatal injury! Before driving off, always check that **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** is not lit.

Child restraint systems

General notes



Fig. 68 Passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker

When installing and using child restraint systems, always observe the information in this Owner's Manual, the applicable country-specific ►

regulations and the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

WARNING

To avoid serious or fatal injury, children travelling in the vehicle must always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

- Children under 1.50 m tall or younger than 12 must not travel in the vehicle without a suitable child restraint system. Please observe any other applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.
- Improperly secured child restraint systems in the vehicle can lead to serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Children and babies must NEVER travel on another occupant's lap.
- Never allow more than one child to occupy one child restraint system.
- Never leave a child without supervision in a child restraint system.
- Never allow a child to travel unrestrained in the vehicle or to stand up or kneel on a seat while the car is moving. In an accident, the child could be catapulted through the car, causing possibly fatal injuries to itself and other occupants.
- If children are out of position when the car is moving, they are at greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This applies in particular if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat, or if the child's head is near the opening for the side airbag when the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This incorrect seating position can result in serious or even fatal injury.
- Make sure there is sufficient clearance in front of the child sitting in the child restraint system. If necessary, adjust the seat position and backrest angle of the seat in front of the child restraint system.
- The back of any forward-facing child restraint system must be flush with the backrest of the vehicle seat. Adjust or remove

the head restraint if it hinders installation ⇒ *page 65*. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system.

- Always make sure that the backrest of the seat carrying the child restraint system is properly engaged and that it cannot move forwards. Otherwise the backrest could be moved forwards, together with the child restraint system attached to it, in the event of an accident or other emergency.
- NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
 - Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.
 - Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch ⇒ *page 73*. Make sure that the front passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat.
 - If you need to use a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area. A child in a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy - risk of severe or fatal injury!
 - Always replace the child restraint system with a new one after an accident as damage not externally visible may have occurred.

- The child restraint system must always be properly secured, even when it is unoccupied; otherwise it could be flung through

the cabin during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.

The right place to seat children

Children should always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

You can secure child restraint systems in your vehicle using the ISOFIX retaining rings or the seat belts. You can also secure child restraint systems to the top tether anchorages.

Always seat children on the rear seats

Accident statistics show that the rear seats are the safest place for children to sit. Children should always be seated in an appropriate child restraint system on the rear seats approved for these systems \Rightarrow table on page 76, \Rightarrow table on page 77.

In exceptional cases: children on the front passenger's seat

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations regarding whether a child restraint system may be used on the front passenger's seat in exceptional circumstances. If the relevant coun-

try-specific regulations allow the use of a child restraint system, check the tables \Rightarrow table on page 76 and \Rightarrow table on page 77 to see whether your system can be secured in the vehicle.

If your child restraint system complies with the relevant country-specific regulations and is suitable for use on the front passenger's seat of your vehicle, please note the following:

- Applies to: rearward-facing child restraint systems
- Vehicles without deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: Use on the front passenger's seat is **not** permitted.
 - Vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag*: The front passenger's airbag must be deactivated \Rightarrow page 73.

Applies to: forward-facing child restraint systems

- Move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area.



Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with ISOFIX

Child restraint system	ISOFIX size category	Rear seats		Front passenger's seat*
		Outer	Centre	
Category 0: Up to 10 kg	E	IL	X	IL
Category 0+: Up to 13 kg	E	IL	X	IL
	D			
	C			
	D	IL	X	IL
	C		X	IL, IUF
	B	IL, IUF	X	
Category 1: 9 to 18 kg	B1		X	IL, IUF
	A		X	
Category 2: 15 to 25 kg	-	IL	X	IL
Category 3: 22 to 36 kg	-	IL	X	IL
i-Size child restraint system	-	i-U	X	X

- **ISOFIX size category:** The size category specifies the weight range for which the child restraint system is approved. On child restraint systems with universal or semi-universal approval, the size category is specified on the ECE approval label. Each child restraint system carries a label specifying the weight category.
- **IL:** Seat suitable for the attachment of an ISOFIX child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.

- **IUF:** Seat suitable for the attachment of a forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint system with universal approval.
- **i-U:** Seat suitable for the attachment of an i-Size child restraint system with universal approval.
- **X:** Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system.



Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with the seat belt

Child restraint system	Rear seats		Front passenger's seat	
	Outer	Centre ¹⁾	Front passenger's air-bag on	Front passenger's air-bag off*
Category 0 Up to 10 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 0+ Up to 13 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 1 9 to 18 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 2 15 to 25 kg	U, L	U	U	U
Category 3 22 to 36 kg	U, L	U	U	U

- **U:** Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with universal approval.
- **L:** Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
- **X:** Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system.
- **1):** Seat not suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with a support leg.

Recommended child restraint systems

We recommend the following child restraint systems from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories (www.audi.com):

- Category 0 and 0+: Audi carry cot with optional ISOFIX base
- Category 1: Audi child seat with ISOFIX base
- Category 2 and 3: Audi child seat “youngster plus”
- i-Size child restraint system: Audi I-SIZE carry cot with optional I-SIZE base
- i-Size child restraint system: Audi I-SIZE child seat with I-SIZE base

i Note

- Child restraint systems can also be secured on seats with side airbags. Side airbags can provide additional protection to children

who are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system in the event of an accident.

– For correct installation, some child restraint systems require the use of both the lower ISOFIX anchorages and the seat belt. The simultaneous use of both of these is permissible as long as this does not restrict the restraint systems or seat belts on an adjacent seat.

Attaching a child restraint system to the bottom ISOFIX anchorages



Fig. 69 Rear seat: Bottom ISOFIX anchorages

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 73.

The bottom ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seat cushion and the backrest on the vehicle's outer rear seats and on the front passenger's seat*. There are two bottom ISOFIX anchorages on these seats to which you can secure an ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint system.

- ▶ Activate the child lock ⇒ page 44.
- ▶ Remove the covers* from the two ISOFIX anchorages.
- ▶ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▶ Pull on the child restraint system to check whether both sides have engaged properly in the ISOFIX anchorages.
- ▶ If possible, also secure the child restraint system to the corresponding top tether anchorage of the vehicle ⇒ page 78.

WARNING

- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- The ISOFIX anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with ISOFIX. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Additionally securing a child restraint system to the top tether anchorage

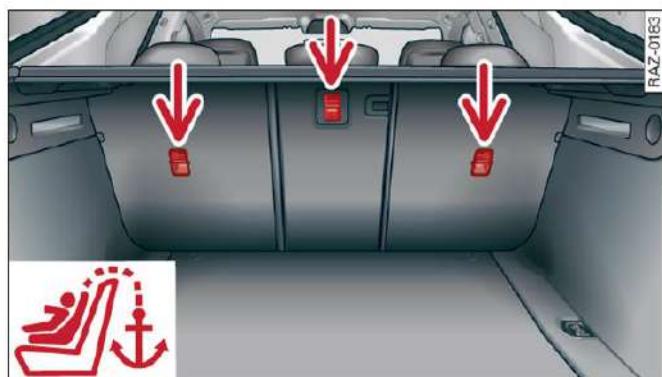


Fig. 70 Rear backrest: Top tether anchorages for securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap

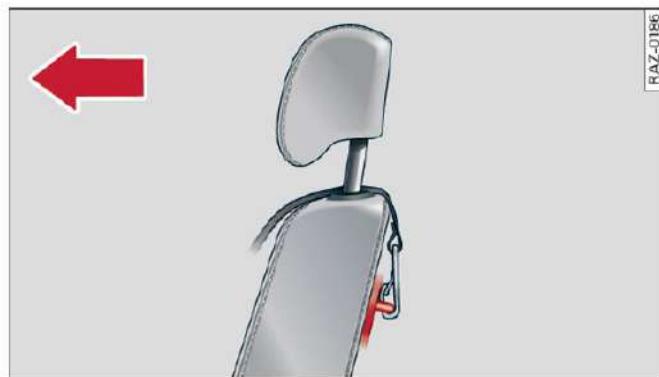


Fig. 71 Rear backrest: Hooking strap into top tether anchorage (example)

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 73.

The top tether anchorages for additionally securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap are located behind the outer and centre* rear seats.

- ▶ Push up the head restraint behind the child restraint system.
- ▶ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▶ Guide the top tether strap of the child restraint system underneath or past both sides of the head restraint (depending on the type of child restraint system) towards the rear.
- ▶ Hook the strap into the top tether anchorage ⇒ Fig. 71. When doing so, make sure that the belt is not twisted and that it is not on any sharp edges.
- ▶ Pull the strap tight so that the top of the child restraint system rests securely against the backrest.
- ▶ If necessary, push down the head restraint behind the child restraint system.

WARNING

The top tether anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with a top tether strap. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Securing child restraint systems with a seat belt

Please refer to the safety notes *⇒ page 73*.

- ▶ Activate the child lock *⇒ page 44*.
- ▶ When attaching a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far upwards as possible.
- ▶ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▶ After securing the child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's backrest so that it makes full contact with the child restraint system. You should also ensure that the upper securing point for the seat belt is behind the child restraint system.
- ▶ If you are using a child restraint system on the rear seat, you should additionally secure the child restraint system to the vehicle's corresponding top tether anchorage *⇒ page 78*, if possible.



WARNING

- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- To ensure proper protection by the child restraint system, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position. Always check that the belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.

Storage and convenience

Ashtray and cigarette lighter

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray and cigarette lighter

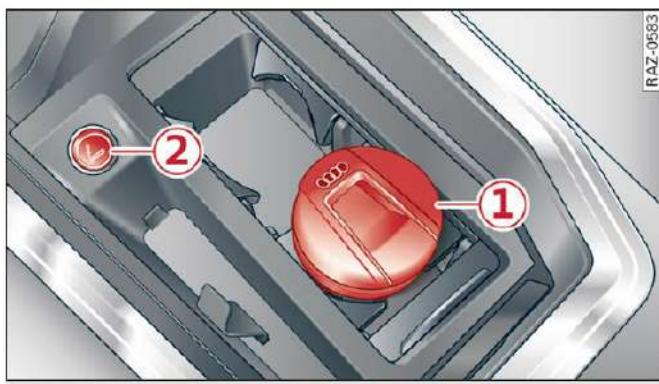


Fig. 72 Front centre console: Ashtray and cigarette lighter

Using the ashtray

- ▶ Open the ashtray ①.
- ▶ To empty the ashtray, lift it out of its holder.
- ▶ Rotate the upper section to separate it from the ashtray insert.
- ▶ Always put the ashtray safely back into the holder after removing it.

Using the cigarette lighter

- ▶ Press the button on the cigarette lighter ② in.
- ▶ When the button on the cigarette lighter springs out, pull the insert out.



WARNING

- Never put waste paper in the ashtray, as this could cause a fire.
- The cigarette lighters only work when the ignition is on. Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

12 Volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12 Volt sockets. The devices connected must not exceed a power rating of 120 W.

The 12 Volt sockets are marked with the symbol or 12V. They are located in the front centre console*, in the rear* and in the luggage compartment side trim*.

USB inputs

Applies to: vehicles with USB input

You can use the USB inputs to charge mobile devices. The USB inputs are marked with the or symbol or CHARGE ONLY.

WARNING

- Make sure that all connected devices are securely stowed when driving to prevent them from being catapulted through the car under braking or in an accident – danger to life!
- Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

CAUTION

- Please observe the operating instructions for the connected devices.
- To avoid damage to the vehicle's electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electrical current to the power sources in order to charge the vehicle's battery.
- Do not connect a device with a voltage different from the designated voltage of the socket.
- To avoid damage, please take care when detaching connectors from the electrical power sources.

Power sources

When the ignition is switched on, the following electrical power sources for external devices are available (depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle):

Cup holders

Applies to: vehicles with cup holders

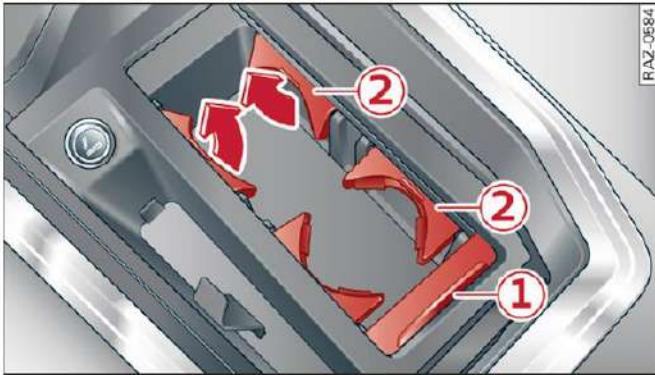


Fig. 73 Front centre console: Cup holder

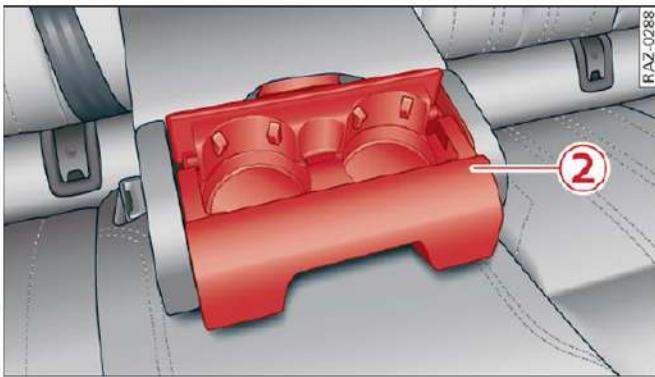


Fig. 74 Rear centre armrest: Cup holder

Cup holder in front centre console

- If necessary, slide the cover (1) back to open it.
- Swivel the cup holder out (2).

Cup holder in rear centre armrest

- Fold down the centre armrest*.
- To open the cup holder (2), tap the edge of the lid.
- To close the cup holder, push it back and press down the lid.

! WARNING

- Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holders while the vehicle is moving. You could be scalded if the hot liquid is spilt.
- Do not use cups, mugs or glasses made from hard materials such as glass or porcelain. These could cause injury in the event of an accident.

! CAUTION

You should avoid putting open drinks containers in the cup holders. The drinks could other-

wise spill over and cause damage to the vehicle's equipment.

Roof carrier

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier

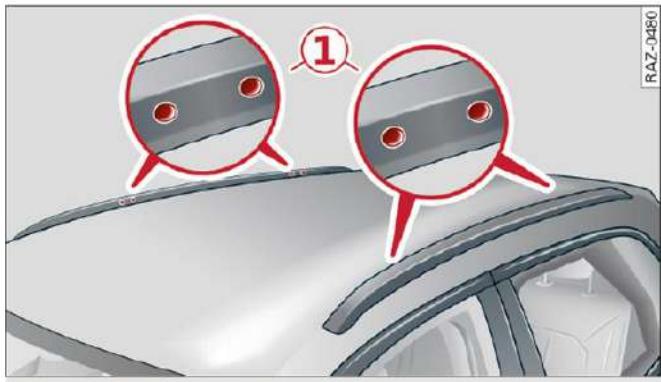


Fig. 75 Roof railing: Attachment points (example)

Note the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

- The cross bars form the basic elements of a complete roof carrier system. Only use roof carriers suitable for use with your vehicle. We recommend using roof carriers and additional elements from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Ensure that roof carriers are only fitted at the points provided on the vehicle (1).
- You should ensure that you do not exceed the maximum permitted axle loads, gross weight and roof load for your vehicle ⇒ page 312. The roof load limit applies to the combined weight of the roof carrier, the additional elements and the load itself. Please do not exceed the maximum carrying load of the carrier system you are using.

! WARNING

- Note the fitting instructions provided by the manufacturer of the roof carrier system. If you do not secure the roof carrier system and roof load correctly, they can become separated from the vehicle and cause an accident.
- The use of a roof carrier system affects the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity and increasing susceptibility to cross winds – risk of accident! Take extra care

when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.

! CAUTION

Please take care that the boot lid and sun roof* or panorama sun roof* do not come into contact with the roof load when opened.



For the sake of the environment

The increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more energy. For this reason you should always take off the roof carrier when it is not in use.

Storage compartments

Storage area in motor compartment

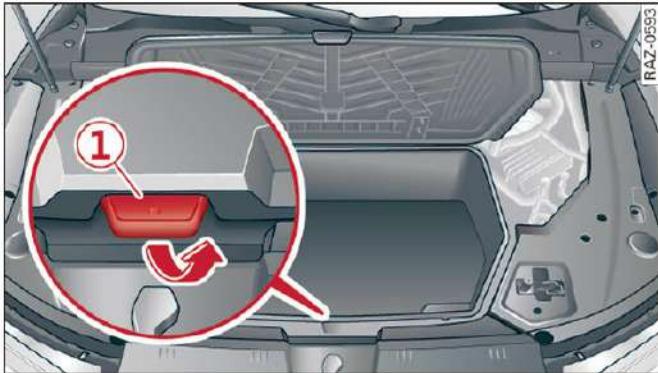


Fig. 76 Motor compartment: Storage area

A storage area is provided in the motor compartment for stowing objects such as the charging system.

Please refer to the safety notes \Rightarrow page 267, *General information*.

- ▶ Open the bonnet \Rightarrow page 268.
- ▶ Lift the lever ① to open the storage lid.
- ▶ Stow the objects.
- ▶ Close the storage lid. Make sure it engages.
- ▶ Close the bonnet.

Further storage compartments

You will find several storage compartments and retainers at various points in the vehicle:

- Glove box: The glove box can be locked with the emergency key \Rightarrow page 37.
- Notepad, pen and coin holder in glove box

- Storage compartment on driver's side of dash panel
- Storage compartments in door trim
- Storage compartments in front centre console
- Storage compartment underneath the centre armrest* (in the front cabin)
- Nets behind front seats
- Coat hooks in rear cabin
- Storage compartment in rear centre armrest*
- Removable box* underneath the floor panel in the luggage compartment
- Retaining hooks* in luggage compartment
- Net* in the luggage compartment

! WARNING

- To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep all storage compartments closed when driving.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres - risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- The storage compartments in the door trims should only be used to store small objects. Make sure that they are stored safely inside the compartment, as otherwise they might impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- Make sure that your view to the rear is not obstructed (e.g. by any items of clothing hanging up or objects in the vehicle).

Luggage compartment

General notes

All luggage and other objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment. To maintain safe handling on the road, please observe the following points:

- ▶ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- ▶ Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
- ▶ Secure items of luggage to the fastening rings with non-elastic straps.

WARNING

- The luggage compartment cover should not be used as a storage shelf. Items placed on this cover could cause injury in an accident or in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres - risk of accident! Always stow objects safely in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings. Use suitable securing straps when transporting heavy objects.
- If items of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged tensioning straps, injuries could result in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Transporting heavy objects may affect the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity - this could cause an accident. Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.
- The stretch net is only strong enough to secure light items. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!
- Never exceed the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross weight for the vehicle *⇒ page 312*.
- Never secure a child restraint system to the fastening rings.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the boot and close the boot lid from the inside. In this case the child would be unable to get out of the vehicle without help. This could have fatal consequences.
- Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you leave the vehicle.

- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. All occupants must be properly restrained by the seat belts at all times *⇒ page 66*.
- Be careful when releasing and folding down the backrest! Carelessness when folding it down could result in injuries.
- The rear backrest must always be securely latched so that objects stored in the luggage compartment will not fly forward during sudden braking.
- Make sure that the rear backrest is securely locked in position so that the seat belt can provide proper protection on the centre rear seat.
- Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

CAUTION

- Lower the rear head restraints *⇒ page 66* before you fold down the backrest – risk of damage!
- When returning the backrest to an upright position, make sure that the seat belts for the outer rear seats are in their guides so that they cannot be caught up and damaged in the catches for the backrest. It is also important to remove any other objects from the rear seats to avoid damaging the backrest when folding it forwards.
- If you need to adjust the front seats when either of the rear backrests is folded forwards, please take care to avoid damaging the rear head restraints.
- Please ensure that hard objects do not chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.
- To prevent any damage, let the luggage compartment cover retract slowly.
- To prevent any damage, let the load guard retract slowly.

Note

- The tyre pressures must be adjusted according to the load the vehicle is carrying *⇒ page 277*.

- Securing straps are available from specialist retailers.

Luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment cover

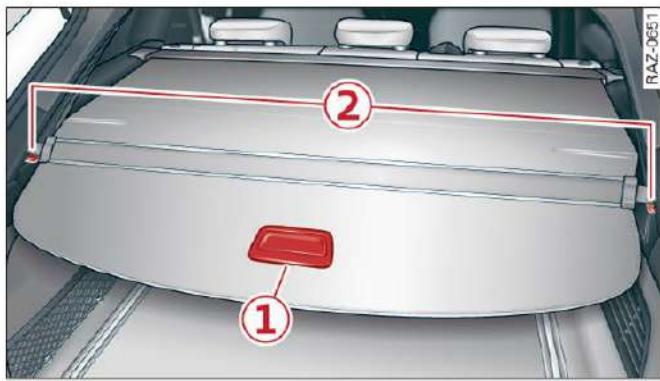


Fig. 77 Luggage compartment: Cover hooked into place



Fig. 78 Luggage compartment: Removing luggage compartment cover

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 82.

- To hook the luggage compartment cover in place, pull the cover out using the handle ① and hook it into the retainers ② on the side trim.
- To remove the luggage compartment cover, pull both levers ③ in the direction of the arrow and lift out the cover.
- To install the luggage compartment cover, hook it into the side trim mountings on both sides.
- Press the cover down until it engages.

Extending the luggage compartment

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrest

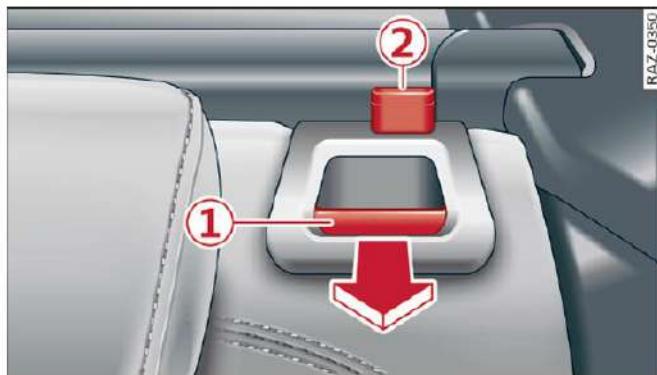


Fig. 79 Backrest: Release lever and backrest lock indicator with red marking



Fig. 80 Luggage compartment: Release lever*

The backrests can be folded down separately or together.

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 82.

- To fold down the backrest, pull the release lever ① or ③ in the direction indicated (arrow).
- When you no longer need the extra luggage space, move the backrest back into its upright position until it engages and the red marking ② is no longer visible.

Load-through hatch

Applies to: vehicles with load-through hatch



Fig. 81 Centre backrest: Release lever

Please refer to the safety notes \Rightarrow page 82.

- To fold down the centre backrest, pull the lever ① behind the trim.
- When you have finished transporting the luggage, move the centre backrest back into its upright position and make sure it engages.

Load guard

Applies to: vehicles with load guard



Fig. 82 Backrest folded down: Load guard

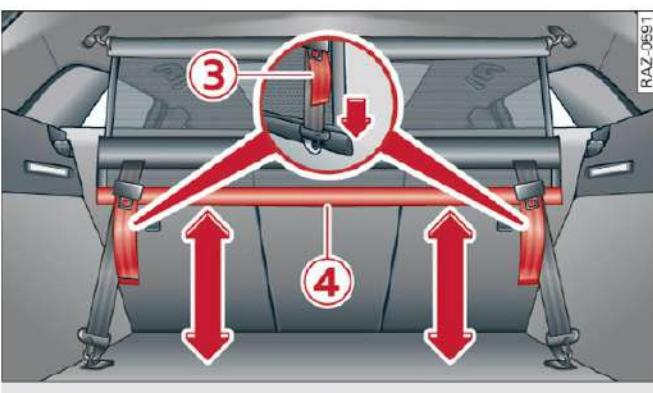


Fig. 83 Luggage compartment: Load guard

The load guard prevents objects from being thrown forward into the passenger compartment. You can attach the load guard behind the front/rear seats. Use the retainers ① or ② to do so.

Please refer to the safety notes \Rightarrow page 82.

- If necessary, fold down the backrest \Rightarrow page 84.
- To attach the load guard, hook it first into the top retainers and then into the bottom retainers.
- Tighten the securing belts ③.
- Move the bottom part of the load guard to the desired height ④.
- To unhook the load guard, loosen the securing belts.

Note

- When securing the load guard the securing belts must be facing towards the rear.
- You must unhook the load guard again before you return the backrest to the normal upright position.

Fastening rings and stretch net

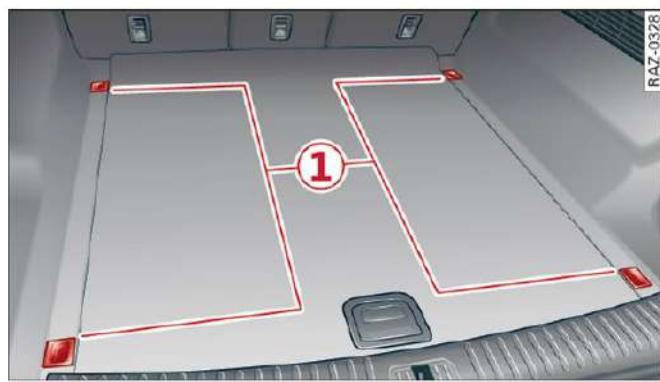


Fig. 84 Luggage compartment: Location of fastening rings

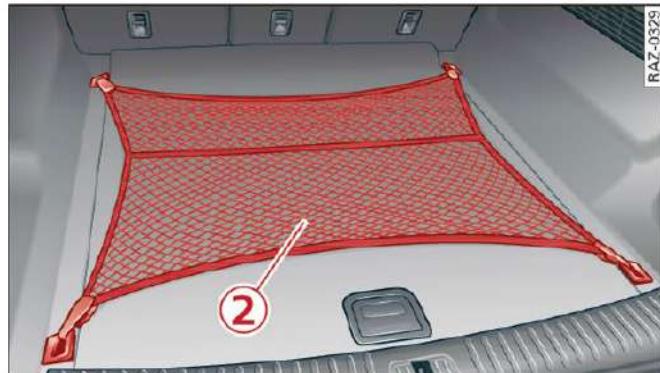


Fig. 85 Luggage compartment: Stretch net attached

Please refer to the safety notes \Rightarrow page 82.

Fastening rings

There are fastening rings ① in the luggage compartment which can be used to secure luggage and other objects.

- Use the fastening rings to secure items in the luggage compartment.

Stretch net

Applies to: vehicles with stretch net

Use the stretch net ② to secure light items in the luggage compartment.

- Fold up the clips on the fastening rings.
- Insert the hooks of the stretch net into the fastening rings.

Reversible floor covering

Applies to: vehicles with reversible floor covering



Fig. 86 Luggage compartment: Reversible floor covering

The reversible floor covering ① protects the luggage compartment and the bumper against dirt and scratches.

Please refer to the safety notes \Rightarrow page 82.

- ▶ Spread the reversible floor covering out lengthwise or sideways.
- ▶ When you are finished loading/unloading, fold the end of the reversible floor covering back in and close the boot lid.
- ▶ Fold away the reversible floor covering only when it is dry.

Note

You can also divide the luggage surface up into individual segments by folding the reversible floor covering.

Heating and cooling

Air conditioner

Description

Your vehicle will have an automatic air conditioner in one of the following versions, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

- 2-zone: The front left and right temperature and air distribution settings can be adjusted individually. Or:
- 4-zone: The temperature, air distribution and blower speed settings for all the seats can be adjusted individually.

The air conditioner heats, cools, dehumidifies and filters the air inside the vehicle. It operates most effectively with the windows and the panorama sun roof* closed. If the vehicle has been standing in the sun, it may cool down faster if you open the windows briefly to let the hot air escape.

The air conditioner will maintain the desired temperature at a constant level. When the heater is on, the blower normally only switches to a higher speed once the coolant has warmed up sufficiently (this does not apply to the defrost setting).



For the sake of the environment

Switching off A/C cooling mode saves energy.

i Note

- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling, and to prevent the windows misting over.
- Condensation can drip off the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.
- If you notice, for instance, that the seat* or rear window heating is not working, it may have been temporarily switched off by the power management function. These sys-

tems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.

- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.
- The air conditioner may contain fluorinated greenhouse gases. Further information is provided on a sticker in the motor compartment¹⁾.

Controls



Fig. 87 Lower display and row of buttons (example)

Adjustments can be made using the two displays and the row of buttons in the centre console and the control console in the rear cabin*. Refer to [page 18, Touch displays](#) for instructions on how to use the front console.

All of the air conditioner settings are available from the front seats; from the rear seats, only certain functions are available.

Lower display

The controls on the lower display are divided into two areas:

In area ①, you can select AUTO to have the blowers and air distribution regulated automatically. Individual adjustments can be made here as well.

In area ②, you can switch individual air conditioner functions on/off.

Row of buttons

Area ③ contains the and buttons to demist the windscreen and windows as quickly as possible.

¹⁾ Depending on country

Upper display

The upper display can be used to have further functions displayed, to switch them on/off and to adjust settings.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > A/C**, or:
- ▶ Select **...** on the lower display.

Rear control console*

You can use the control console to operate various air conditioner functions for the rear cabin.

Personalising

Each of the two buttons on either side of **...** in area ② can be programmed individually to an air conditioning function from the upper display.

- ▶ Press and hold the symbol of the desired function on the upper display for at least three seconds. A menu with two slots will appear.
- ▶ Drag the symbol to the left slot to program the button to the left of **...**.
- ▶ Drag the symbol to the right slot to program the button to the right of **...**.

Settings

The functions can be switched on and off by pressing the buttons. When a function is switched on, a coloured bar will light up in the button. Some buttons have more than one function; the different functions can be activated by pressing the button repeatedly.

AUTO Automatic mode

Automatic mode regulates the air output and distribution automatically in order to reach the set temperature as quickly as possible.

REAR Air conditioner for rear cabin

Applies to: vehicles with control function for rear air conditioner

Press **REAR** to enable control of the air conditioning in the rear cabin.

To exit this mode, press **REAR** or **REAR MODE EXIT**.

SYNC Synchronising

When the sync function is switched on, the temperature, air distribution and blower settings on the driver's side will be applied to the rest of the vehicle. You can operate the sync function directly by making a pinch movement with two fingers on the lower display ⇒ *page 18*.

OFF Switching off

The air conditioner will be switched off, and the supply of air from outside the vehicle will be cut off. Pressing **OFF** in the front cabin will switch off the air conditioning for the front and the rear seats. Pressing **OFF** in the rear cabin will switch off the air conditioning for the rear seats. To switch the air conditioner on again, press any of the buttons on the corresponding display.

A/C / A/C_{MAX} / A/C_{ECO} Cooling mode

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. When cooling mode is switched on, the air is cooled and dehumidified, which prevents the windscreen and windows from misting up. The air cooling is switched off automatically in frosty weather.

If you activate the **A/C** function, cooling mode will be regulated automatically.

If you activate A/C_{MAX} , cooling mode will operate at maximum power and maximum airflow. This function should only be used for short periods of time to avoid unnecessary energy consumption.

If you activate A/C_{ECO} , the air conditioner will operate in efficiency mode, which allows you to save energy.

+ / - Temperature

The temperature can be adjusted between +16 °C (+60 °F) and +28 °C (+84 °F). Outside this range, **LOW / LO** or **HIGH / HI** will appear on the display. In the two extreme settings the air conditioner operates continuously with maximum cooling or heating output, and the temperature is not regulated automatically.

Blower

You can adjust the blower speed manually using \swarrow / \searrow . You should leave the blower on at a low



setting to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated. Press AUTO for automatic control of the blower speed.

Air distribution

You can direct the flow of air manually to selected outlets using  /  / . The air distribution can be regulated automatically by deactivating all three arrows or by pressing AUTO. Selecting  will direct the air to the windscreen.

Applies to vehicles with 4-zone automatic air conditioner: The air distribution can be controlled on the rear control console* by pressing  repeatedly until the appropriate arrow appears.

Defrosting

The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. Point the outer air outlets towards the side windows to speed up the process. The air output is increased to maximum and most of the air comes out of the outlets below the windscreen. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. The temperature should be set to 22 °C or higher. A/C cooling mode is automatically switched on depending on the ambient temperature.

Rear window heating

The rear window heating operates only when the power unit is switched on, and switches off automatically after about 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold  for at least 3 seconds. It will then remain on until the ignition is switched off.

/ Air recirculation mode

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior.

Activate  to have air recirculation mode switched on/off automatically by the air quality sensor depending on the ambient conditions.

Activate  to switch air recirculation mode on manually ⇒ .

Seat heating

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

The seat heating temperature can be adjusted in several levels. Press  once to activate the highest level. Press  repeatedly to lower the temperature by one level each time. When the button is not lit, the seat heating is switched off.

Seat ventilation

Applies to: vehicles with seat ventilation

The intensity of the seat ventilation can be adjusted in several levels. Press  once to activate the highest level. Press  repeatedly to lower the intensity by one level each time. When the button is not lit, the seat ventilation is switched off.

Steering wheel heating

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

The steering wheel rim is heated electrically. You can also operate the steering wheel heating using the controls on the multi-function steering wheel ⇒ page 29.

Child lock*

When  is lit on the rear control console*, the child lock is active and operation is disabled ⇒ page 44.

Ioniser

Applies to: vehicles with ioniser

The ioniser function can reduce the harmful particles and microbes in the air to provide a higher level of air quality inside the vehicle.

Perfume

Applies to: vehicles with perfume function

The perfume function creates a pleasant aroma inside the vehicle by diffusing a fragrance via the air outlets on either side of the dashboard. The fragrance may not be diffused right away, particularly at very low or very high temperatures. The settings for the perfume feature can be adjusted ⇒ page 90.

WARNING

– For reasons of safety you should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. This mode prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle, so the windows and

windscreen can mist over if the air cooling is switched off. Poor visibility can cause an accident.

- People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature could burn themselves when using the seat heating*. These people must not use the seat heating* - risk of injury!

! CAUTION

To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating*, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.

i Note

- If the front passenger's seat heating* was on when you last switched off the ignition, it will be switched on automatically only if the ignition is switched on again within ten minutes.
- Use the perfume function* in moderation; be considerate of the well-being of passengers and pets travelling with you.
- The combination with other fragrances or smells can cause passengers to feel unwell.
- Reduce the intensity of the perfume* or switch the function off if anyone in the vehicle feels unwell.
- Use only fragrances approved for use by Audi.

Adjusting the air outlets

You can open and close the air outlets using the thumbwheels. The lever in the centre of the outlets can be used to adjust the direction of air flow.

Further settings

Further settings can be adjusted.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > A/C > ☰.

Perfume

Applies to: vehicles with perfume function

You can select the perfume and check its fill level via **Perfume selection**.

You can adjust the strength of the fragrance by selecting **Perfume intensity**.

Footwell temperature*

The footwell temperature can be adjusted for the driver and front passenger.

Air quality display

Applies to: vehicles with air quality display

You can have air quality information displayed.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select CAR > A/C > Air quality.

Pollution filter

The pollution filter cleans the air in the interior when the blower is switched on.

The effectiveness of the filter is displayed as a graphic. The graphic illustrates the number of polluting particles inside the vehicle compared to the surrounding area.

i Note

For optimum air quality inside the vehicle, close all windows and doors and activate the A/C cooling mode, the AUTO function and the automatic recirculation.

Auxiliary air conditioner

Description

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary air conditioner

The auxiliary air conditioner is switched on according to the ambient temperature and the temperature selected on the air conditioner console. You can use the MMI to activate and deactivate the air conditioning immediately or to program a timer.

Important: The high-voltage battery must be sufficiently charged.

i Note

- The auxiliary air conditioner heats/cools the interior to the temperature last selected on the air conditioner.

- If the auxiliary air conditioning is active, the charging status of the high-voltage battery may decrease even when it is being charged.
- If the auxiliary air conditioner is on, it is not switched off automatically when the vehicle is started or stopped.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary air conditioner

On the home screen, select: **CAR > A/C > **.

Immediate start

You can switch the auxiliary air conditioner on/off immediately via the  button. When the function is switched on, a coloured bar will light up above the button and the time remaining will be displayed.

After an immediate start, the auxiliary air conditioner will continue to run for a maximum of 30 minutes.

Timer programming

You can program up to two timers for the departure time; only one timer can be activated at any one time.

- ▶ Select a timer.
- ▶ Set the date and select **Next**.
- ▶ Set the time (departure time) and select **OK**.
- ▶ Select  to activate the timer.

The departure time specifies when the vehicle interior is to reach the desired temperature. The departure time must be within the next six days. The auxiliary air conditioner will continue to run for approx. ten minutes after the departure time is reached.

After the ignition is switched off

After the ignition is switched off, information on active timers is shown on the upper display. You can press the  button to start the programmed air conditioner immediately or press  to open the auxiliary air conditioner menu.

Note

- To ensure that the timer operates correctly, check that the correct time and date are entered in the system settings  page 263.
- The auxiliary air conditioning can be switched on/off immediately even if a timer has been programmed.
- The auxiliary air conditioning may continue to run for a long period after the programmed departure time.
- You can control the air conditioning in the vehicle interior when charging the high-voltage battery via the charging timers. The performance of the air conditioner depends on the power rating of the mains connection.

Further settings

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > A/C > Auxiliary air conditioner > **.

Air conditioning when unlocking*

When this function is activated, the air conditioner is switched on for five minutes after the vehicle is unlocked.

Convenience aux. A/C*

Applies to: vehicles with convenience auxiliary air conditioner

You can select whether the steering wheel heating* and seat heating or seat ventilation are to be activated automatically together with the auxiliary air conditioner. You can select the corresponding zones.

Glass surfaces first*

Applies to: vehicles with convenience auxiliary air conditioner

You can select whether the rear window and mirror are also to be heated when the auxiliary air conditioner is on.

Driver message

- There is a fault in the auxiliary air conditioning.

If this message appears, a system malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Driving

Starting the vehicle

Description



Fig. 88 Centre console: Switching on the power unit

Your vehicle is powered by an electric motor. The ignition and power unit can be switched on separately just like on vehicles with combustion engines. Electronic systems such as the MMI are available when only the ignition is switched on, although the vehicle is not ready to drive at this stage. The vehicle cannot be moved electrically until the power unit has been switched on and activated.

Important: The key must be in the vehicle. When using the Audi connect key*, the mobile device or activated Audi connect key card must be in the charging box ⇒ page 189.

Switching on the power unit

- ▶ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press the **START STOP** button. The power unit will be switched on.

A glance at the power meter reveals whether or not the power unit is switched on ⇒ page 16.

Switching off the power unit

- ▶ Stop the vehicle.
- ▶ Press the **START STOP** button. The power unit will be switched off.

The steering will be locked if you switch off the power unit and open the driver's door. The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent.

Switching off the power unit in an emergency

If necessary, the power unit can be switched off in an emergency* while the vehicle is still moving.

- ▶ Press the **START STOP** button twice in quick succession or press and hold it.

Switching the ignition on/off

If you only wish to switch the ignition on or off and do not want to start the power unit as well, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Press the **START STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic ignition off

To prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged, the ignition and, in some cases, the exterior lighting may be switched off automatically.

Requirements:

- You must have driven the vehicle.
- You must have left the vehicle more than 30 seconds ago.
- The ignition must be switched on.

The methods used by the vehicle for detecting whether you have left include the following:

- Driver's door has been opened.
- Driver's seat belt has been unbuckled.
- Brake pedal is not pressed.
- Driver's seat is not occupied.

The ignition will also be switched off after 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle from the outside.



WARNING

- Never switch off the power unit until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.

- Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the vehicle or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries.
- Always select P when the vehicle is parked to prevent it from rolling away.

Note

- Any brief noises which may be heard when the vehicle is started and stopped are quite normal and no cause for concern.
- The output from the power unit depends on the temperature and charge level of the high-voltage battery.
- It may not be possible to start the vehicle at extremely low outside temperatures.

Driver messages

Engine start system: fault. Please contact workshop

Do **not** switch off the ignition; otherwise you may not be able to switch it on again. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Engine start system: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the motor start system. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Remote control key: key not recognised. Is key still in vehicle?

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the vehicle key was removed from the vehicle while the power unit was active. If the vehicle key is not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the power unit after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

Remote control key and smartphone not detected. Are key and smartphone still in vehicle?

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the vehicle key and smartphone were removed from the vehicle while the power unit was active. If the vehicle key and smartphone are not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the power unit after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

Remote control key: hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual

The vehicle key battery is empty or a malfunction has occurred. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the  symbol ⇒ page 92, Fig. 88.

If the malfunction remains permanently, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Hold back of key against marked area or put smartphone in charging box

The vehicle key battery is empty or a malfunction has occurred. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the  symbol ⇒ page 92, Fig. 88 or use the Audi connect key.

If the malfunction remains permanently, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Driving

Driving away, stopping, parking

Driving away from a standstill

- ▶ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Switch on the power unit.
- ▶ Select a transmission position.
- ▶ Release the parking brake.
- ▶ Take your foot off the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press the accelerator to increase the speed.

Stopping and parking

- ▶ Stop the vehicle and keep your foot on the brake pedal.
- ▶ Apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Select transmission position P to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition before you leave the vehicle.

- When parking on a hill or gradient, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move unexpectedly.

On a gradient, apply the parking brake before selecting transmission position P. This reduces the load on the locking mechanism.



WARNING

- Secure your vehicle at all times so that it cannot roll away – risk of accident!
- The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when the vehicle is stationary. The vehicle could otherwise start moving immediately (in some cases even if the parking brake is engaged) and possibly cause an accident.



Note

Please note, especially when driving off and parking, that the vehicle does not “creep” forwards/back. The power unit does not set the vehicle in motion when you take your foot off the brake pedal.

Transmission positions and driving programs

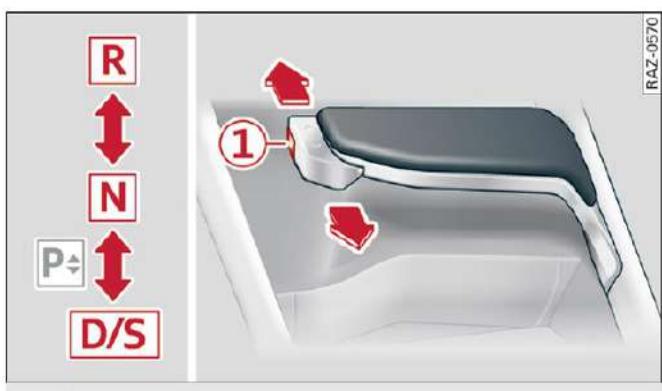


Fig. 89 Centre console: Handrest with selector lever

The selector lever is located at the side of the handrest. You can operate the selector with your thumb and index finger.

The transmission positions are shown next to the handrest.

- P (Park): Parking lock
- R (Reverse): Drive backwards
- N (Neutral)
- D (Drive): Drive forwards

Selecting a transmission position

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
- To select the next adjacent transmission position, move the selector lever forwards or backwards to the first point of resistance.
- To skip a transmission position (e.g. to go from D to R), move the selector lever past the point of resistance in the desired direction.
- The selected transmission position will light up next to the selector lever.

Transmission position N (neutral)

No power is transmitted to the driven wheels in transmission position N. Use transmission position N, for example, in a tunnel car wash.

If you accidentally select transmission position N while the vehicle is moving (at more than 2 km/h), you can switch back to D without pressing the brake.

For safety reasons, the vehicle cannot be locked when N is selected.

Transmission position P (parking lock)

In transmission position P, the vehicle is prevented from rolling away by the parking lock.

- Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
- Press the P button ① on the selector lever.
- Transmission position P will light up next to the selector lever.

If you switch off the power unit when transmission position D or R is selected, P will be engaged automatically. If you switch off the power unit in N, P will be selected automatically after approx. 30 minutes.

The power unit must be active in order to change from P to D or R.

Selecting a driving program

Various driving programs can be selected in transmission position D. These have an effect on the response of the accelerator pedal and power unit.

If you select **dynamic** or **offroad** mode in Audi drive select*, the driving program S will be

activated. If you select **efficiency**, E will be activated. The driving program may be switched back to D when the ignition is switched off.

Press the selector lever downwards to switch between the current driving program and S.

WARNING

- Before driving off, check that the desired transmission position is displayed next to the selector lever.
- Secure your vehicle at all times so that it cannot roll away by pressing the brake or selecting transmission position P. You should also always apply the parking brake when leaving the car.
- Do not press the accelerator before selecting a transmission position with the vehicle stationary and the power unit active, as this could cause an accident.
- Never select transmission position R or P when driving at normal speeds, as this could cause an accident.
- The car can roll away even if the ignition is switched off.

Note

You do not have to press the brake pedal if you switch back and forth between D and R within one second. This allows you to rock the car backwards and forwards, e.g. to free it from snow or mud, etc.

Accelerator

Aside from the normal response you would expect from an accelerator, a kick-down function is available for maximum power unit output and acceleration if you press the accelerator all the way down.

Applies to vehicles with boost function: In driving program S, the boost function draws even more power for a short time. The availability of this function depends, among other things, on the charge level of the high-voltage battery and the temperature of the drive components.

WARNING

The driven wheels may start to spin when you use the kick-down function, causing the vehicle to lose grip, on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

Launch control

Applies to: vehicles with launch control

The launch control gives you optimum acceleration when starting from a standstill.

Important

- Driving program S must be selected \Rightarrow page 94 or Audi drive select* must be set to **dynamic** mode \Rightarrow page 105.
- The boost function must be available \Rightarrow page 95.

Using the launch control

- Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot and hold it down for at least one second.
- At the same time, press the accelerator all the way down with your right foot. As soon as the colour border of the power meter flashes dynamically, take your foot off the brake pedal.

WARNING

Only use the launch control when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your driving style and acceleration do not inconvenience or endanger other road users. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Accelerating with the launch control places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear.

Note

Some vehicle components may be hot after accelerating with the launch control. In this case, the function may not be available for several minutes. This is to avoid damage. The

launch control will be available again after a cool-down period.

Driver messages

Gearbox: fault. Safely stop vehicle

Do not drive on. Stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible and secure it so that it cannot roll away. Obtain professional assistance.

Selector lever: fault. Transmission mode can only be changed using both paddle levers.

A selector lever malfunction has occurred. You can continue driving but the selector lever is out of operation. The transmission positions can only be selected by simultaneously pulling both paddle levers briefly while the vehicle is stationary. Transmission position P will be selected automatically when you switch off the power unit. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

P button: fault. Auto P when engine switched off. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred on the P button on the selector lever. Transmission position P will be selected automatically when you switch off the power unit. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Vehicle may roll away! P cannot be selected. Please apply parking brake

It is no longer possible to engage the parking lock. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Power unit

Recuperation

A recuperation feature allows the vehicle to recover energy. The electric power unit works like a generator, converting a large proportion of the vehicle's kinetic energy into electrical energy, which is stored in the high-voltage battery. The recuperation process causes the vehicle to decelerate, much like the engine braking effect on vehicles with combustion engines. This happens automatically in transmission position D when you

press the brake pedal or take your foot off the accelerator.

When you press the brake pedal, the recuperation function is used to brake the vehicle (the brake is only activated if necessary). This means that, by adopting a moderate driving style, it is possible to brake the vehicle almost down to a standstill using the recuperation function; this will lose hardly any energy and maximise the electric range.

Recuperation settings

You can select the intensity of the recuperation braking effect when the vehicle is coasting.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Charging & efficiency > Efficiency assist > Recuperation**.

Automatic: The recuperation braking effect is based on predictive* control, e.g. allowing for the road or traffic ahead. You can correct the braking effect temporarily by selecting a different recuperation level via the paddle levers.

Manual: The recuperation braking effect is controlled manually. You can use the paddle levers to select a recuperation level.

Settings via paddle levers:

- Select  for a stronger braking effect.
- Select  for a weaker braking effect.



WARNING

In certain situations, the recuperation function can brake the vehicle in anticipation of the route or traffic ahead; however the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to apply the brakes – risk of accident!



Note

When the ESC is restricted or switched off, the automatic recuperation is unavailable and there will be no braking effect.

Range display

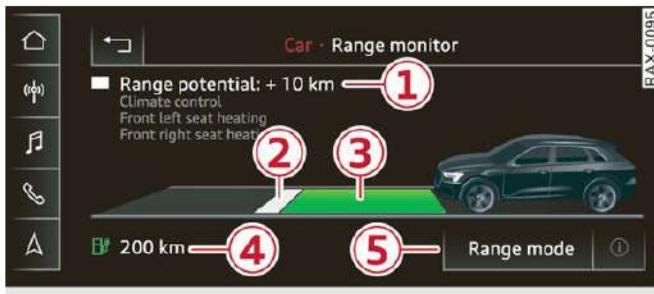


Fig. 90 Range monitor (example)

You can display the estimated vehicle range.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Vehicle information**.
- ▶ If necessary, scroll to the **Range monitor** display.

- (1) Range potential (value)
- (2) Range potential (diagram)
- (3) Total range (diagram)
- (4) Total range (value)
- (5) Range mode

Range potential: This value indicates the distance which you can cover in addition by switching off certain convenience functions. Convenience functions with high energy consumption are listed in the display.

Range mode: By pressing this button, you can switch the vehicle into a more economical mode in order to maximise the current range. In this case, convenience functions are switched off and the power output and maximum speed are reduced, for example. You can exit this mode by pressing the button again, pressing the Audi drive select* button or switching off the ignition.

Note

- The range can also be displayed in the vehicle information tab in the instrument cluster.
- The values are calculated based on the recent consumption figures.

Vehicle sound

Electric power units are much quieter than combustion engines. To make the vehicle more audi-

ble when driving under electric power, an artificial vehicle sound is produced on models for some countries. The vehicle sound is automatically faded out at higher speeds, as tyre and wind noise increase.

WARNING

Other road users may not hear an electric vehicle when it is moving. This applies in particular in areas with traffic calming measures, when manoeuvring or reversing – risk of accident!

Driving in an efficient and environmentally conscious way

Energy economy, environmental impact and wear on the drive system, brakes and tyres depend largely on the way you drive the vehicle. You can drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way by considering the following tips:

- Select **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select* ⇒ page 105.
- Switch off any electric equipment you do not need (e.g. seat heating*).
- Anticipate the traffic conditions to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking. Use the efficiency assist* ⇒ page 147.
- Brake early and evenly in order to use the recuperation function.
- Avoid driving at high speeds.
- Remove ballast, such as roof racks or rear carriers, when not needed.
- Have the vehicle serviced regularly.
- Do not use winter tyres in summer.
- Make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure ⇒ page 277.

Driver messages

⚠ Drive system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The vehicle can no longer be powered. Stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Obtain professional assistance.

⚠ Drive system: fault. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Drive system: warning! Limited performance

The power output is limited. The high-voltage battery may not be sufficiently charged or may have reached a critical operating temperature, e.g. in extremely cold weather.

Vehicle sound: fault. Vehicle inaudible to pedestrians. Please contact workshop

A vehicle sound fault has occurred. Drive extremely carefully, as other road users may not be able to hear the vehicle under electric power. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Brakes

General notes

You can use the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

Noises

Brake noise may develop in certain situations, depending on the speed, braking force and ambient conditions (such as temperature and relative humidity).

The brake system performs system tests at regular intervals while the vehicle is stationary. Noises may occur temporarily and haptic feedback may be felt on the brake pedal.

Braking effect

The response of the brakes depends on the weather and ambient conditions. To ensure an optimum braking effect, the brake system cleans itself at regular intervals. To do so, the brake pads are applied to the brake discs briefly at high speeds when the windscreen wipers are on.

If the brake system is wet, e.g. after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Further causes of a temporary increase in brake response time include:

- Wet conditions
- Low temperatures, ice and snow

- Salted roads
- Dirty brake pads

Corrosion

Corrosion can form on the brake discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages. In this case, you can clean the brake discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇒ .

Use transmission position N to do so, to prevent the recuperation function from being used for braking.

Brake pads

New brake pads do not give full braking effect for the first 800 km, they must first be “bedded in”. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal. Avoid placing a heavy load on the brakes during the running-in period.

The rate of wear on the brake pads depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. For example, the rate of wear will increase if the vehicle is used frequently in city traffic, for short distances, or for hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

WARNING

- When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to inconvenience or endanger other road users; do not risk an accident.
- All brake repairs must be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory – risk of injury! Improper repairs can also impair the function of the system.
- Never let the car coast with the power unit switched off (this can cause accidents).
- If a braking manoeuvre is initiated by the vehicle, the brake pedal may move automatically towards the floor. Do not rest your foot underneath the brake pedal – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- Never let the brakes “drag” by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really intend to brake. This can cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and use the recuperation braking effect \Rightarrow page 96. This will reduce the load on the brakes.

Note

- If you wish to equip the car with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the brakes is not obstructed; otherwise the brakes can overheat.
- Please also observe the information on brake fluid \Rightarrow page 271.

Driver messages

Brakes: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the brake system. If  and  also light up, this means that the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems have failed.

Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance. Please refer to the additional safety notes \Rightarrow .

Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

The brake pads are worn. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the brake pads checked.

Brakes: risk of overheating. Please select D and use recuperation

The brakes have been used intensively. Select transmission position D and use the recuperation braking effect to take the load off the brakes and protect them against overheating.

Brake servo: restricted. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the brake servo. The brake servo remains available with reduced capacity. The brakes may perform differently than

usual. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

If the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems fail, input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Electro-mechanical parking brake

Description

The  button is located in the centre console below the selector lever.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electro-mechanical parking brake. The parking brake replaces the conventional handbrake, and is mainly intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling away accidentally.

Applying/releasing the parking brake manually

- To apply the parking brake, pull the  button. The LED in the button will light up. In addition, the warning/indicator lamp  or  will light up.
- To release the parking brake manually, press the brake or accelerator pedal with the ignition switched on and simultaneously press the  button. The LED in the button and the warning/indicator lamp will go out.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the driver's seat belt must be fastened and the indicator lamp  must be lit up.

- Accelerate in the usual way to drive off and release the parking brake automatically.

When the warning lamp  in the instrument cluster is lit, the conditions for automatic release of the parking brake have not been met. Release the parking brake manually.

Further features and safety functions are available for driving off, in addition to the automatic parking brake release function ⇒ page 101.

Preventing the parking brake from being released automatically

In certain situations, e.g. on a steep hill or when towing a trailer, you may wish to prevent the vehicle from rolling back.

- To prevent the parking brake from being released automatically, pull and hold the  button while you press the accelerator. The parking brake will remain engaged and prevent any tendency to roll back down the slope.
- You can release the  button as soon as enough power is being delivered to the wheels.

Emergency braking function

You can use the emergency braking function in emergencies or if the main brake system fails or the pedal is obstructed.

- Pull and hold the  button.
- The brakes will be released immediately if you release the  button or press the accelerator.

If you pull and hold the  button while the vehicle is moving, this will initiate an emergency brake application. The brakes are then applied hydraulically at all four wheels. The effect is similar to heavy braking ⇒ .

To prevent the emergency braking function from being used accidentally, a warning buzzer sounds when the  button is operated. The brakes are released immediately when you release the  button or press the accelerator.

Parking the car

- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a stop.
- To apply the parking brake, pull the  button.
- Select transmission position P.
- Switch off the power unit ⇒ .
- When parking on a hill or gradient, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move unexpectedly.

WARNING

- The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when a gear is engaged and the power unit is active with the vehicle stationary. The vehicle will otherwise start moving immediately and could cause an accident.
- You should only use the emergency braking function in a real emergency, for example if the brake system were to fail or if the brake pedal were to be obstructed. If you use the emergency braking function by activating the parking brake switch, this has the same effect as heavy braking. Please remember that the ESC (and the integrated ABS, EDL and traction control functions) is still subject to certain physical limits. In a corner or in bad road or weather conditions an emergency stop can cause the vehicle to skid or lose steering control.
- Always apply the parking brake before leaving your vehicle – even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Otherwise the vehicle can roll away – risk of accident!
- It is not possible to apply the parking brake if the electrical power supply fails. In this case, park the vehicle on a level surface and select transmission position P to prevent it from rolling. You should then obtain professional assistance.
- Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the vehicle, release the parking brake or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries.
- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

CAUTION

Never leave your vehicle unattended while the power unit is active – risk of accident!

Note

You can apply the parking brake manually or switch on the hold assist* when stopping at traffic lights, etc. You do not then have to hold the car with the brake pedal. When you drive off in the normal way, the parking brake will be released automatically and your vehicle will start moving \Rightarrow page 101, *Driving off using assist functions*.

Note

The parking brake will be applied automatically if you leave your vehicle while transmission position D or R is selected.

Note

- Any slight noise which may be heard when the parking brake is applied or released is quite normal and no cause for concern.
- The parking brake runs an automatic test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is parked. This may cause a slight noise, which is normal.

Driving off using assist functions

Various features and safety functions are available for driving off, depending on the equipment in your vehicle.

Hill starting with the parking brake applied

Important: The driver's door must be closed and the driver's seat belt must be fastened.

- To drive off more easily on a slope, apply the parking brake and drive off just as you usually would. The parking brake will be released automatically, but not until there is enough power at the wheels to make the vehicle move in the desired direction.

Hill starting with the hill hold assist

The hill hold assist function makes it easier to drive away on a slope.

Important: The driver's door must be closed and the power unit must be active.

- To activate the hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds. The vehicle must be on a slope and facing uphill.

When you release the brake pedal the braking force will be maintained for a moment \Rightarrow  in order to hold the vehicle and make it easier for you to drive away.

Driving off with the hold assist

Applies to: vehicles with hold assist

With some equipment versions, you can switch the hold assist on/off via the MMI.

- Applies to vehicles with MMI and hold assist setting: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Hold assist**.

The hold assist helps the driver if the vehicle is stationary for a long period or very often, for instance at traffic lights, on steep gradients or in stop-and-go traffic.

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the power unit must be active and transmission position D must be selected.

- Once it detects that the vehicle has stopped, the hold assist keeps the vehicle stationary. In this case, a green indicator lamp  lights up in the instrument cluster. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Drive off in the normal way: the brake will be released automatically and the vehicle will start moving.

In certain situations, the hold assist transfers the job of holding the vehicle to the parking brake. As soon as the parking brake is holding the vehicle at a standstill, the warning/indicator lamp  or  appears in the instrument cluster. In addition, the LED in the  button will light up.

The hold assist is switched off in transmission position R to facilitate manoeuvring. Press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle.



WARNING

- If you use the hill hold assist and do not move off promptly after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately

press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.

- The intelligent technology in the hold assist* and hill hold assist functions cannot defy the laws of physics. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the hold assist* and hill hold assist functions tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- The hold assist* and hill hold assist functions cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy).
- Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Switch off the hold assist function and select transmission position N before driving the vehicle into a tunnel car wash to prevent the parking brake from being applied automatically.

Driver messages

If the warning lamp  flashes, insufficient braking force has been applied or released. Select transmission position P as an additional safeguard. Make sure that the warning lamp has gone out before you drive off.

Parking brake: fault. Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

If the warning lamp and the message appear **after you switch on the ignition when the vehicle is stationary**, please check whether you can release the parking brake. If the parking brake cannot be released you should obtain professional assistance. If the parking brake can be released but the message still appears, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

If the warning lamp and the message appear **while driving**, there may be a malfunction in the parking brake auto release or the emergency brake functions. You may not be able to apply or release the parking brake. Do not park the car on a gradient. Obtain professional assistance.

Parking brake: fault. Please release parking brake

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Release the parking brake and then apply it again.

Parking brake: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the fault rectified. Do not park the vehicle on a gradient, as it may roll away.

Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

The braking force applied is insufficient to hold the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle can roll away, even on a gentle slope.

Parking brake is applied

If this message appears, press the brake pedal and then release the parking brake as necessary.

Please take over.

If this message appears, press the brake pedal.

Special driving situations

Driving on hills and gradients

Please follow the tips below when driving on hills and gradients:

- Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
- Do not try to turn round if you can't make it up a hill or gradient. Instead, drive back down in reverse gear.
- Use the recuperation braking effect when driving down gradients  This will reduce the load on the brakes.
- If necessary, use the hold assist assist .
- If necessary, use the downhill assist .

WARNING

- Drive only on gradients for which your vehicle is designed. Do not exceed the vehicle's available climbing power. Your vehicle could tip over or slide away.

- Keep the vehicle straight when driving on steep hills and gradients. If your vehicle is in danger of tipping over, you must steer in the direction of the gradient immediately – risk of accident!
- Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the downhill speed control.

Driving off-road

Your car is not an off-road vehicle. Please therefore note the following if you drive the vehicle on unsurfaced tracks or off-road:

- Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
- Take the ground clearance of your vehicle into account ⇒ *page 106* and do not drive the bottom of your vehicle directly over raised obstacles. Instead, drive the wheels on one side of the car up and across the top of the obstacle to prevent damage to the underbody.
- When driving over sand or soft mud, maintain a moderate speed. The vehicle will be less likely to get stuck if you avoid stopping.

Use the following functions as required:

- Audi drive select* **offroad** mode ⇒ *page 105*
- Downhill assist function* ⇒ *page 103*
- Raise the vehicle ⇒ *page 106*
- Restrict the ESC ⇒ *page 110*

WARNING

When driving off-road you are advised to avoid tracks or terrain which are not suited to the design of the car and your own driving skills and experience.



For the sake of the environment

Take care not to damage the environment and respect natural surroundings. Keep to the marked tracks and routes.



Note

Wash your vehicle after driving it off-road. Dirt and stones falling off the car can be a hazard to other road users.

Driving through water

If you cannot avoid driving on a flooded road, you should follow the advice below:

- Check the type of road surface under the water, the strength of the current and the depth of the water. The water **must not be higher than the vehicle's underbody**, even allowing for landslides.
- Drive carefully and not faster than walking pace so that any waves created by the movement of the car do not splash over the underbody. Bear in mind that waves can also be created by on-coming traffic.
- Do not stop the car in water.
- Do not switch off the power unit.

WARNING

After driving through water, carefully apply the brakes to dry them and restore the full braking power.

CAUTION

Parts of the vehicle (e.g. power unit, gearbox, running gear or electrical components) can be badly damaged when driving through water.

Note

Avoid driving through salt water to prevent corrosion. If any vehicle parts come into contact with salt water, rinse them with fresh water.

Downhill assist function

Applies to: vehicles with downhill assist function

The  button is located in the function bar on the lower display and lights up when the system is switched on.

The downhill assist function can help you to drive down steep gradients by applying the brakes automatically on all four wheels to maintain a constant speed. You can use the accelerator and brake pedals to control the speed. How the regulating function operates depends on the gradient and road speed.

► To switch on: Press .

- To switch off: Press  again.

When is the regulating function active?

The regulating function is active shortly after you drive off and up to a speed of approx. 30 km/h on gradients of approx. 6 – 60 %. When these conditions are met, the regulating function is active and the indicator lamp  lights up.

Standby mode

If one of the conditions for the regulating function has not been met, the system is in standby mode. The indicator lamp  may light up. The system can revert to active regulation as soon as the conditions have been met again.



WARNING

- Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the downhill assist function.
- Always adjust the speed to suit the vision, weather, road and traffic conditions. The system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.
- The system cannot keep your vehicle's speed constant under all circumstances when you are driving down a hill, e.g. if the road is slippery – risk of accident!



Note

If you set Audi drive select* to **offroad** mode, the downhill assist function will be switched on.

Handling dynamics

Audi drive select

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select allows you to use different set-ups on your vehicle. You can switch between different driving modes, e.g. from a dynamic set-up to a comfortable one. In addition, the **individual** mode allows you to adapt the vehicle set-up to suit your personal driving style. For example, you might choose to combine a more dynamic drive set-up with a lighter steering response.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select



Fig. 91 Centre console: Button for Audi drive select

- ▶ Press the left or right arrow button \Rightarrow Fig. 91 repeatedly until the desired mode appears on the MMI. Or:
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Audi drive select**.

You can change the mode while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If traffic conditions permit, take your foot off the accelerator briefly after you change the mode so that the new mode is also activated for the power unit.

offroad* – assists the driver on unsurfaced tracks. The air suspension* raises the vehicle to the second highest level. The function of the ESC is restricted and the downhill assist function* is activated. The mode is cancelled again when you switch off the ignition.

allroad* – provides a balanced vehicle set-up. The air suspension* raises the vehicle to the second highest level.

efficiency* – trims the vehicle to a fuel-saving set-up and helps the driver adopt an economical driving style. Driving program E is selected.

comfort – alters the vehicle set-up for a more comfortable ride and is suitable for long motorway trips, for instance.

auto – gives an overall impression of a comfortable but dynamic ride and is a good choice of set-up for everyday use.

dynamic – gives the vehicle a tighter set-up and is ideal for performance driving. Driving program S is selected.

individual \Rightarrow page 105.

Note

- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.
- In towing mode, some elements of the vehicle set-up are adjusted automatically.

Configuring “individual” mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can configure the details of your personal vehicle set-up. The settings are stored according to the user and are available again the next time you begin a journey.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Audi drive select**.
- ▶ Press next to **individual**.

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which systems you can select:

Drive system

The response of the power unit to accelerator pedal movements is more spontaneous or balanced.

Steering

The degree of power assistance \Rightarrow page 107 can be varied. A light, indirect steering response is particularly suitable on long motorway trips.

Suspension*

The suspension \Rightarrow page 106 is set for a firmer or more comfortable ride depending on the road surface.

The air suspension* adjusts the vehicle's ground clearance according to the setting.

Suspension

Suspension control

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

The suspension control is an electronically controlled shock absorber system. The firmness of the shock absorbers is adapted to the road conditions and the driving situation. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

Air suspension

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension

The air suspension is an electronically controlled shock absorber and vehicle level regulating system. The firmness of the shock absorbers is adapted to the road conditions and the driving situation. The system compensates for differences in vehicle load. In addition, the level of the vehicle is adjusted in steps depending on the vehicle's speed in order to reduce air resistance at high speeds and to increase ground clearance at low speeds. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

Displaying vehicle level

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Audi drive select**.

The current suspension level is indicated by solid segments on the display. The more segments that are filled out, the higher the ground clearance. The current segment flashes while the suspension is being raised or lowered. The target level is indicated by a red frame.

Raising the vehicle

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Audi drive select**.
- Press **Raise** to set the highest vehicle level and thereby the maximum ground clearance.

- Press **Lower** to lower the vehicle again.

The Audi drive select* mode may be changed when the vehicle is raised.

The vehicle is lowered at speeds of approximately 35 km/h and above. This function may only be used for short periods of time when increased ground clearance is required and is not suitable for permanent use while driving.

! CAUTION

When transporting the vehicle by lorry, train, boat, plane, etc., it must only be strapped down on the tyres. It is not permissible to secure the vehicle by its axles, struts or towline anchorages, since the pressure in the air suspension can change during transport. Under certain circumstances there is a risk that the vehicle may not be properly secured.

Ground clearance

The height and ground clearance of the vehicle can be affected by the following factors:

- Changes in temperature
- Changes in vehicle loading
- Changing the Audi drive select* mode
- Raising/lowering the vehicle via the air suspension*

! WARNING

Take special care that no-one can be injured if the vehicle level is changed, e.g. while the underbody or wheel arches are being washed.

! CAUTION

Always ensure that there is sufficient clearance above and below the vehicle. This applies especially when driving into areas with low headroom, e.g. car parks. You should also be aware that the underside of the vehicle can make heavy contact with the ground if you drive onto the kerb or up a steep ramp – risk of damage!

Driver messages

Air suspension: service mode. Vehicle can be moved but handling may be impaired

Service mode is activated. Drive carefully to a qualified workshop without delay and have the service mode deactivated.

Air suspension: fault. You can continue driving slowly at max. XXX

A malfunction has occurred. The vehicle's stability may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay. Do not drive faster than the speed given in the driver message.

Air suspension: fault. You can continue driving slowly. Speed limited to max. XXX

A malfunction has occurred. The vehicle's stability may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay. The maximum speed has been limited.

Air suspension: fault. Safely stop vehicle. Steering and ground clearance restricted

A malfunction has occurred. Do NOT drive on. Stop the vehicle safely. Avoid making steering movements, as the ground clearance of the vehicle may be so low that a steering input could damage the wheels and wheel housing.

Suspension: fault. You can continue driving

A malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Air suspension: vehicle too low. Ground clearance limited

The vehicle's ground clearance is very low. Wait until the air suspension has restored the ground clearance to a normal level. If the indicator lamp does not disappear, even after a long waiting period, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Air suspension: fault. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred. The vehicle's stability may be restricted and the ground clearance may be low. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Audi drive select: suspension lowered automatically. See owner's manual

The vehicle level will be adjusted to the setting stored in the personal profile currently active
⇒ page 30.

Audi drive select: suspension raised automatically. See owner's manual

The vehicle level will be adjusted to the setting stored in the personal profile currently active
⇒ page 30.

Steering

Description

The electro-mechanical power steering assists the driver when steering by adapting the degree of power assistance electronically, depending on the speed. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

Driver messages

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

The power assistance may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to allow for the possibility of heavy steering and stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. The ignition can no longer be switched on. Do not have the vehicle towed away, because you won't be able to steer it. Obtain professional assistance.

Steering: fault. You can continue driving

A malfunction has occurred. The steering may be heavier or its response may be more sensitive than usual. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Have the steering checked by a qualified workshop without delay. Please note that the red warning lamp may appear if you restart the power unit, and in this case you must not continue driving.

Steering lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed if there is a fault in the electronic steering lock - risk of accident!

Note

You can drive on if the warning/indicator lamp  or  lights up only briefly.

Four-wheel drive (quattro)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with four-wheel drive

The four-wheel drive system varies the distribution of power to the front and rear axles and thus improves the vehicle's handling characteristics. It interacts with a selective wheel torque control, which may intervene when cornering ⇒ *page 109*.

The four-wheel drive is specially designed to complement the superior performance of the power unit in your Audi. This combination gives the car exceptional handling and performance capabilities - both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points ⇒ .

WARNING

- Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions – risk of accident!
- The braking ability of your car is limited by the grip of the tyres. In this respect, your car is no different from a car without four-wheel drive. So do not be tempted to drive too fast – risk of accident!
- On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to “aquaplane” and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too

fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in motor speed to warn the driver, as with a front-wheel drive car. So do not drive too fast in the wet: adjust your speed to suit the conditions (accident risk).

Driver messages

Four-wheel drive: fault. Restricted stability. Please contact workshop

The vehicle's stability is restricted. You can continue driving carefully. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electronic stabilisation control

Description

The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) increases the car's stability. It reduces the tendency to skid and improves the stability and roadholding of the vehicle. The ESC detects critical handling situations, such as understeer, oversteer and wheelspin on the driven wheels. It stabilises the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the motor torque.

If the indicator lamp  flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC is intervening.

If the indicator lamp  lights up, the ESC system has been switched off for system reasons. In this case, the ESC can be reactivated by switching the ignition off and then on again. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

If the indicator lamp  lights up, the ESC system has been partially or completely switched off manually ⇒ *page 110*.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking until the vehicle has reached a virtual standstill. You can continue to steer the vehicle even when the brakes are on full. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and do not pump the brakes. ►

There may be noises while the anti-lock brake system is working.

Brake assist

The brake assist system can shorten the braking distance. The braking force is automatically boosted if you press the brake pedal quickly in an emergency. You must keep pressing the brake pedal until the danger has passed. The activation of certain driver assist functions can cause the response of the brake assist system to be more sensitive than usual.

Traction control system (ASR)

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system reduces the torque to match the amount of grip available. This helps the car to start moving, accelerate or climb a gradient.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheels and directs the power to the other wheels. This function is not available at high speeds.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle can still be driven. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Steering assistance

The ESC can also intervene via the steering in order to stabilise the vehicle.

Trailer stabilisation system*

Trailers have a tendency to sway. If the ESC detects that the trailer is swaying and this is affecting the towing vehicle, it will automatically brake the vehicle in order to stabilise the trailer
⇒ page 129.

Selective wheel torque control

The selective wheel torque control function intervenes when cornering by braking the wheels on the inside of the bend individually as required. This enables precision cornering.

Multicollision brake assist system

The multicollision brake assist system can help to reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during an accident. If the airbag control unit detects that a collision has taken place, the ESC system applies the brakes.

The vehicle will not be braked automatically if:

- the driver presses the accelerator,
- the brake pressure applied by pressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure initiated by the system,
- or the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle's electrical system are not fully functional.



WARNING

- The grip provided by the ESC and the integrated systems is still subject to the physical limits of adhesion. Always bear this in mind, especially on wet or slippery roads. If you notice the systems cutting in, you should reduce your speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- Remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive fast, especially in corners or on a wet or slippery road, or if you follow too close behind the vehicle in front of you. Please bear in mind that even the ESC and the integrated systems cannot compensate for the increased accident risk.
- When accelerating on a uniformly slippery surface (for instance all four wheels on ice or snow), press the accelerator gradually and carefully. The driven wheels may otherwise start to spin (in spite of the integrated control systems), which would impair the car's stability and could lead to an accident.



Note

- The ABS and ASR systems can only work properly if all four tyres have a similar degree of wear. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce motor power when this is not desired.

- The systems can make noises when they intervene.

Operation

The  button is located in the centre console above the selector lever.

The ESC is switched on automatically when the ignition is switched on. However, in certain situations it may be appropriate to restrict the ESC so that the wheels can spin. For example, when:

- Rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it
- Driving in deep snow, on loose surfaces or with snow chains fitted
- Offroad mode: Braking on unsurfaced tracks when driving downhill
- Offroad mode: Driving with axle articulation

Restricting the ESC (sport/offroad mode)

- To restrict the ESC, press the  button briefly. The indicator lamp  will light up.
- To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamp will go out.

Either sport mode or offroad mode will be activated, depending on which Audi drive select* mode is selected. Sport mode is best used for driving on even surfaces. Offroad mode is suitable for driving on uneven terrain with loose surfaces.

Switching off the ESC

- To switch off the ESC, press and hold the  button for more than 3 seconds. The indicator lamps  and **ESC OFF** will light up.
- To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamps will go out.

- Only drive the vehicle with the ESC switched off or with restricted functions if this is necessary. You should switch the ESC on again as soon as possible.

Note

If there are faults in other systems or if specific driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on for system-related reasons. In such cases, the ESC is switched on automatically and cannot be restricted or switched off using the button.

Driver messages

Stabilisation control (ESC/ABS): fault! See owner's manual

There is a fault in the ABS or EDL. This will also cause an ESC malfunction. The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (however the ABS control function will be out of action).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.



WARNING

- If the ESC has been switched off or if its functions have been restricted, the vehicle will not be stabilised at all or will only be stabilised to a limited degree. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

High-voltage system

General notes

Introduction

All work on the high-voltage system must be carried out solely by qualified high-voltage technicians and authorised workshops according to Audi's regulations.

The high-voltage system is comprised of a high-voltage battery, power electronics, electric motors, a high-voltage air conditioner compressor, a high-voltage heater, charging system, charging connection and orange high-voltage cables.

The high-voltage battery is located on the vehicle floor and cannot be serviced by the user.



WARNING

The voltage of the high-voltage system is potentially lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted. A warning sticker is attached to the different parts of the high-voltage system. This is intended to warn you of the high voltage.

- Even when the ignition is switched off, potentially lethal voltages still exist in the high-voltage system.
- Never perform work on the orange-coloured high-voltage cables or the other high-voltage components yourself. Work on the high-voltage system may only be performed by authorised workshops that have been approved for this type of work.
- The orange-coloured high-voltage cables must never be damaged, modified, removed or disconnected from the high-voltage system.
- Never use cutting, forming or sharp-edged tools or heat sources in the vicinity of high-voltage components and high-voltage conductors.

- Any gases escaping from the high-voltage battery may be toxic or flammable.
- Damage to the high-voltage battery may result in the battery developing a leak (either immediately or subsequently) which could release toxic or flammable gases. These gases must not be inhaled!
- Do not expose yourself to any fluids escaping from the high-voltage battery; avoid all contact with these fluids.
- The electrolyte fluid in the high-voltage battery is corrosive. If the electrolyte fluid comes into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.
- In the event of a technical emergency, inform the service team that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery.



CAUTION

The high-voltage system can be damaged if the underside of your vehicle makes heavy contact with the ground. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle checked.

Transporting the vehicle

What you must note when transporting the vehicle.

The lithium-ion high-voltage battery fitted in your vehicle has been successfully tested in accordance with the UN Manual of Tests and Criteria, Part III, Sub-section 38.3. It was manufactured according to a quality management programme. The vehicle may be transported with the high-voltage battery fitted by air or sea as a regular Class 9 hazardous substance without additional official approval (legal status: IATA-DGR and IMDG Code 01.01.2018).

Charging the high-voltage battery

Introduction

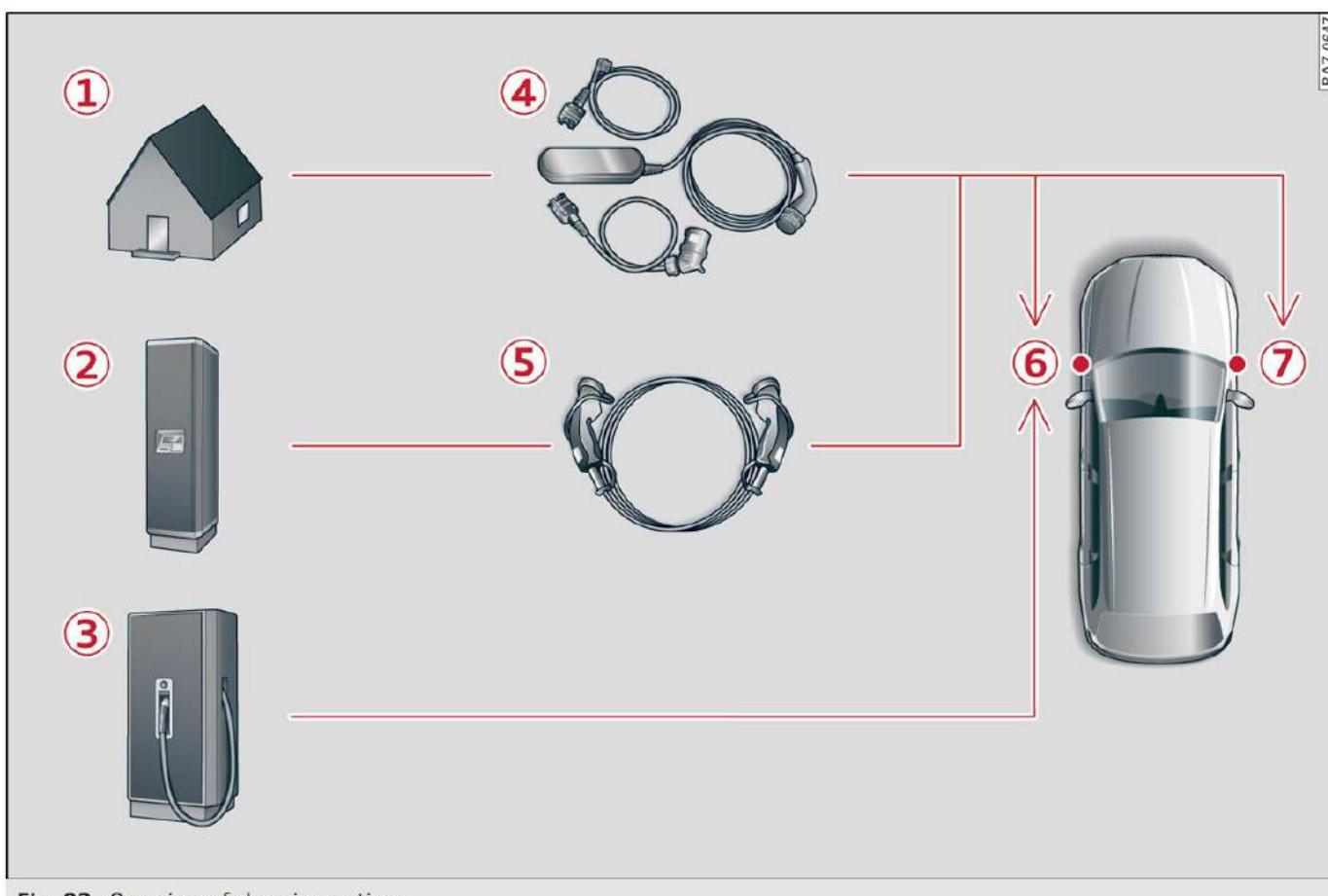


Fig. 92 Overview of charging options

The following options are available for charging the high-voltage battery:

Charging method	Charging cable	Charging connection on vehicle ^{a)}
① Charging at a domestic or industrial AC power outlet	④ Audi e-tron charging system (compact) ⇒ page 121	⑥ / ⑦*
② Charging at a public charging station (with AC power)	⑤ Factory-supplied charging cable ⇒ page 120 or charging cable at charging station	⑥ / ⑦*
③ Quick-charging at a public charging station (with DC power)	Charging cable at charging station	⑥

^{a)} The charging connections are the other way round on right-hand drive vehicles.

For AC power supplies, Audi recommends charging the high-voltage battery at an industrial power outlet, charging station or wallbox. The efficiency will be higher and the charging time much lower compared with charging at a domestic power outlet.

You should only charge the vehicle at a domestic power outlet with the Audi e-tron charging system (compact) if an industrial AC power outlet or a public AC or DC charging station is not available.

Charging with AC power at domestic and industrial power outlets or at public charging stations

The vehicle's high-voltage battery can be charged with AC power via the charging connection ⑥. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, there may be a second charging connection ⑦ on the opposite side. Both charging connections have the same charging capacity. You can use whichever charging connection is more convenient. When one charging connection is used, the other is deactivated.

Quick-charging with DC power at public charging stations

The vehicle's high-voltage battery can be charged at a charging station with DC power via the charging connection ⑥ on the driver's side. The charging cycle is much quicker. The charging cable used must not be more than 30 m long.

Charging time

The amount of time required to charge the vehicle can vary depending on the following:

- Type of power outlet used (domestic or industrial).
- The country's grid voltage, current rating and number of phases available.
- Domestic connection.
- Charging capacity setting on Audi charging system operating unit.
- Fluctuations in mains supply.
- Ambient temperature surrounding the vehicle.
- Temperature of high-voltage battery.
- Air conditioner settings for interior temperature.
- Electrical capacity of charging connector.
- Ignition switched on/off.

Important safety notes

WARNING

Improper battery charging, e.g. failure to observe generally applicable safety precautions, the use of unsuitable or damaged outlets and charging cables, or charging at unsuitable electrical installations can result in short-circuits, electric shocks, explosions, fire and serious burns – risk of fatal injury!

- Charge the vehicle only at undamaged power outlets which have been professionally installed and tested, and at fault-free electrical installations.
- Never use damaged and/or dirty charging equipment. Always check the charging equipment for damage before use.
- Never make modifications or repairs to electrical components and in particular to the high-voltage system.
- Never charge the vehicle in potentially explosive atmospheres. The components of the charging equipment can produce sparks and ignite inflammable or explosive vapours. To reduce the risk of explosions, especially in garages, please ensure that the operating unit of the Audi e-tron charging systems is at least 50 cm above the ground during charging.
- Never use an extension cable, a cable reel, a multiple outlet strip or adapter (e.g. a travel adapter or time switch) with the charging equipment.
- Do not touch the contacts on the vehicle charging connection and charging equipment.
- Do not insert any objects in the vehicle charging connection or charging equipment.
- Always protect power outlets and plug connections against water, humidity and other fluids.
- Never charge the vehicle simultaneously at both vehicle charging connections.
- Use only the factory-supplied charging equipment or the charging cable at the charging station.

WARNING

Applies to: Audi charging systems

Improperly installed power sockets can result in electric shock or fire when the high-voltage battery is charged via the vehicle charging connection.

- The home power outlet for Audi charging systems must be installed and

commissioned by a qualified electrician. The electrician is responsible for full compliance with existing regulations and standards.

- Make sure that the power outlet to be used for charging is suitable for the amp rating specified on the Audi charging system.
- Make sure that the domestic power outlet is earthed and protected from water.
- If Audi charging systems do not operate as described in the operating instructions, they must not be used. Please contact a qualified workshop.
- Audi charging systems are designed for use in private and semi-public areas (e.g. on private land or company car parks). In some countries (e.g. Italy), mode 2 charging is prohibited in public areas. For more information, contact a qualified workshop.
- Audi charging systems should be used in properly earthed power grids. Operation in unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) is only possible using Audi charging systems with deactivated protective earth conductor monitoring ⇒ *page 121*.
- The electrical installation is loaded to maximum capacity when the high-voltage battery is charged via the domestic/industrial power outlet. We recommend that the electrical installations used for charging be checked regularly by an electrician.
- Audi charging systems must be disconnected from the infrastructure during an electrical storm.
- Never immerse Audi charging systems or the connectors in water.
- Only clean Audi charging systems when the operating unit is fully disconnected from the electricity grid and from the vehicle. Use a dry cloth for cleaning.
- Audi charging systems are suitable for use only with Audi vehicles and vehicles manufactured by the Volkswagen Group. These devices are not approved for use with vehicles manufactured by other companies.

you are travelling. For more information, contact a qualified workshop.

Note

- Only charging stations which meet the following standards (minimum requirement) and the standards applicable in your country can be used to charge the vehicle:
 - GB/T 18487.1 and GB/T 20234 (China)
 - IEC 61851 and IEC 62196 (Europe)
 - SAE J1772 (North America, Japan)
- If the charging station has a domestic or industrial connection, you can use your Audi charging system.

Note

Applies to: Audi charging systems

- For uninterrupted charging, it is recommended to charge the vehicle only at power outlets which are connected via a separately fused power circuit.
- It is recommended to keep Audi charging systems in the wall-holder clip* during operation. If this is not possible, always place Audi charging systems on a firm, stable surface when charging.
- To prevent overheating during use, do not expose Audi charging systems to direct sunlight for long periods of time. If the operating unit overheats, the charging cycle is automatically interrupted until the temperature drops again to within the normal range.

CAUTION

Please ensure that you always carry suitable charging equipment for the country in which

Charging



Fig. 93 Opening charging unit (example on left side of vehicle)

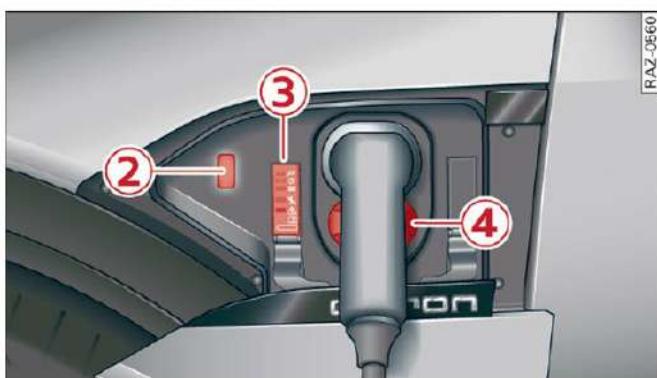


Fig. 94 Charging unit: Vehicle charging connection and LED (example)

Connecting the charging cable

Important: Transmission position P must be selected, the parking brake must be applied and vehicle status must be not ready.

- Take the charging cable out of the vehicle if necessary \Rightarrow page 120, Transport.
- Remove the protective caps on the charging cable if necessary.
- Connect the charging cable to the power supply first or take it out of the charging station.
- Unwind the charging cable completely.
- Unlock the vehicle.
- To open the charging unit cover on the driver's or front passenger's side, press the centre of the button ①.
- If you wish to quick-charge the vehicle at a public charging station with DC power, fold open the cap on the charging connection ④.
- Plug the charging connector into the vehicle charging connection.

Starting charging automatically (immediate charging)

If a time delay has not been activated for charging, the charging cycle will begin immediately. The charging station may have to be enabled. Follow the instructions and operating tips provided by the charging station manufacturer.

You can also adjust individual settings for the charging cycle \Rightarrow page 117, Setting charging target, \Rightarrow page 117, Setting timers, \Rightarrow page 118, Advanced charging settings.

While the vehicle is being charged

The charging indicator on the charging unit ② pulsates in green during the charging cycle. pulsates in the instrument cluster. A sticker on the charging unit ③ describes the various indicators \Rightarrow page 116.

Depending on which view is selected \Rightarrow page 15, the following information on the charging cycle is displayed in the instrument cluster.

- : Range
- : Time remaining until the end of the charging cycle
- : Current battery level
- : Date and time of completed charging cycle
- : Charging rate (additional range per hour)
- : Charging capacity (depends on the power source selected)

To call up the information after charging is over, select the following on the instrument cluster: Vehicle functions tab > button > Charging.

The charging connector is locked during charging and cannot be removed.

Cancelling/finishing charging

You can interrupt the charging cycle at any time.

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Press the centre of the button ①.
- Unplug the charging connector. If the charging connector is not unplugged within 30 seconds, it will be locked again automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed if appropriate.
- If the battery has been charged to the desired level, the charging unit cover will be closed

again automatically. Otherwise, the cover has to be closed manually. To do so, press the centre of the button ①.

- Disconnect the charging cable from the power supply if necessary or secure it to the charging station again.
- If you are transporting the charging cable in the vehicle, stow it safely ⇒ *page 120*.

If it is not possible to disconnect the charging connector, you will need to release it manually ⇒ *page 118*.

WARNING

- Do not unplug the charging cable from the charging socket or the vehicle charging connection while the vehicle is being charged. Terminate the charging cycle before you unplug the charging cable from the socket – risk of damage to the connector contacts due to spark generation.
- Never drive the vehicle when the charging unit is open. The open cover on the charging unit could strike another road user – risk of injury!
- If a charging unit is damaged, you must not use that charging connection and you must not use the charging connection on the opposite side* – risk of injury!
- If the charging unit is damaged, or if the charging unit cover cannot be closed or is missing, drive immediately to a workshop and have this rectified – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- The cover and the electronic components behind it can be damaged if you drive with the charging unit open. Before you start a journey, please check that the cover is properly closed.
- Applies to vehicles with charging connections on the driver's and front passenger's side: Never attempt to charge the vehicle simultaneously using both charging connections – danger of damage to charging infrastructure!

Note

- Applies to MMI: To clear the way for others to charge their vehicles, a setting is available which automatically releases the charging connector when the quick-charging cycle is over. To do so, select the following from the home screen: **CAR > Charging & efficiency > Charging > ☀ > DC connector: release after charging**.
- It is possible that noises may emanate from the parking brake when the charging connector is plugged in.
- Use a small brush and a solvent-free de-icer spray to remove ice and snow from the charging unit.
- There may be some television or radio interference in the vehicle's on-board systems while the vehicle is being charged.

Charging indicator

The charging indicator (an LED on the charging unit) indicates the charging status. A sticker on the charging unit ③ ⇒ *page 115*, *Fig. 94* de-

scribes the various indicators. The LED indicator logic is described in the following table.

LED on charging unit		Meaning
off		Vehicle charging system in standby mode. A timer may be active but charging has not yet started.
		Charging cycle has been interrupted.
white	pulsating	Connection between power source and vehicle is being established.

LED on charging unit		Meaning
green	pulsating	The high-voltage battery is being charged.
	flashing	Timer is active but charging has not yet started.
	lit	High-voltage battery charge cycle finished.
yellow	lit	Charging cable connected but no mains power detected. Have the power supply or mains checked. Check the LED indicators on the operating unit when using the Audi charging system ⇒ <i>table on page 122</i> . Obtain professional assistance if necessary.
	flashing	The vehicle is not secured against rolling away. Check that transmission position P is selected and the parking brake is applied. If the LED continues to flash, obtain professional assistance.
red	lit	Charging connector may not be properly locked in vehicle charging connection. Check that the charging connector is plugged in correctly. Unplug the charging connector and plug it into the charging connection again or try using a different charging station. If the LED remains lit, there is a malfunction in the vehicle charging system or power source. Obtain professional assistance if necessary.
		Both charging unit covers are open. Try to close one of the covers by hand. If the LED remains lit, the high-voltage battery cannot be charged. Obtain professional assistance.
		The outside temperature is too low or too high.

Note

The operating status of the LED on the charging unit is also shown in the instrument cluster display .

Setting charging target

You can set a maximum level for charging the high-voltage battery. A charging target of between 50 % and 100 % can be set. For everyday use, we recommend setting a charging target of 80 %. This facilitates an economical charging cycle and maximum battery life. Before embarking on a long journey, we recommend setting a charging target of 100 % for the highest possible range.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Charging & efficiency > Charging**.
- ▶ If the timers are displayed, swipe your finger across the display to the right.
- ▶ Press on the right side of the battery level display.
- ▶ Set the desired charging target.

Note

If you set a charging target which is lower than the current battery level when charging the vehicle, the charging cycle will be cancelled. The charging cycle will be resumed when you set a charging target which is higher than the current battery level. This is not the case if you are using a charging station at which you have authenticated yourself manually. In this case you will need to authenticate yourself at the charging station again.

Setting timers

You can specify the time by which you wish your vehicle to reach the desired charging target. Once a timer is switched on, it is triggered regularly at the times set. In addition to setting the charging target, you can specify that your vehicle is to be heated or cooled to the temperature selected on the air conditioner. Several timers can be switched on simultaneously. A corresponding number in  at the top of the display shows which timer is active.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Charging & efficiency > Charging**.
- ▶ If the charging target is displayed, swipe your finger across the display to the left.

Several timers are displayed. You can set them individually.

- ▶ To set a timer, select **>** in the line for the desired timer.
- ▶ Set one or more days of the week and select **Next**.
- ▶ Set the desired departure time and select **OK**.
- ▶ To activate an additional timer for air conditioning, select **!**.
- ▶ To switch on a timer, select **○**.
- ▶ To activate the timer you have switched on, select **○**. A colour bar will light up in the button.

If the departure time set on the timer is too short, it may not be possible to reach the desired charging target.

i Note

On some charging stations it is not possible to use the charging timer.

Advanced charging settings

In the advanced charging settings, you can define addresses at which specific charging settings are to apply (e.g. charging target, minimum charge level). These charging settings are automatically applied when your vehicle is in the vicinity of the address.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Charging & efficiency > Charging > ☰ > Advanced charging settings**.
- ▶ To define new settings for a particular address, select **+**. Follow the directions given on the display.
- ▶ To change the existing settings for a particular address, press on the appropriate button.
- ▶ To delete the existing settings for a particular address, select **☒**.

Releasing the charging connector manually

You can release the charging unit cover and charging connector manually.

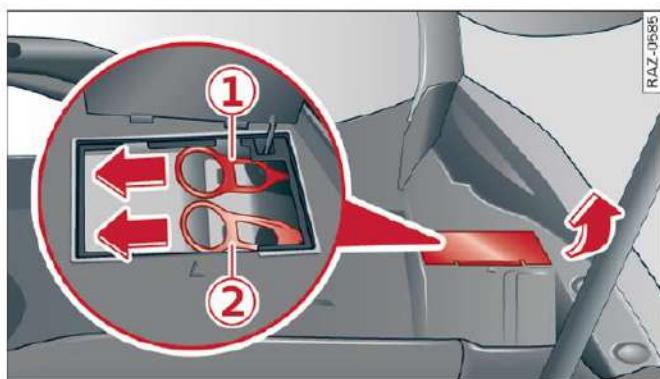


Fig. 95 Motor compartment: Manual release

Releasing the charging unit cover manually

- ▶ Open the bonnet **⇒ page 268**.
- ▶ Open the cover in the motor compartment on the appropriate side for the charging connection affected.
- ▶ Release the red ring **(1)** from its holder and carefully pull the ring **⇒ !**.
- ▶ If necessary, open the charging unit cover by hand.

Releasing the charging connector manually

If you cannot remove the charging connector from the vehicle charging connection, a malfunction may have occurred. The vehicle charging connector will have to be released manually.

Important: Transmission position P must be selected, the vehicle must be unlocked and the charging cycle must have been completed or interrupted.

- ▶ Finish the charging cycle **⇒ page 115, Cancelling/finishing charging**.
- ▶ Open the bonnet **⇒ page 268**.
- ▶ Open the cover in the motor compartment on the appropriate side for the charging connection affected.
- ▶ Release the yellow ring **(2)** from its holder and carefully pull the ring **⇒ !**.
- ▶ Unplug the charging connector.
- ▶ Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

If the charging connector cannot be removed after the manual release procedure, you should obtain professional assistance.

After manual release, secure the ring(s) in their holders again and close the cover in the motor compartment.

CAUTION

Stop pulling the ring when you feel resistance (the release mechanism is not audible). Otherwise, you could damage the manual release mechanism.

Driver messages

If the indicator lamp  or  lights up, the range is low or very low. Charge the high-voltage battery.

 **Warning! Please check charging unit cover. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the cover on the charging unit is open while driving. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and try to close the cover using the button ① *⇒ page 115, Fig. 93* or by hand. If the cover cannot be closed and/or the message continues to appear, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified *⇒ ▲ in Charging on page 116, ⇒ ! in Charging on page 116*.

 **AC charging system: fault! Please contact workshop**

 **DC charging system: fault! Please contact workshop**

This message appears if there is a fault in the charging system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Charging system incompatible. Please check charging system

This message appears if the charging system is incompatible. Only use Audi charging systems intended for use with your vehicle.

 **Charging system: fault**

This message appears if there is a fault in the charging infrastructure for your vehicle or in the

charging station. Use a different charging station. If the message does not disappear, contact a qualified workshop.

Charging equipment

Introduction

The following charging cables may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

- Charging cable for public charging stations with AC power
- Audi e-tron charging system (compact)

Notes on using the charging equipment

Please note the following information for safe handling of the charging equipment:

- Protect the equipment so that it cannot be run over, dropped, pulled, bent or crushed.
- Do not immerse the charging equipment in water and do not cover it with snow or ice.
- Only pull the connectors if you have removed the charging cable from the vehicle and from the power supply.
- Put the protective caps back on after using the charging cable.
- Use the Audi charging system only in an electricity grid with a mains frequency of 50 Hz/ 60 Hz.
- Use the Audi charging system only when the relative humidity is between 5 % and 95 % (non-condensing).
- The Audi charging system is protected against dust and water jets (IP55).

The warnings attached to the charging equipment may vary in different countries:

Symbol	Meaning
	Use the Audi charging system at temperatures between -30 °C and +50 °C.
	Use the Audi charging system at altitudes of max. 4000 m above mean sea level.

Symbol	Meaning
	The Audi charging system is equipped with an unswitched protective earth conductor.
	The Audi charging system is equipped with a switched protective earth conductor.
	Do not use the Audi charging system in unearthed power networks (e.g. IT networks). Use the Audi charging system only in earthed power grids.
	Surfaces can become very hot if exposed to direct sunlight.
	Improper use may result in electric shocks.
	Please refer to the associated operating instructions and read the safety instructions.
	Please follow the waste disposal rules.
	Do not use extension cables or cable reels.
	Do not use travel adapters.
	Do not use multiple outlet power sockets.
	Do not use charging cables if the connector leads or electronics have been damaged.

Transport

Always stow the charging equipment safely in the vehicle prior to transport.

- ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ page 268.
- ▶ Open the front storage compartment
⇒ page 82.
- ▶ Stow the charging equipment in the front storage compartment.

- ▶ Close the front storage compartment and the bonnet.

! WARNING

Unsecured, improperly secured or incorrectly positioned vehicle charging equipment can become dislodged and injure the vehicle occupants during braking or turning manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.
– Transport the charging equipment only in the front storage compartment and never transport it unsecured or in the passenger compartment.

Charging cable (mode 3) for public charging stations with AC power

Applies to: vehicles with charging cable for public charging stations with AC power



BX-X-042G

Fig. 96 Charging cable for public charging stations with AC power (example)

You can use this charging cable to charge your vehicle at public charging stations with AC power if they do not have an integrated charging cable. Please note the procedure for charging
⇒ page 115.

! CAUTION

Do not use the charging cable as an extension cable for the Audi charging system. This will cause a charging cycle malfunction.

i Note

– Charging with the charging cable may not be possible at charging stations which have a higher current rating than the cable rating. Please note the information and notices at the charging station.

– Many of the electrical installations in Norway are designed based on different technical rules than those commonly used in Europe. You must only use a charging cable with a cross-section of $5 \times 6 \text{ mm}^2$. Please

note the specifications on the charging cable. Before embarking on a trip to Norway, check whether the charging cable on your vehicle is suitable for these types of charging station.

Audi e-tron charging system (compact)

Applies to: vehicles with Audi e-tron charging system (compact)

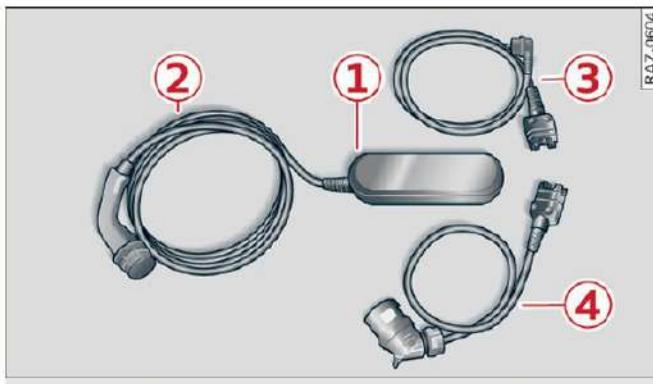


Fig. 97 Audi e-tron charging system (compact): Components (example)

You can use the Audi e-tron charging system (compact) to charge the vehicle at a domestic or industrial power outlet. The following accessories may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

① Operating unit

② Vehicle cable with vehicle charging connector

③ Mains cable with mains connector for industrial power outlets

④ Mains cable with mains connector for domestic power outlets

The vehicle cable is permanently connected to the operating unit. The mains cable is plugged into the top end of the operating unit and can be changed \Rightarrow page 125.

Overview of operating unit

⑤	ON/OFF button, charging capacity and LED	
⑥	Status LED:	
		Grid/domestic
		Car
		Control console
⑦		Reset

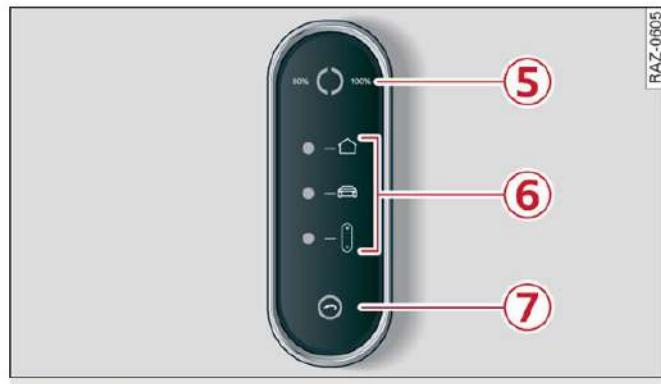


Fig. 98 Audi e-tron charging system (compact): Operating unit

Limiting the charging current

The operating unit automatically detects the voltage and the available amp rating. In the settings you can specify whether you want to charge at half or full capacity. You can use the charging capacity setting to prevent the electrical installation from overheating.

- To adjust the charging capacity, press button ⑤ \Rightarrow Fig. 98.
- The charging current display will appear. The setting value will be displayed.

Activating/deactivating protective earth (PE) conductor monitoring

The Audi e-tron charging system should be used in properly earthed power grids. Deactivate PE conductor monitoring only in unearthing networks (e.g. IT networks). Activate PE conductor monitoring in earthed power grids.

If the PE conductor monitor has interrupted the charging cycle and the LED on the operating unit ⑤ and the two status LEDs and are lit in red, you should deactivate PE conductor monitoring as follows:

- To deactivate PE conductor monitoring, press and hold buttons ⑤ and ⑦ \Rightarrow Fig. 98

simultaneously for five seconds. The  button will flash in white while you are doing so. Release the buttons again for one second.

- Press both buttons again for five seconds. Deactivation will take place automatically after a brief interval. The LED on the operating unit 

will pulsate in green and the two status LEDs  and  will light up in yellow.

- To activate PE conductor monitoring, press and hold both buttons until the LEDs for  and  go out. The reset will occur automatically after a brief interval.

Status and fault indicators on the operating unit

LED on operating unit 	Colour of status LEDs 	Symbol	Status	Remedy
Pulsating green LED and charging capacity lit	Lit in yellow		The charging infrastructure has overheated or is restricted. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power.	The fault will be cleared automatically once the system has cooled down. If the fault persists, you can only charge the vehicle with reduced power.
			The vehicle will be charged without PE conductor monitoring.	Refer to  page 121 if you want to charge the vehicle in earthed power grids.
			The charging infrastructure has overheated. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power.	The fault will be cleared automatically once the system has cooled down.
	Off		The vehicle is being charged.	
White LED lit and charging capacity lit	Off		The operating unit is ready for charging.	Plug the vehicle charging connector into the vehicle charging connection.

LED on operating unit (5)	Colour of status LEDs (6)	Symbol	Status	Remedy
Red LED lit	Lit in yellow		The charging infrastructure has overheated. Charging has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically once the system has cooled down.
			The charging infrastructure has overheated. Charging has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically once the system has cooled down.
	Flashing in yellow		The charging infrastructure is restricted. Charging has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically as soon as the mains supply is stable again.
			A fault has occurred in the Audi e-tron charging system (compact). Charging has been interrupted.	Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.
			The charging infrastructure is inadequate. Charging has been interrupted.	Check and, if necessary, replace the charging infrastructure. Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.
				►

LED on operating unit (5)	Colour of status LEDs (6)	Symbol	Status	Remedy
Red LED lit	Lit in red		A fault has occurred in the Audi e-tron charging system (compact). Charging has been interrupted.	Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.
			A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit. Charging has been interrupted.	Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.
			The charging infrastructure is inadequate. The protective earth conductor is disconnected or not installed. The PE monitoring system has interrupted the charging cycle.	If necessary, deactivate PE monitoring ⇒ page 121. If the fault persists, have it rectified by a qualified workshop.
			A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit. Charging has been interrupted.	Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.
	Flashing in red		A fault has been detected in the electric current. Charging has been interrupted.	Press and hold the ↪ button for more than 2 seconds. If the fault persists, have it rectified by a qualified workshop.
			A serious technical fault has occurred in the operating unit. Charging has been interrupted.	Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop only.
			A voltage surge has been detected in the charging infrastructure. Charging has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically as soon as the mains supply is stable again.
			There is a fault in the charging infrastructure and operating unit. Charging has been interrupted.	Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.
			There is a problem with the charging infrastructure. Charging has been interrupted.	Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.

LED on operating unit (5)	Colour of status LEDs (6)	Symbol	Status	Remedy
Red LED flashing	Lit in red	■	There is a problem with the charging infrastructure. Charging has been interrupted.	Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.
Off	Lit in red	■ ■ ■ ←	The LED on the operating unit is defective. Charging has been interrupted.	Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.

i Note

- When the power supply is connected or restored, the operating unit performs a self-test routine. All the LEDs will light up in green for two seconds if the self-test routine is successful.
- The charging capacity is automatically set to 100 % if you are using a domestic power outlet. If several items of electrical equipment are connected to a fuse circuit, the charging capacity can be limited to 50 % when the charging process is performed using a domestic power outlet; this reduces the load on the electrical installation.
- The charging capacity is automatically set to 50 % if you are using an industrial power outlet. The 100 % setting must be selected for the battery to be charged at full capacity.

Changing/attaching the mains cable

Applies to: vehicles with Audi charging system

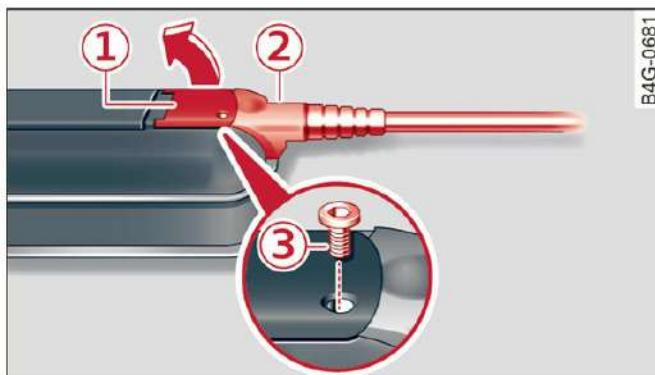


Fig. 99 Operating unit: Releasing/securing the cable

Requirements:

- The high-voltage battery must have finished charging ⇒ page 115.

- The vehicle charging connector must be unplugged from the vehicle charging connection.
- The mains plug must be removed from the power outlet.

Releasing the cable

- If necessary, remove the screw (3) using the screwdriver supplied.
- Lift the lever (1) all the way up.
- Pull the connector (2) out until the first point of resistance.
- Close the lever (1) until it is resting on the connector (2).
- Pull the connector (2) all the way out.

Securing the cable

- Lift the lever (1) slightly.
- Push the connector (2) into the operating unit until the first point of resistance.
- Lift the lever (1) all the way up.
- Push the connector (2) all the way into the operating unit.
- Close the lever (1).
- Secure the screw (3) using the screwdriver supplied.

WARNING

- Please note the warnings for charging ⇒ ▲ in Charging on page 116.
- Always remove the mains cable from the power outlet before changing the mains cable.
- Change the cable in dry environments only.
- The Audi charging system must always be used complete with the mains cable, operating unit and vehicle cable. We recommend that you use only cables approved by Audi.

- In some countries (such as Norway) it is forbidden to change the mains cable. For more information, contact a qualified workshop.

i Note

The mains cable with mains connector for industrial power outlets and the operating unit of the Audi charging system are specially matched. Changing the mains cable to a different type of connector can reduce the charging capacity of the complete system.

Wall-holder clip

Applies to: vehicles with wall-holder clip

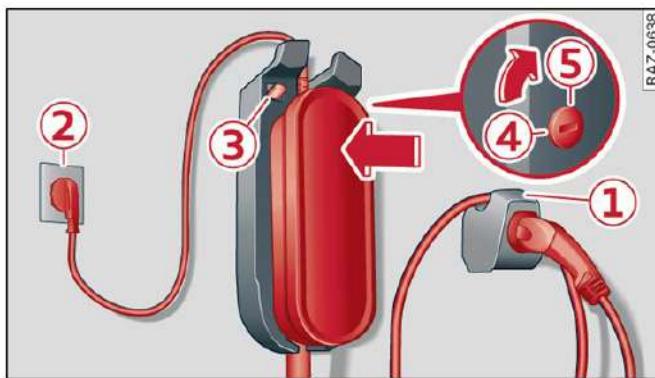


Fig. 100 Wall-holder clip: Hooking in Audi charging system

Hooking in the charging system

- ▶ Hook the operating unit into the retainers on the wall-holder clip, first at the bottom, then at the top.
- ▶ Press the operating unit back in the direction of the arrow \Rightarrow Fig. 100 so that it engages.
- ▶ Wind the length of cable you don't need around the charging connector mounting ① when you are not charging the high-voltage battery.
- ▶ Plug the mains cable into the power outlet ②.
- ▶ After charging, you can hook the vehicle charging connector into the charging connector mounting ①.

Unlocking/locking the Audi charging system

- ▶ Use the enclosed key to unlock/lock the Audi charging system as required (locked: ④, unlocked: ⑤).

Removing the Audi charging system

- ▶ Unplug the mains cable connector from the power outlet ②.
- ▶ Unwind the cable from the vehicle charging connector ①.
- ▶ To release the operating unit from the holder, press the locking mechanism ③ upwards.

! WARNING

Please observe the safety information in the fitting instructions for the wall-holder clip.

Towing a trailer

Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan

General notes

If the car is supplied with a factory-fitted towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements. When towing a trailer or caravan, always observe the statutory requirements and follow the manufacturer's instructions for operation and driving.

Towing a trailer or caravan affects the energy consumption, performance and wear of the vehicle. It also requires a higher degree of concentration on the part of the driver.

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the car is purchased, this must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer
⇒ page 133.



WARNING

Never carry passengers in a trailer – danger to life!

Points to check before towing

Trailer weights

Never exceed the maximum permitted trailer weights ⇒ page 312.

If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can then climb correspondingly steeper gradients.

Draw bar weight

The vertical load exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed the maximum weight specification.

If the draw bar weight is too low, the trailer's handling will be affected. In the interests of road safety, we recommend that you always use the maximum draw bar weight without exceeding it. You can achieve this, for example, by distributing the trailer load correctly.

You can determine the draw bar weight e.g. using a weighing machine, bathroom scales or a public weighing station.

You can find the maximum draw bar weight for your vehicle in the registration documents or on ⇒ page 312.

Distributing the load

The vehicle's handling can be impaired if the load is poorly distributed. Load the trailer according to the following criteria as far as possible:

- Objects should preferably be stowed in the luggage compartment. The vehicle load should be as heavy as possible and the trailer load as light as possible.
- Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible.
- Objects must be secured to prevent them from sliding about.
- Where possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted draw bar weight.

Stabiliser

Swaying and pitching can be reduced by attaching an extra stabiliser to the trailer. Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a stabiliser. The stabiliser can be purchased and installed at a qualified workshop.

Clean and grease the ball joint before using a trailer without a stabiliser.

Tyres

Check the tyre pressures on your car, and adjust for "full load" conditions (refer to the sticker listing the tyre pressures) ⇒ page 277. It may also be necessary to adjust the tyre pressures on the trailer according to the recommendations of the trailer manufacturer.

At low outside temperatures, both the towing vehicle and the trailer should be fitted with winter tyres.

Exterior mirrors

Check whether you can see enough of the road behind the trailer with the standard exterior mirrors or the virtual exterior mirrors*. If this is not the case you should have additional mirrors

fitted. Adjust the mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear.

Exterior lights

Before starting a journey, check all the trailer lights with the trailer hitched up.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the range of the headlight beam.

If the indicator lamp  flashes, the turn signals are on in towing mode. If a turn signal bulb on the trailer or vehicle fails in towing mode, the indicator lamp does **not** flash twice as fast to indicate the bulb failure.

Power supply

When you switch off the ignition, the power supply to the trailer is not interrupted as long as the energy management system does not intervene.

Towing bracket

Check that the coupling meets the relevant country-specific regulations and is not worn.

Trailer brake

If your trailer has an overrun brake, it must be correctly adjusted and function correctly.

Air suspension

The **comfort** mode \Rightarrow page 105 must be selected in Audi drive select* before you adjust the draw bar weight and hitch up the trailer \Rightarrow , \Rightarrow page 106.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket, the air suspension is automatically set to towing mode when you connect the trailer cable to the socket.

On vehicles with a retrofitted towing bracket, you must switch the air suspension to towing mode manually.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Air suspension: trailer**.

You should deactivate the mode again when the trailer is unhitched.

If you use carrier systems which are mounted directly on the ball joint of the towing bracket, you can also switch trailer mode off manually.

If you have to drive on a rough surface, you can raise the vehicle again after hitching up the trailer and adjusting the draw bar weight \Rightarrow page 106.

You can also increase the ground clearance by selecting the Audi drive select* mode **offroad** or **allroad** \Rightarrow page 105.

The vehicle will no longer lower itself to a level below the **comfort** value, not even if this is attempted manually.

WARNING

- If you have hitched up a trailer, never switch off trailer mode while the vehicle is moving as the restrictions on the ride height regulating system would then no longer be present.
- The handling of the vehicle may change if you are driving with a trailer on loose surfaces with the vehicle raised. Adjust your speed accordingly.
- If you have raised the vehicle manually, note that the vehicle lowers itself automatically above a certain speed.

CAUTION

- Select **comfort** mode in Audi drive select*; otherwise the draw bar weight specification for your vehicle will no longer apply.
- Retrofitted parts, in particular attachments fitted to the ball joint of the towing bracket, can cause damage. If any damage occurs, you should have the equipment checked by a qualified workshop.

Note

- Use wheel chocks when parking on a gradient if the trailer is carrying a load.
- We recommend having the car serviced between the normal inspection intervals if it is used frequently for towing a trailer.

Trailer stabilisation system¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket and trailer stabilisation system

The trailer stabilisation system, which is integrated in the electronic stabilisation control (ESC), helps to reduce the risk of the trailer skidding at speeds over approx. 65 km/h. Please refer to the description of the ESC \Rightarrow page 108 for information on how the system works. Please also refer to the notes on \Rightarrow page 127 and \Rightarrow page 129 to ensure that the trailer stabilisation system is functional.

Important: The ESC must be switched on \Rightarrow page 110 and ready for operation.

**WARNING**

- The ESC and trailer stabilisation system cannot defy the laws of physics. Always bear this in mind, especially when the trailer is light.
- It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the trailer stabilisation system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- The trailer stabilisation system is not always able to detect if the trailer is swaying and may therefore not intervene. In this case apply the vehicle's brakes and avoid unnecessary steering input.
- A trailer can still “jack-knife” on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with the trailer stabilisation system.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity may even tip over before they start to sway sideways.
- Try to avoid towing a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle. If this cannot be avoided, drive extra slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.
- If you are not towing a trailer, but the trailer socket is being used (e.g. for an illuminated bicycle rack), the trailer stabilisation system

may be activated automatically in extreme driving conditions.

Driving with a trailer or caravan

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care.

Speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. If the trailer has a stabiliser, you can drive up to 100 km/h. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

The stability of the car and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. For this reason it is advisable not to drive at the maximum permissible top speed in unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially on a downhill gradient.

Gradient

When driving down the start of a gradient, the trailer may begin to sway sooner than it would on a level road. If the trailer starts to sway even slightly, you can stabilise it by immediately applying the brakes firmly. Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating further.

Braking

When using a trailer with an overrun brake, apply the brakes gently at first and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

The ESC – in particular in conjunction with the trailer stabilisation system \Rightarrow page 129 – makes it easier to stabilise a trailer if it starts to skid or sway. You should therefore keep the ESC switched on at all times.

**WARNING**

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will considerably reduce the effectiveness of the brakes. It will increase the

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail.

Rear carrier systems

When using rear carrier systems (e.g. bicycle racks) on the towing bracket, it is important not to exceed the maximum load.

The total weight of the rear carrier system and its load must not exceed 75 kg for this vehicle. However, it is also important to observe the maximum permissible load for the rear carrier system.

The greater the distance from the towing bracket, the smaller the maximum permissible load on the rear carrier system. For this reason, you should secure heavy objects as near as possible to the towing bracket.

Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the rear carrier system.

Please make sure that the rear carrier system is approved for use on your vehicle.

! WARNING

The use of an unsuitable rear carrier system could cause severe damage to the towing bracket. The towing bracket could then break and cause an accident.

i Note

Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a rear carrier system.

Removable towing bracket

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket



Fig. 101 Luggage compartment: Stowing the towing bracket

Special care is required when fitting and removing the towing bracket.

The removable ball joint attachment for the towing bracket is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

The ball joint can be fitted and removed by hand.

! WARNING

Never use tools of any kind when fitting and removing the ball joint. This could damage the mechanism which locks the ball joint in place and impair its safety - risk of accident!

i Note

- Do not attempt to modify or repair the ball joint or other towing bracket components.
- Should you have any difficulties when using the towing bracket, or suspect that it is not fitted properly, contact a qualified workshop.
- Before setting off, always check that the ball joint is secured properly ⇒ page 132.
- Never disengage the ball joint with the caravan / trailer still hitched or with a bicycle rack or similar accessory still attached.
- It is advisable to remove the ball joint when you are not towing a trailer. Check whether the plug is properly inserted in the mounting fixture.

- The ball joint must be removed if you intend to clean the car with a steam cleaning attachment. Make sure that the plug is properly inserted in the mounting fixture.
- For installation and removal of the ball joint we recommend using the gloves provided for this purpose.

Fitting the ball joint (step 1)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

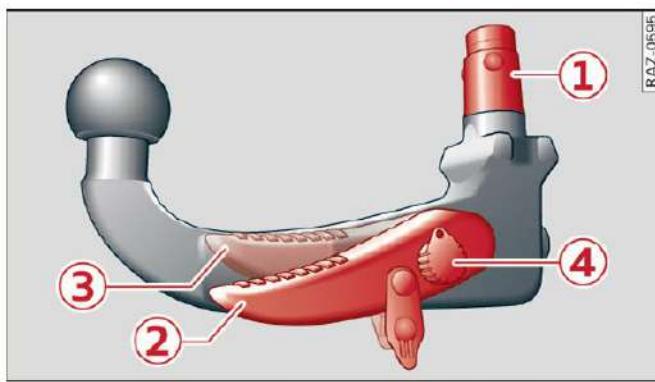


Fig. 102 Removable towing bracket: Ball joint with spring in "ready" position

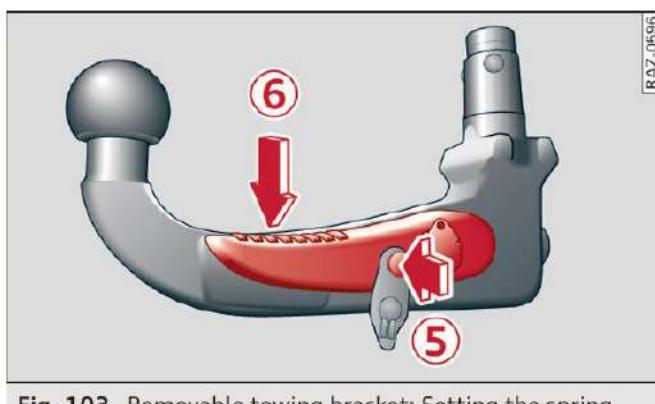


Fig. 103 Removable towing bracket: Setting the spring mechanism to the "ready" position

Make sure the ball joint is clean and undamaged

- Check the shaft section ① and operating lever ② on the ball joint to make sure they are clean and undamaged.

The ball joint can only be installed if the internal spring mechanism is in the ready position

- Check whether the operating lever is in the "ready" position ⇒ Fig. 102.

Setting the spring mechanism to the "ready" position (if required)

If the operating lever is in the top position ③, it must be moved to the "ready" position.

- Insert the key ④ in the lock and turn it until the eye on the key cap is facing upwards. Ensure that the key remains in the same position while bringing the operating lever into the "ready" position; otherwise it will not be possible to move the operating lever.
- Hold the neck of the ball joint with your left hand. Press the locking pin ⑤ all the way in with your right hand and, at the same time, push the operating lever forcibly downwards ⑥ until it locks in position ⇒ **! in Fitting the ball joint (step 2) on page 132.**

Continued ⇒ page 131, *Fitting the ball joint (step 2).*

⚠ WARNING

It is important to keep the mounting fixture clean. Otherwise the ball joint may fail to engage securely (accident risk).

Fitting the ball joint (step 2)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

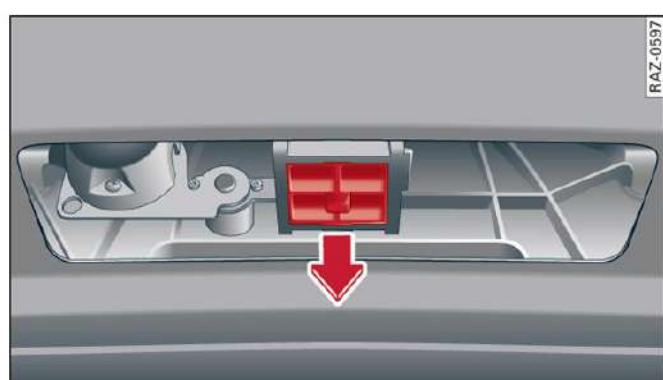


Fig. 104 Area below rear bumper: Pulling out plug

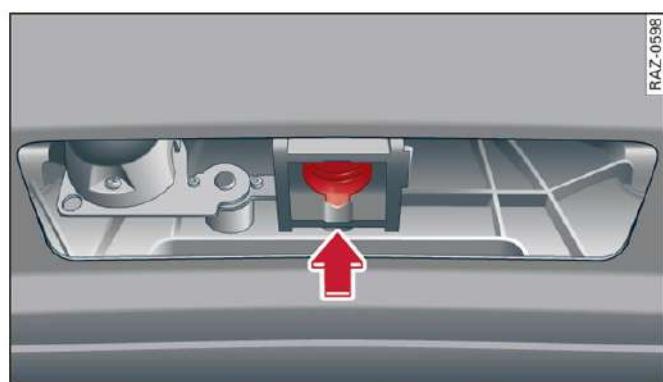


Fig. 105 Area below rear bumper: Inserting ball joint

- ▶ Remove the plug from the mounting fixture.
- ▶ Check that the mounting fixture is free of dirt; clean if necessary ⇒ **⚠ in Fitting the ball joint (step 1) on page 131.**
- ▶ With the spring mechanism in the ready position, insert the ball joint into the mounting fixture and push it upwards in the direction indicated (arrow) ⇒ **⚠**. The spring mechanism should then engage automatically with an audible click.
- ▶ Lock the ball joint by turning the key downwards.
- ▶ Remove the key.
- ▶ Press the cover cap onto the lock.

Continued ⇒ *page 132, Fitting the ball joint (step 3).*

⚠ WARNING

- If it is not possible to set the spring mechanism to the "ready" position as described above, please contact a qualified workshop and, for safety reasons, do not use the ball joint.
- To avoid injury, keep your hands away from the operating lever when inserting the ball joint in the mounting fixture.

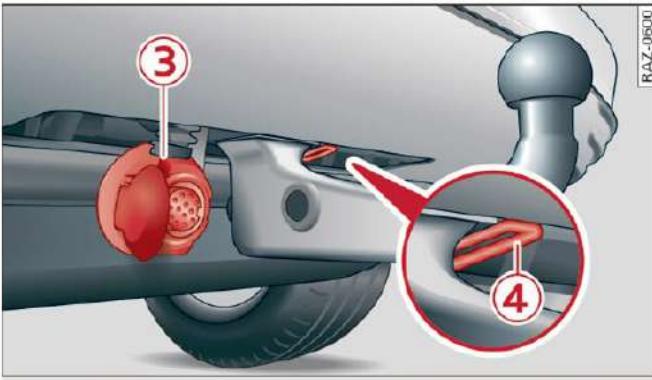


Fig. 107 Rear bumper: Socket and eye for safety cable

- ▶ Check that the operating lever **①** is in the top position and that it cannot be moved downwards.
- ▶ Check that the green marking on the locking pin **②** for the operating lever is visible. If you attempt to press in the locking pin, you should feel strong resistance from the spring.
- ▶ Check that the ball joint is locked and the key is removed.
- ▶ Make sure that the ball joint fits tightly in the mounting fixture (try moving it about to check).
- ▶ Swivel the socket **③** downwards.
- ▶ Connect the cable for the trailer to the socket.
- ▶ When you hitch a trailer up to your vehicle, hook the safety cable into the eye **④** on the towing bracket.

Fitting the ball joint (step 3)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

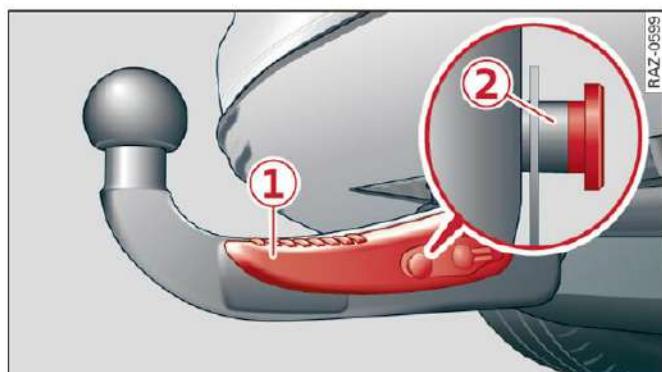


Fig. 106 Removable towing bracket: Safety check

⚠ WARNING

To avoid accidents, the towing bracket must not be used if any one of the requirements listed above is not met. If this is the case, the ball joint must be fitted again properly ⇒ *page 131*. Please contact a qualified workshop in the event of a technical fault.

i Note

The eye **④** on the towing bracket is intended only for securing the safety cable of the trailer.

Removing the ball joint

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

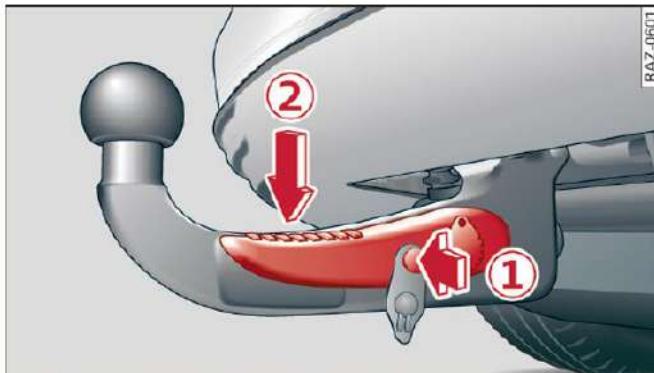


Fig. 108 Removable towing bracket: Removing the ball joint

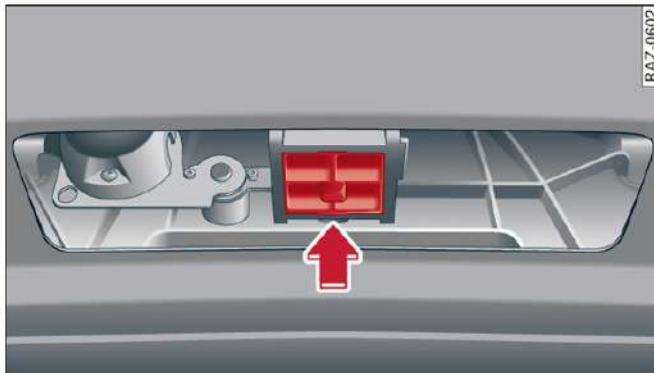


Fig. 109 Area below rear bumper: Fitting the plug

Before you remove the ball joint, fit the grease cap back on.

- ▶ Insert the key in the lock and turn it until the eye on the key cap is facing upwards. Ensure that the key remains horizontal while releasing the spring mechanism; otherwise it will not be possible to move the operating lever.
- ▶ Hold the neck of the ball joint with your left hand. Press the locking pin ① all the way in with your right hand and, at the same time, push the operating lever ② downwards until it locks in position ⇒ !.
- ▶ Pull the ball joint down and out of the mounting fixture.
- ▶ Insert the plug into the mounting fixture.
- ▶ Stow the ball joint attachment in clean condition under the floor panel in the luggage compartment ⇒ page 130, Fig. 101. Secure the ball joint with the belt.

Otherwise the ball joint may fail to engage securely the next time it is attached if dirt has accumulated in the mounting fixture.

Retrofitting

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket.

Your qualified workshop will have all the details on retrofitting a towing bracket.

! WARNING

- If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- A towing bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk.
- For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

! CAUTION

If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.

! WARNING

Make sure that the plug is properly fitted in the mounting fixture for the towing bracket.

Driver assist systems

General notes

Safety precautions

WARNING

- As the driver, you always have full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. The assistance systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver. Always devote your full attention to the road and the traffic situation, and be prepared to intervene at any time.
- Only use the assistance systems in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The steering or braking input from assistance systems may occur unexpectedly. Please refer to the notes on how to stow luggage correctly ⇒ page 82.
- The assistance systems are only able to react as intended when the sensors and cameras function without restrictions. Please observe the notes on the sensors and cameras ⇒ page 135 and ⇒ page 136.

Note

- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations, particularly with regard to the driver's responsibilities, as well as the permitted driving speeds, parking positions, position of the wheels, distance between vehicles, forming a lane for emergency vehicles, etc. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- You can cancel the steering/braking input from the system by firmly applying the brakes yourself, pressing the accelerator firmly, turning the steering wheel or deactivating the assistance system in question.
- Always check the current settings of the assistance systems before setting off. The settings might have been altered, e.g. if someone else has driven the vehicle or if a different personal profile is used.

System limitations

WARNING

- The assistance systems cannot overcome the laws of physics; in some situations it may not be possible to prevent a collision.
- It is possible that the warnings, notifications or warning lamps may not be displayed or activated in time/at the appropriate time, e.g. if a vehicle is approaching very quickly.
- The corrective steering/braking input from the assistance systems may not be sufficient in some cases, or there may be no input from the systems at all. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

Note

- The technology which enables the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings is subject to certain limitations; as a result, the systems may not warn the driver or intervene in time/at the appropriate time. In addition, it is possible that the assistance systems may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and give a warning to the driver as a result.
- Non-standard road conditions, such off-road terrain, unsealed or gravelly roads, or roads with heavy cambers or deep ruts, may prevent the system from functioning as expected.
- The systems may not function as expected in unpredictable traffic situations such as in turning lanes, at blind exits, in roadwork areas, in case of restricted vision at steep hill crests or valleys, at intersections, at toll gates or in city traffic.
- In towing mode, some assistance systems may be restricted, unavailable or not react as usual. Please refer to the notes on towing a trailer ⇒ page 127.
- Equipment or accessories fitted on the steering wheel may restrict the function of the steering assistance systems.

Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings

Overview of sensors

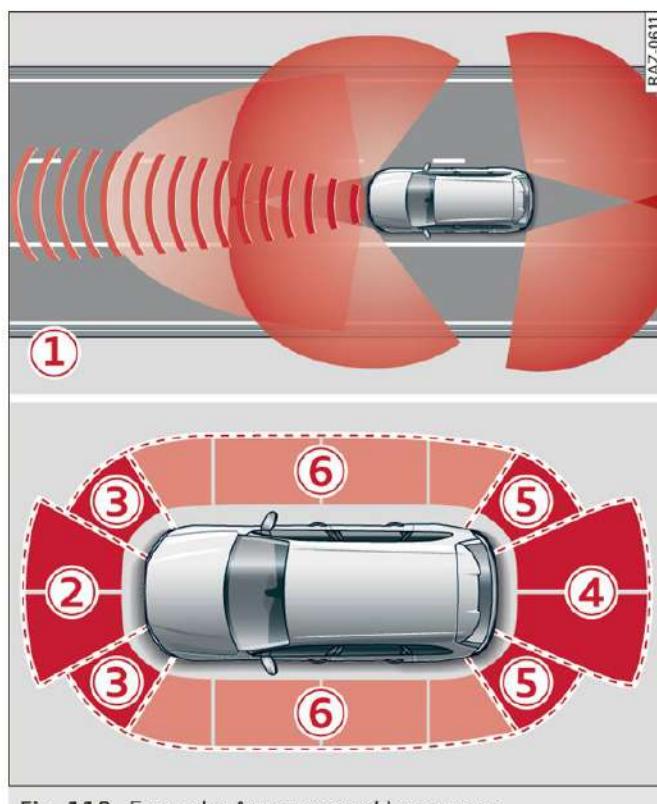


Fig. 110 Example: Areas covered by sensors



Fig. 111 Positions of side front sensors

The assistance systems evaluate the data from different sensors installed in the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the entire area surrounding the vehicle can be detected ① ⇒ Fig. 110.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors may be fitted to detect the vehicle's surroundings ⇒ Fig. 111:

- Laser scanner at the front in the bumper ⇒
- Radar sensor at the front in the radiator grille
- Up to four radar sensors at the corners of the vehicle
- Ultrasonic sensors at the front, rear and sides of the vehicle¹⁾

Some of the sensors are installed underneath parts of the vehicle and cannot be seen from outside.

Measuring range of the ultrasonic sensors

The measuring range of the ultrasonic sensors which may be fitted ⇒ Fig. 110 starts at about:

②	1.20 m
③	0.90 m
④	1.60 m
⑤	0.90 m
⑥	0.90 m

WARNING

Sensors have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with laser scanner

- The surface of the laser scanner can heat up during operation (risk of burns).
- The laser scanner contains class 1 lasers according to IEC 60825-1:2014. There is no danger when they are used as intended. The laser module must NOT be opened nor any covers removed. This can cause permanent damage to eyesight.

¹⁾ The positions of some sensors may differ slightly depending on the vehicle's equipment.

- All repairs to the laser module must be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory; otherwise you might lose the type approval for your vehicle. Improper repairs can impair the effectiveness of the system and cause damage to the eyes.

! CAUTION

- Some objects may disappear from the sensors' field of vision as the vehicle approaches, even if they were originally detected by the system. In some instances, the sensors may only have a limited capacity to detect or display certain surfaces and objects:
- Objects positioned above the area covered by the sensors, such as the bumpers of parked cars, partially opened garage doors or suspended objects not touching the ground
- Low obstacles
- Thin or narrow objects, such as chains, trees, posts or fences
- Protruding objects, such as trailer draw bars
- Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabrics

i Note

- The areas covered by the sensors \Rightarrow Fig. 110 are examples and do not represent the range of the sensors to scale. The radar sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle.
- Please ensure that all sensors are clean and kept free of snow and ice. They must not be covered by stickers, deposits or any other substances which could impair the function of the systems. Please observe the notes on cleaning and care \Rightarrow page 284.
- The sensors can become misaligned as the result of an accident, physical force, impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel arches or underbody. In the interest of safety, do not use the assistance systems

if this is the case. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

- Poor light or visibility (for instance when entering a tunnel), or glare from reflecting objects, etc. may restrict the function of the sensors.
- External ultrasonic sources, such as from other vehicles, may interfere with the sensors.
- The side zone ⑥* is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, that area will be displayed in black until the area has been scanned and evaluated.

Overview of cameras



Fig. 112 Fitting location of cameras

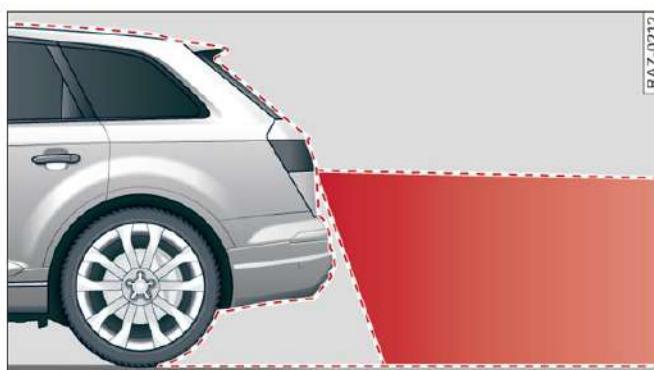


Fig. 113 Area covered by reversing camera (example)

The assistance systems evaluate the data from different cameras installed in the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following cameras may be fitted to detect the vehicle's surroundings:

- ① Camera behind the windscreen

- ② Surround view cameras on both exterior mirrors
- ③ Reversing camera in the boot lid
- ④ Surround view camera and night vision camera in the radiator grille

The reversing camera is only able to detect the area shown in red \Rightarrow Fig. 113. Only this area is shown on the upper display \Rightarrow .

WARNING

The cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

- Some objects may disappear from the sensors' field of vision as the vehicle approaches, even if they were originally detected by the system. In some instances, the sensors may only have a limited capacity to detect or display certain surfaces and objects:
 - Objects positioned above the area covered by the sensors, such as the bumpers of parked cars, partially opened garage doors or suspended objects not touching the ground
 - Low obstacles
 - Thin or narrow objects, such as chains, trees, posts or fences
 - Protruding objects, such as trailer draw bars
 - Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabrics

Note

- The areas covered by the cameras \Rightarrow Fig. 112 and \Rightarrow Fig. 113 are examples and do not represent the cameras' range of detection to scale.
- Please ensure that all cameras are clean and kept free of snow and ice. They must not be

covered by stickers, deposits or any other substances which could impair the function of the systems. Please observe the notes on cleaning and care \Rightarrow page 284.

- The cameras can become misaligned as the result of an accident, physical force, impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel arches or underbody. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.
- Poor light or visibility (for instance when entering a tunnel), or glare from reflecting objects, etc. may restrict the function of the cameras.
- Only use the image on the display to assist you if the picture is clear and discernible. The quality of the picture could be impaired by adverse light, dirt on the lens or a defect.
- The display shows an enlarged and distorted camera view. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately.

Switching systems on/off



Fig. 114 Centre console: Button for driver assist systems

Description

You can switch certain assistance systems on/off in the MMI system. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, this is done via the **standard display** or the **profile selection**.

- ▶ Press the  button, or
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Driver assist**.

Standard display

Applies to: vehicles with standard display

- ▶ Press  next to the desired system to switch it on/off.
- ▶ To display a short description of a particular system, press  next to it.

Profile selection

Applies to: vehicles with profile selection

- ▶ To select a profile, press the name of the profile on the upper display, or press the  button repeatedly until the profile is active.
- ▶ Press  on the upper display to call up a list of the systems contained in a particular profile.
- ▶ To display a short description of a particular system, select  next to it.
- ▶ To switch individual systems on/off in the **Individual** profile, select  and then  next to the appropriate system.

You can select from the following profiles:

- **Maximum** – In this profile, all the available systems are switched on.
- **Individual** – In this profile, you can switch the systems on/off individually.
- **Basic/All off** – In this profile, only the basic systems are switched on. If no basic system is available, the profile is called **All off**.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 134 ff.*



Note

Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Driver information

Speed warning function

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The speed warning function can help the driver keep below a pre-set maximum speed. To do this, a warning threshold can be set on the MMI.

As soon as the speed goes slightly above the set value, the speed warning system informs the driver via a message in the instrument cluster and a warning tone. The message disappears as soon as the speed drops back below the stored highest speed.

You are recommended to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit. This could be when driving in countries with general speed limits, or if you need to keep below a particular speed when winter tyres are fitted, etc.

i Note

- Please bear in mind that, even with the speed warning function, it is still important to keep a check on the car's speed with the speedometer and to observe the relevant country-specific speed limit regulations.
- On vehicles for some markets, the speed warning function warns you when you reach a factory-set speed.

Setting the warning threshold

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Driver assist > (⌚) > Speed warning**.

i Note

Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Display

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The following appears on the instrument cluster if the stored speed is exceeded:



Manually set speed limit (XX) exceeded

Camera-based traffic sign recognition

Description

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

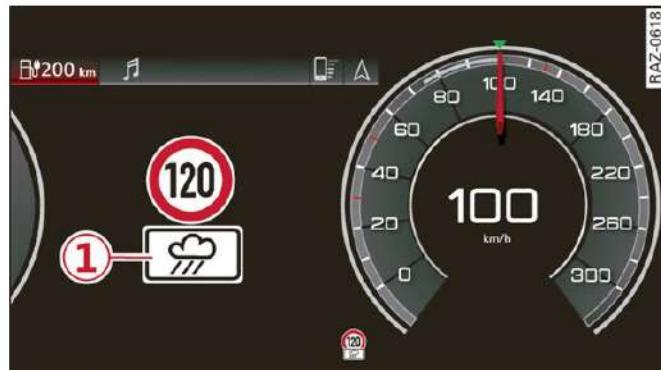


Fig. 115 Instrument cluster: Traffic sign recognition (example)

The traffic sign recognition system displays traffic signs detected by the front camera in the instrument cluster and on the head-up display*. Data from the navigation system are also factored into the information displayed. By interpreting the data, the system is able to display the speed limit even on roads without speed limit signs. Up to three traffic signs can be displayed simultaneously in the instrument cluster. The status line shows the speed limit which currently applies. You can choose not to show the information on the head-up display* ⇨ page 26.

In cases where the system is able to detect particular types of restrictions ①, these are displayed under the following conditions:

	A temporary speed restriction for wet weather is detected while the windscreen wipers are operating.
	A speed restriction for fog is detected while the vehicle's rear fog light or all-weather lights are switched on.

	A speed restriction applying at certain times of day has been detected and corresponds to the time displayed in the instrument cluster.
	The vehicle is towing a trailer and the Automatic trailer recognition option is activated on the MMI. In this case, traffic signs applying to trailers are displayed ^{a)} .

^{a)} Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

If the warning threshold set on the MMI \Rightarrow page 140 is exceeded with the speed warning active, a warning is shown on the display for as long as the threshold is exceeded.

Restrictions

Traffic sign recognition is not available in all countries. For a current list, see the Internet (e.g. www.audi.com). It is also subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

- If visibility is impaired by snow, rain, fog or heavy road spray.
- In dazzling light, e.g. from the sun or oncoming traffic.
- At high speeds.
- If the camera's range of vision \Rightarrow page 135 is impaired, e.g. by dirt or stickers. Notes on cleaning \Rightarrow page 284
- If the traffic signs are partially or completely obscured, e.g. by trees, snow, mud or other vehicles.
- If traffic signs deviate from their standard appearance.
- If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- If matrix traffic signs are mounted on overhead gantries.
- If traffic signs or routes have changed and the navigation data are out of date.
- If the system detects a speed sticker on a slow-moving vehicle (such as a heavy goods vehicle).

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras \Rightarrow page 134 ff.
- Under adverse conditions, the traffic sign recognition system may misinterpret or fail to detect traffic signs. It is therefore possible that the speed limit display may occasionally be unavailable or even incorrect.

Note

- The traffic sign recognition system does not adjust the speed of your vehicle to the speed limits.
- The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.

Controls

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

Calling up the traffic sign recognition

- ▶ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.

Setting the traffic sign based speed warning

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Driver assist > (⌚) > Speed warning**.

You can then set a warning threshold. If the warning threshold is exceeded, the speed limit currently detected will be shown on the display with an exclamation mark and flash briefly.

Settings related to towing a trailer¹⁾

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Driver assist > (⌚) > Speed warning > Trailer**.

Displaying signs for trailers

Important: The automatic trailer recognition must be activated.

¹⁾ Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

You can display speed limits which apply specifically to vehicles towing a trailer.

Setting the maximum speed for a trailer

You can set the maximum speed permitted for your type of trailer. If you do not enter a value or enter a value greater than the legal speed limit, the system will show the maximum national speed limit for vehicles towing a trailer.

Note

- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.
- The setting for the maximum towing speed for your type of trailer remains stored (regardless of the profile) and may need to be changed if you replace your trailer.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

Traffic sign recognition: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings

The camera view is obstructed. Clean the windscreen.

Traffic sign recognition: currently restricted. See owner's manual

This driver message appears if the navigation system lacks data, for example on newly-built roads. The limited functionality may temporarily cause fewer speed limits to be displayed (which increases the possibility of an error). If this message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

No traffic sign recognised

No relevant navigation data are available in the area, and no speed limit has been detected.

Fault. See owner's manual

The function of the system is impaired; the system will be deactivated. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Rest recommendation

Description

Applies to: vehicles with rest recommendation

Within the system limitations, the rest recommendation function can give a warning when the driver needs to take a break.

At the beginning of a trip, the system monitors the driver's general steering style. Using this as a reference, the system continuously compares the current steering input at speeds of between 60 and 200 km/h. If the analysis of the steering movements shows a reduction in attentiveness from the driver, the system recommends a break by showing a message on the instrument cluster and sounding a tone.

System limitations

The system may misinterpret the steering input in certain driving situations, such as the following:

- On twisty roads
- On rough roads
- In poor weather
- During performance driving
- When the driver's attention is distracted
- When lane guidance* is activated

Resetting the system

The system is automatically reset in the following situations:

- When you switch off the ignition
- When you release the driver's seat belt and open the driver's door
- When you drive slower than 60 km/h for a while. If you subsequently increase your speed again, the system will re-evaluate the driving style.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.
- Never drive when you are tired. As a driver you are always responsible for ensuring that you are fit to drive.

- On long journeys, make sure to take adequate breaks at regular intervals.
- The system cannot always tell if you need a break.
- In certain situations, the system may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and inappropriately recommend a break.
- No acute warning is given if the driver falls into a microsleep.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with rest recommendation

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI [⇒ page 137](#).

Note

If you switch off the system, it will remain switched off the next time you switch on the ignition.

Display

Applies to: vehicles with rest recommendation

Rest recommended

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears in the instrument cluster, take a break soon.

The message may be displayed again once if necessary.

Night vision assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

The night vision assist uses an infrared camera to monitor the area in front of your vehicle after dark (subject to certain system limitations). The system can display objects up to about 300 metres away from the camera.

The system detects pedestrians and wild animals by sensing a difference in temperature to their surroundings. If the difference is too small, pedestrians and wild animals can no longer be detected. The pedestrian and wild animal highlighting feature is therefore deactivated during the

day or at outside temperatures at or above approx. 25 °C.

The thermal image from the camera is displayed in the instrument cluster. Warmer areas generally appear lighter, while cooler areas appear darker.

The camera for the night vision assist system  [⇒ page 136, Fig. 112](#) is located in the vehicle's radiator grille. Please ensure that the night vision camera is kept free of stickers, deposits and any other substances which would impair the function of the night vision assist. Please observe the notes on cleaning and care [⇒ page 284](#).

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras [⇒ page 134 ff](#).
- The night vision assist can only detect pedestrians or wild animals when they are within the infrared camera's range of vision.
- Pedestrians and/or wild animals cannot be detected/highlighted by the night vision assist if
 - they are not standing upright (e.g. if they are sitting or lying on the ground) and/or
 - the silhouette on the display is incomplete or interrupted, e.g. because the pedestrian is partially obscured by a parked vehicle or the wild animal is partially concealed by high grass.
- Never attempt to avoid animals if this would put yourself or other road users at risk.

Note

- Even though the system can evaluate the shape of any object it detects, as well as the heat it is radiating, there are limits to the system performance. False warnings cannot be ruled out completely.
- For technical reasons, the display image is frozen for fractions of a second at certain intervals.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇒ page 137.

- ▶ The lights must be set to AUTO for the night vision assist system to be automatically activated in low lighting conditions.
- ▶ To activate the night vision assist immediately, manually switch the dipped headlights on. To do so, press on ① on the light switch module ⇒ page 49, Fig. 37 and select .

When the function is activated, the  tab appears in the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Select the  tab on the instrument cluster.

Note

When the night vision assist tab is selected in the instrument cluster and the dipped headlights are switched off, the thermal image will remain displayed until you switch to a different tab.

Highlighting and warning feature

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist



Fig. 116 Instrument cluster: Pedestrian highlighting and warning feature (example)

Pedestrian and wild animal detection with highlighting feature

The night vision assist can distinguish pedestrians and wild animals within a range of about 10 to 90 metres in front of the vehicle, subject to certain system limitations. The animal detection feature is not activated in built-up areas. Only large wild animals, such as deer, are detected by the system. When the headlights are on after dark and the system successfully detects an ob-

ject (within the system limitations), it will display the object in a yellow box ①.

Pedestrian and wild animal warnings

The system limitations vary according to the road speed and steering angle. The pedestrian and wild animal warning function urges you to take extra care.

The system will alert you if pedestrians or wild animals are detected within a critical area in front of your vehicle.

- Pedestrians or wild animals will be highlighted in red ② in the instrument cluster and the corresponding symbol  or  will light up ②.
- If the head-up display* is switched on,  or  will be displayed additionally.
- A tone will sound when an object is detected.
- If the thermal image from the night vision assist is hidden by another display (e.g. on-board computer), the red symbol  or  will appear if a pedestrian or wild animal warning occurs.

If the system for detecting pedestrians and wild animals is unavailable, the tab will display the  symbol.

Spotlight*

To direct the driver's attention to a pedestrian detected in the warning zone, the headlights can illuminate the pedestrian with the spotlight function.

This takes place at speeds above approx. 60 km/h. It does not take place in towns with street lighting or if the system detects that another vehicle would be dazzled by the spotlight. The spotlight is not directed at wild animals. The spotlight* is controlled by the main beam assist* ⇒ page 50.

Contrast

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Important: The night vision assist must be switched on and the  tab must be displayed.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Driver assist > (⌚) > Night vision assist.** ▶

- ▶ Adjust the slider to set the desired level of contrast.

Note

Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Night vision assist: currently unavailable.

See owner's manual

The function of the system is temporarily impaired; the system will be deactivated. If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Driver assistance

Speed regulation systems

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

The speed regulation systems consist of the cruise control system and the speed limiter.

The cruise control system helps the driver to maintain a speed of approx. 20 km/h and above. The system regulates to the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

The speed limiter helps the driver to avoid exceeding a speed of approx. 30 km/h and above. The system limits the speed even if the accelerator is pressed.

WARNING

- Always direct your full attention to the road, even when you are using the speed regulation systems. It is always the driver who is responsible for the preset speed and for keeping a safe distance to the other vehicles on the road.
- For safety reasons, the speed regulation systems must not be used in city traffic, stop-and-go traffic, on roads with a lot of bends or in difficult or slippery driving conditions (such as ice, fog, loose grit or gravel, heavy rain, etc.) – risk of accident!
- When you take a turn-off, drive along a motorway exit lane or pass through roadwork sections, please temporarily switch off the speed regulation systems.
- Only accelerate quickly or use the kick-down feature when the visibility and weather conditions are suitable, and when the road and traffic conditions allow you do so safely.
- Do not resume the programmed cruising speed unless it is suitable for the traffic conditions - this can cause accidents.

CAUTION

Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and use the recu-

peration braking effect ⇒ page 96. This will reduce the load on the brakes.

Note

The brake lights come on when the system brakes the vehicle.

Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems



BFV-0129

Fig. 117 Operating lever: Switching the speed regulation systems on

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Pull the lever towards you to position ① to switch the system on.
- To switch between the cruise control system/adaptive cruise assist* and the speed limiter, press the B button on the operating lever.

The indicator lamp LIM or LIM will be displayed in the instrument cluster and the corresponding driver message will appear.

WARNING

The speed regulation systems may be switched off automatically if a fault occurs in the brake system (e.g. if the brakes overheat) while they are activated.

Note

The stored cruising speed remains when you switch between the systems.

Activating the preset speed/selecting it in advance

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can select the preset speed in advance when the vehicle is stationary or activate it when the vehicle is moving.

Important: You must have switched the system on.

- ▶ To select the preset speed in advance when the vehicle is stationary, press the operating lever towards  ⇒ page 145, Fig. 117.
- ▶ To activate the preset speed, pull the lever towards you to position ① while the vehicle is moving. Or:
- ▶ To use the speed at which the vehicle is currently travelling as the preset speed, press button A on the operating lever.

The indicator lamp  or  is displayed in the instrument cluster to indicate the activated preset speed.

Information is also provided in the head-up display*.

Changing the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

- ▶ To increase or reduce the preset speed in small steps, briefly push the lever one level upwards or downwards to position  ⇒ page 145, Fig. 117.
- ▶ To increase or reduce the preset speed in larger steps, briefly push the lever two levels upwards or downwards to position .
- ▶ To increase or reduce the preset speed continuously, push the lever one or two levels upwards or downwards to position  and hold it there.

Overriding/deactivating the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can override or deactivate the preset speed. If you deactivate the system, the preset speed remains stored and you can use it again later.

Important: You must have switched the system on and activated it.

Overriding

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- ▶ To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator.
- ▶ The system will revert to regulating to the preset speed as soon as you release the accelerator.

The cruise control system will be deactivated if you exceed the preset speed for a long time. The indicator lamp  will come on, but the preset speed will remain stored.

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter

- ▶ To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator past the point of resistance (kick-down feature).

The indicator lamp  flashes for as long as the preset speed is exceeded. The stored preset speed is reactivated as soon as your speed drops below the preset speed.

Deactivating

- ▶ To deactivate the preset speed, push the operating lever to position ② (click stop not engaged) ⇒ page 145, Fig. 117.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Press the brake pedal.



WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function and prevent the system from making brake applications.

Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

The preset speed is deleted if you switch the system off completely.

Important: The system must be switched on.

- ▶ Press the operating lever to position ② (click stop engaged) to switch the system off ⇒ page 145, Fig. 117. Or:
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

Cruise control system: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the cruise control system has been deactivated. There is a temporary fault, e.g. overheating brakes. Switch the cruise control system on again later.

Speed limiter: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the speed limiter has been deactivated. There is a temporary fault, e.g. overheating brakes. Switch the speed limiter on again later.

Efficiency assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

The efficiency assist can help the driver to anticipate the driving route and adopt an economical driving style. When you take your foot off the accelerator, the efficiency assist activates the recuperation function, depending on the situation.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the system can access data from the navigation system, from the camera behind the windscreen and from the radar sensors.

Adjusting the efficiency assist

The efficiency assist functions can be adjusted individually. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- **Recuperation** ⇒ page 96.
- **Predictive messages** prompt the driver to release the accelerator for improved driving efficiency ⇒ page 148.
- **Predictive control** uses the adaptive cruise assist to control the vehicle automatically based on impending events ⇒ page 148.

Event symbols

The following symbols may appear depending on the equipment fitted. The efficiency assist dis-

plays each symbol to indicate the event to which it is currently reacting.

Some symbols only appear when **Predictive messages** is activated and some only appear when the **Predictive control** and the adaptive cruise assist* are activated.

Symbol	Description
	Slow down (predictive messages only)
	Speed limit ahead (example)
	Speed limit ahead
	Corner or Exit ahead
	Intersection ahead
	Roundabout ahead
	Gradient (predictive messages only)
	Vehicle ahead (predictive messages only)
	(predictive control only) When the warning/indicator lamp lights up in green and red, this indicates a difference between the speed limit and the set speed.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.
- In certain situations, the recuperation function can brake the vehicle in anticipation of the route or traffic ahead; however the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to apply the brakes – risk of accident!



Note

- The functions depend on how up-to-date the navigation data* and traffic sign recognition* data are.
- The system only responds to traffic signs specifying a speed limit.

- Certain functions are not available when you leave the road area mapped on the navigation system.
- The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.
- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

the efficiency assist. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

Note

- The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- If a route has been entered in the navigation system*, that route will be used as reference for the tips given. If no route has been entered, the system uses an assumed route plan to predict the situation ahead.
- The type of information displayed can vary depending on the transmission position and on the driving mode currently selected in Audi drive select*. No messages are shown in driving program S.
- More messages are shown in the **efficiency*** mode of Audi drive select or in **Range mode**.
- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Predictive messages

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

Requirements

- The cruise control system* or the adaptive cruise assist* must not be regulating the speed.
- The speed is at least 30 km/h.
- The remaining route is long enough for the system to react to the event.

Display

The  symbol appears in the instrument cluster display when the efficiency assist is recommending you to take your foot off the accelerator.

Further symbols appear in the **driver assist** display to indicate which type of event the efficiency assist is responding to \Rightarrow page 147, *Event symbols*.

Settings

The functions can be switched off or adjusted as desired. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Charging & efficiency** > **Efficiency assist** > **Predictive messages**.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras \Rightarrow page 134 ff.
- Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using

Predictive control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and efficiency assist



Fig. 118 Instrument cluster: Predictive control display in speedometer

The adaptive cruise assist uses the data from the efficiency assist for predictive control¹⁾. The system adjusts the cruising speed of the adaptive cruise assist to speed limits which it detects and to the road layout ahead. Afterwards, it accelerates back up to the set speed.

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

When the adaptive cruise assist is switched on initially after the ignition has been switched on, the availability of the predictive control is indicated by a driver message.

The information displayed depends on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Requirements

- The regulating function of the adaptive cruise assist must be on \Rightarrow page 152.
- The system can only react to speed limits of 30 km/h and higher.

Display on speedometer

The display on the speedometer is not available in all layouts*.

- ① Marking showing set speed (i.e. the cruising speed set by the driver or by the predictive control).
- ② Red band showing difference between speed limit and set speed.
- ③ Grey band showing planned reduction in set speed based on road layout ahead.

Overriding the regulating function

The driver can override the predictive control at any time by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal. In addition, the operating lever \Rightarrow page 152, Fig. 124 can be used to change the speed limit control response.

The predictive control is deactivated if the driver makes a significant change to the speed limit control response. The adaptive cruise assist regulates the speed to match the manually set value.

Setting predictive control

The predictive control functions can be switched off or adjusted as desired. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Driver assist** > (\odot) > **Adaptive cruise assist** > **Predictive control**.

Available settings:

Use speed limit – adjusts cruising speed to speed limits ahead, optionally **With tolerance**. In this

case, the actual speed can be above or below the set speed briefly for increased efficiency. This may result in a delay in observing the speed limit.

Adaptation to route ahead – can be switched off or adjusted individually from **slow** to **fast**. This setting affects the handling characteristics of the predictive control, e.g. how fast the vehicle will drive through corners.

Driver messages

If  and a driver message with **Adaptive cruise assist: predictive control** are displayed in the event of a fault, some or all of the efficiency assist functions are unavailable.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors \Rightarrow page 135, Fig. 111 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras \Rightarrow page 134 ff.
- Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the predictive control. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
- The system does not give way to priority traffic and does not stop at traffic lights – risk of accident!
- The speed at which the system drives the vehicle through a corner may not correspond to your own driving style or ambient conditions. To avoid a risk of accident, apply the brakes manually as necessary, and reduce the speed setting in **Adaptation to route ahead**.

Note

- When using the predictive control, the actual road speed may be above or below the

maximum speed limit. As the driver you are always responsible for keeping within the speed limit.

- The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The marking ① is adjusted to the set speed when a speed limit is detected even when the adaptive cruise assist is not regulating the speed.
- When the recuperation function is active, the actual road speed may occasionally exceed or fall below the set speed.
- The system's control response depends on the driving program set for the adaptive cruise assist/Audi drive select* mode selected.
- When you switch on the ignition and subsequently drive onto a motorway with no speed limit, the system initially regulates the speed to 130 km/h¹⁾. After this, the last speed set by the driver is applied.
- The system will only regulate the speed at motorway junctions or on slip roads if these are part of the route set in the route guidance.
- If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or if the map material on the navigation system is out of date, this can cause failures or implausibilities in the control response.
- While route guidance is active on the navigation system, the control uses the navigation route as a reference. Implausibilities in the control response can occur when route guidance is inactive or if you leave the route.
- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Adaptive cruise assist

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the adaptive cruise assist may perform the following functions:

The **adaptive speed/distance control system** assists the driver by controlling the road speed and maintaining a set distance to the vehicle in front within certain limits imposed by the system. When it detects a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist can accelerate and brake within certain system limitations. When there is no traffic in front, the adaptive cruise assist works just like a normal cruise control system by maintaining a constant speed. When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist matches your speed to that vehicle by automatically applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). As soon as it detects no more vehicles in front, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates back up to the cruising speed.

The additional **lane guidance** feature provides steering assistance to help keep the vehicle in the lane. You can select whether the adaptive cruise assist provides assistance in lane guidance ⇒ *page 154, Switching lane guidance on/off*.

In **congested traffic and traffic jams**, the system can brake down to a standstill and move off again automatically under certain conditions.

Applies to vehicles with efficiency assist: The **predictive control** can adjust the set speed as appropriate for the road ahead ⇒ *page 148, Predictive control*.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 134 ff.*

¹⁾ Depending on country

Restrictions

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

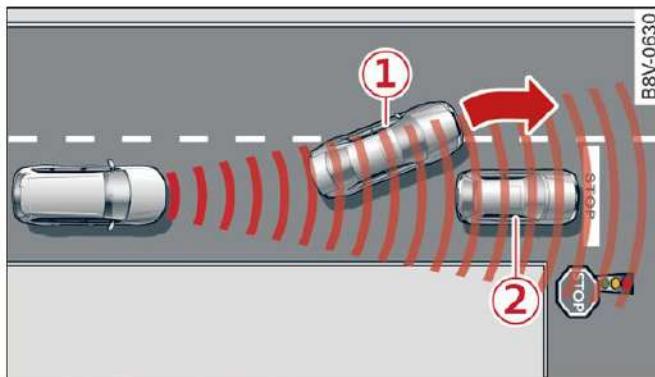


Fig. 119 Example: Vehicle changing lane and vehicle stationary

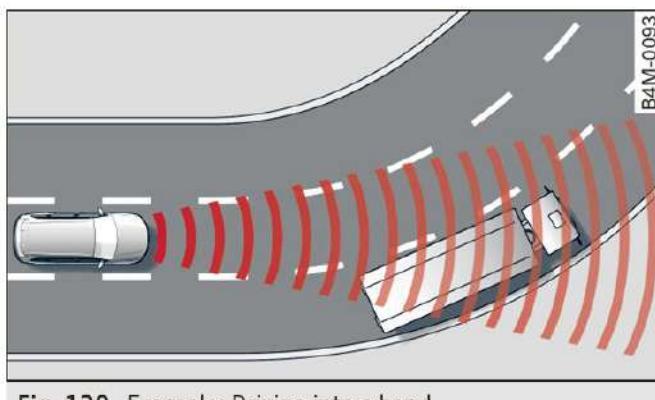


Fig. 120 Example: Driving into a bend

In some driving situations, the adaptive cruise assist functions are restricted and you may need to intervene by, for example, braking the vehicle yourself.

- If a vehicle (1), which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise assist, turns off or changes lane and another stationary vehicle (2) is located in front of that vehicle, the system will react to the stationary vehicle.
- When driving into a bend \Rightarrow Fig. 120 and driving out of a bend, the adaptive cruise assist may react to a vehicle travelling in the next lane and therefore brake the vehicle. You can override this by accelerating briefly.
- The adaptive cruise assist operates on the basis of information gathered from various sensors and cameras. Vehicles cannot be detected until they are within range and inside the sensors' field of vision \Rightarrow page 135, Fig. 110.
- In tight bends, a vehicle driving ahead which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise assist may no longer be recognised, and

the system may accelerate unexpectedly as a result.

- The adaptive cruise assist will not react to stationary vehicles in the same lane if the system assumes that you can easily steer to avoid the stationary vehicle.
- The adaptive cruise assist cannot react to stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam, particularly at high speeds.
- The ability of the adaptive cruise assist to detect vehicles in front is limited when they are too close, travelling out of line, or moving into your lane.
- Vehicles that are not clearly discernible, e.g. a motorcycle or cyclist travelling in front of you and vehicles with high ground clearance or a protruding load, are often identified late or are not detected at all.
- The adaptive cruise assist does not react to pedestrians, animals or crossing or oncoming traffic.

⚠ WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras \Rightarrow page 134 ff.

Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 121 Instrument cluster: Display on speedometer

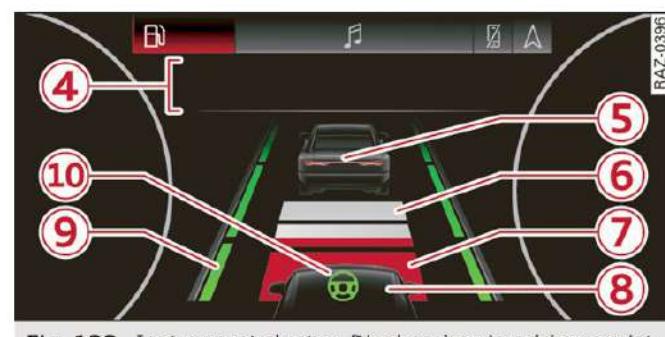


Fig. 122 Instrument cluster: Display showing driver assist system

Warning/indicator lamps on the speedometer ① - ③ and driver messages indicate the driving situation and settings. More detailed system information is shown on the **Driver assist** display ④ - ⑧. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

Display on speedometer

The display on the speedometer is not available in all layouts*.

- ① Marker for set speed
- ② Current speed
- ③ Available speed range of the adaptive cruise assist (example)

Symbols in the Driver assist display

The symbols are only shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up in the on-board computer \Rightarrow page 17.

- ④ Driver messages and settings
- ⑤ Vehicle detected in front
- ⑥ Specified distance set
- ⑦ The distance bars are coloured in red from the bottom up as soon as the actual distance is shorter than the set distance.
- ⑧ Own vehicle
- ⑨ Availability of lane departure warning \Rightarrow page 159, *Lane departure warning*
- ⑩ Lane guidance active  or not active .

Warning and indicator lamps

 – The speed/distance regulating function of the adaptive cruise assist is active. No vehicle has been detected in front. The set cruising speed is being maintained.

 – The speed/distance regulating function of the adaptive cruise assist is active. A vehicle in front has been detected. The adaptive cruise assist is regulating the speed to maintain a constant distance to the vehicle in front, and will accelerate and brake the vehicle automatically.

 – The speed/distance regulating function of the adaptive cruise assist is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive off**. A vehicle in front has been detected. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.

 – The speed/distance regulating function of the adaptive cruise assist is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive off**. No vehicle has been detected in front. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.

 – The system alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front. You must intervene \Rightarrow page 157, *Driver intervention prompt*.

 – This indicator lamp appears if no more steering activity is detected. Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times \Rightarrow page 158.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras \Rightarrow page 134 ff.

Operating adaptive cruise assist

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

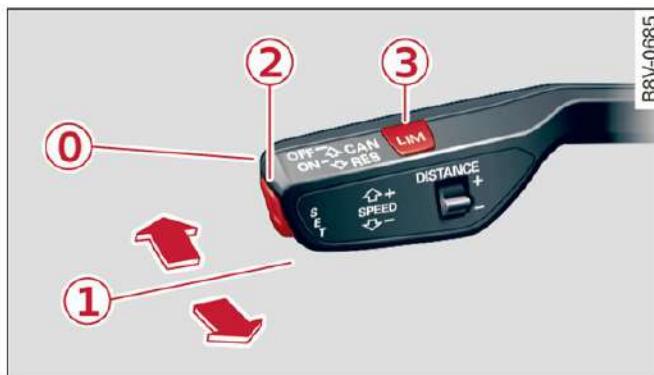


Fig. 123 Control lever: Operating adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 124 Control lever: Setting a new speed

Switching on

- To switch the adaptive cruise assist on, pull the lever towards you to position ① until it engages.

Setting the speed and activating the regulating function

When you switch on the system, you can set your current speed as the "cruising speed" and activate the cruise control:

- ▶ Press the **SET** button **②**. The set speed will be indicated by a marking on the speedometer **①**
⇒ *page 151, Fig. 121* and displayed in the instrument cluster ⇒ .
- ▶ You should also hold the brake pedal to store the speed if the vehicle is stationary.

You can set any speed between 30 km/h and the maximum of the available speed range **③¹⁾**.

Pausing the regulating function

The regulating function can be paused at any time while driving or when the vehicle is stationary.

- ▶ To pause the regulating function, press the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow.
Or:
- ▶ Apply the brakes.

The indicator lamp  will go out.

Resuming the regulating function

Once a speed has been set, it can be called up again after the regulating function has been paused.

- ▶ To resume the regulating function while you are driving, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.
- ▶ To reactivate the regulating function when the vehicle is stationary, press the brake pedal and pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

Setting a new speed

- ▶ To increase or reduce the set speed in small steps, briefly push the lever one level upwards or downwards towards **+/−**.
- ▶ To increase or reduce the set speed in larger steps, briefly push the lever two levels upwards or downwards towards **+/−**.

- ▶ To increase or reduce the speed quickly, push the lever one or two levels upwards or downwards towards **+/−** and hold the lever until the marking on the speedometer **①**
⇒ *page 151, Fig. 121* reaches the desired speed.

Pre-selecting a speed

You can pre-select the set speed, even when the adaptive cruise assist is inactive, by moving the lever in the appropriate direction **+/−**. To activate the pre-selected speed, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

Switching off

You can switch off the adaptive cruise assist if you will not be using it for a longer period of time.

- ▶ To switch the adaptive cruise assist off, press the lever away from you to position **④** until it engages.

The indicator lamp and the set speed will disappear.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 134 ff.*
- When it is switched on, the adaptive cruise assist serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering, driving off and controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other cars.
- Only use the adaptive cruise assist in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- When you take a turn-off or drive along a motorway exit lane, please temporarily switch off the adaptive cruise assist. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.

¹⁾ Depends on country and power unit

- If you press the **SET** button **②** at a speed of less than 30 km/h, the vehicle will automatically apply the minimum speed setting of 30 km/h. If no vehicles have been detected in front, the vehicle will automatically accelerate up to this speed.

i Note

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- If the speed limiter* is selected after the ignition is switched on, the adaptive cruise assist must have been selected beforehand. Press the **LIM*** button **③** to select the adaptive cruise assist.
- The speed setting is cleared for safety reasons when you switch off the ignition or the adaptive cruise assist.
- The ESC and traction control system (ASR) are automatically activated when the adaptive cruise assist is switched on.
- The system cannot be switched on when the maximum possible road gradient for safe operation has been exceeded.
- If you operate the turn signal to overtake and the adaptive cruise assist concludes that you are intending to make an overtaking manoeuvre, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates before you change lane and reduces the distance to the vehicle ahead.

Switching lane guidance on/off

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and lane guidance



Fig. 125 Turn signal lever: Button for lane guidance and lane departure warning

The lane guidance function can be switched on and off. Within certain system limits, it helps the driver to keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane.

Activating/deactivating lane guidance availability

Important: Lane guidance must be selected in the adaptive cruise assist settings ⇒ *page 157*.

- Press the button ⇒ *Fig. 125* -arrow-.

When the lane guidance function has been selected and activated, it assists the driver with steering inputs while the adaptive cruise assist is controlling the speed and distance.

Display overview and limits of the lane guidance

In the **Driver assist** display, the indicator lamp shows whether lane guidance is available **⑩** ⇒ *page 151, Fig. 122*.

If the indicator lamp or lights up in white on at least one side, or if the indicator lamp lights up in white in the **Driver assist** display, lane guidance is not active. This may be for the following reasons:

- The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in road works or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
- The traffic lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The bend is too tight.
- The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
- You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.

! WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 134 ff.*

i Note

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- We recommend that you use the lane guidance on major roads only.

- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.
- The button -arrow- switches the availability of the lane guidance and lane departure warning on/off together if the lane guidance function is selected in the settings for the adaptive cruise assist.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

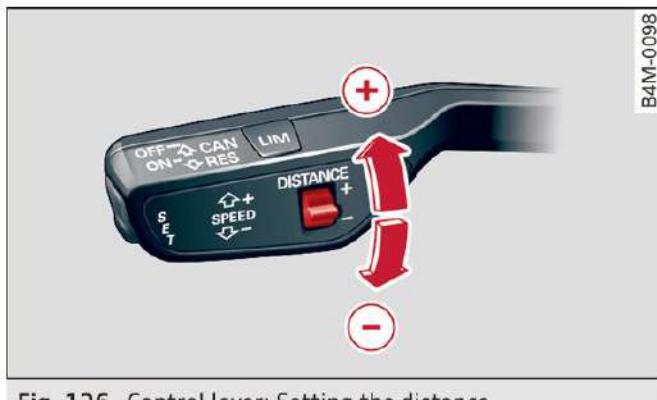


Fig. 126 Control lever: Setting the distance

Setting the distance changes the gap between your vehicle and the one ahead. The higher the speed, the higher the distance.

- ▶ To display the current distance setting, briefly press the rocker switch.
- ▶ To increase or reduce the distance by one level, briefly press the rocker switch again towards **(+)/(-)**.

The newly set distance will be displayed briefly, e.g. indicator lamp . In the **Driver assist** display, a graphic will be shown instead of the indicator lamps \Rightarrow page 151, Fig. 122. The display provides the same information as the warning/indicator lamps.

When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist matches your speed to that vehicle by applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). If the vehicle in front accelerates, the adaptive cruise assist will also accelerate up to the target speed you have specified.

The following distances can be set:

Sym- bol	Meaning
	Time-based distance of approx. 1 second. This setting is equivalent to a distance of 28 metres at a speed of 100 km/h.
	Time-based distance of approx. 1.3 seconds. This setting is equivalent to a distance of 36 metres at a speed of 100 km/h.
	Time-based distance of approx. 1.8 seconds. This setting corresponds to the general recommendations of automobile clubs, traffic authorities, etc. At a speed of 100 km/h, this is equivalent to a distance of 50 metres.
	Time-based distance of approx. 2.4 seconds. This setting is equivalent to a distance of 67 metres at a speed of 100 km/h.
	Time-based distance of approx. 3.6 seconds. This setting is equivalent to a distance of 100 metres at a speed of 100 km/h.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras \Rightarrow page 134 ff.



Note

- When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The acceleration style ranges from moderate to dynamic, depending on the selected driving program and the distance setting \Rightarrow page 157, *Adjusting adaptive cruise assist settings*.
- The actual distance maintained by the adaptive cruise control may be longer or shorter, depending on the traffic situation and the driving style of the driver in front.

Overriding the regulating function

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 127 Control lever: Overriding the regulating function

Important: The adaptive cruise assist must be switched on.

Overriding the regulating function

- ▶ To accelerate manually, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position or press the accelerator.
- ▶ To reactivate the adaptive cruise assist, release the lever or take your foot off the accelerator.

If you are in the **Driver assist** display, the driver message **Adaptive cruise assist: overridden** will appear.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.
- Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.

Driving in congested traffic

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 128 Instrument cluster: Safe start monitor

Stopping with the adaptive cruise assist

The adaptive cruise assist also helps you when driving in congested traffic. If a vehicle in front stops, the adaptive cruise control applies the brakes (within the system limits) and holds the vehicle at a standstill.

Driving off with the adaptive cruise assist¹⁾

If the message **Ready to drive off** and are on the display and the vehicle in front drives off, your vehicle will automatically start moving ⇒ .

If you have been stopped for a few seconds or more, the message will disappear and your vehicle will no longer move off automatically for safety reasons.

- ▶ You can extend the **Ready to drive off** period by pulling the lever towards you briefly in the direction of the arrow ⇒ page 156, Fig. 127.
- ▶ To set the vehicle in motion again manually, tap the accelerator with your foot.

Safe start monitor

The vehicle may start moving even if it detects certain obstacles while doing so ⇒ . If, for example, the camera behind the windscreen detects an obstacle, the warning lamp will light up to draw your attention to the danger.

If you are in the **Driver assist** display, this is also illustrated ① ⇒ Fig. 128 along with the driver message **WARNING!**. In addition, a tone will sound. Your vehicle will then set off more slowly. ►

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

This can happen in certain situations, even if there appears to be no obstacle.

- If necessary, press the brake pedal to slow down.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.
- If the **Ready to drive off¹⁾** message appears, your vehicle will start moving even if there is an obstacle between your car and the vehicle in front. Always make sure that there are no obstacles between your vehicle and the vehicle in front - risk of accident!

Note

For safety reasons, the adaptive cruise assist is active only if

- the driver's seat belt is fastened,
- all the doors and the bonnet are closed,
- your vehicle has not been stopped for too long.

Driver intervention prompt

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 129 Instrument cluster: Driver intervention prompt

You are prompted to intervene manually if the adaptive cruise assist alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front. The warning lamp  and the driver message **DISTANCE!** draws your attention to the danger.

The illustration ① is only shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up in the on-board computer ⇒ page 17.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.

Adjusting adaptive cruise assist settings

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

You can make personal adjustments to the adaptive cruise assist settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Driver assist > (⌚) > Adaptive cruise assist.**

Available settings:

Lane guidance – You can select whether the lane guidance is activated together with the adaptive cruise assist.

Driving program – Depending on the selected driving program and the distance setting, the handling characteristics will range from **dynamic** to **moderate**, and the haptic feedback of the lane guidance will be adjusted accordingly.

Store last distance – The last distance is stored after the ignition is switched off. If the distance is not stored, distance  (time-based distance of approx. 1.8 seconds) is automatically selected as the default setting.

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

Predictive control – When predictive control is switched on, the system will respond automatically to the conditions and characteristics of the road ahead ⇒ page 148.

Note

- The Audi drive select mode **efficiency*** also affects the driving style and feel of the adaptive cruise assist. The **Driving program** can no longer be set.

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions of the adaptive cruise assist are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors \Rightarrow page 135, Fig. 111 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Overtake prevention¹⁾

This driver message and a graphic of a vehicle detected in the next lane appear when the adaptive cruise assist adjusts the speed to prevent you from overtaking on the right/left¹⁾. The symbols are only shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up in the on-board computer \Rightarrow page 17.

Applies to: vehicles with narrowed road assist

Narrow section

This message appears in the **Driver assist** display on some equipment versions when the adaptive cruise assist adjusts the speed to navigate a narrow section of road, e.g. in roadworks.

Please take over steering and direct your attention to the road.

Please take control!

This message appears if no steering activity is detected. Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times.

Adaptive cruise assist: please take over.

This message appears, for instance, if the vehicle rolls backwards when driving away on a slight gradient, even though the systems are active. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from

rolling back or colliding with an object behind. Depending on the equipment in the vehicle, this message may appear and the adaptive cruise assist may be switched off if the driver does not take over the steering after being prompted with several severity levels.

Applies to: vehicles with laser scanner

Adaptive cruise assist: restricted. See owner's manual

This driver message appears when the sensor vision is restricted, e.g. in adverse weather conditions or if a sensor is covered. You can still switch the adaptive cruise assist on; however certain functions, such as the narrowed road assist, will be unavailable. Some objects may be detected late or may not be detected at all in certain situations. Please take special care. It may be possible to rectify the issue by cleaning the area in front of the sensors \Rightarrow page 135, Fig. 111.

Note

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Distance warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with distance warning



Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

Fig. 130 Instrument cluster: Distance warning

This function measures the distance to the vehicle in front in time units at speeds above approximately 65 km/h. The warning lamp draws your attention to the danger if the vehicle goes below the warning threshold.

¹⁾ Depending on country

Applies to vehicles with adaptive cruise assist: The display ①* is only shown when you have called up the **Driver assist** display on the on-board computer ⇒ page 17 and when the adaptive cruise assist is not controlling the vehicle's speed/distance.

Adjusting distance warning settings

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇒ page 137.

If your vehicle has the appropriate equipment, you can adjust the threshold for the distance warning as desired.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Driver assist > (⌚) > Distance warning.**

Driver messages

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the distance warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ page 135, Fig. 111 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.



Note

- As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The distance may be below the warning threshold for a short time when overtaking or approaching another vehicle quickly from behind. In this case, no warning will be given. A warning is only given if the distance is

below the threshold for an extended period of time.

Lane departure warning

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

The lane departure warning detects lane markings within certain limits imposed by the system. If you approach one of the detected lane markings, the system can warn you that the vehicle might be about to cross one of the markings by correcting the steering. The steering wheel may vibrate as well.

The system operates at speeds between approx. 65 km/h and 250 km/h¹⁾.

Applies to vehicles with lane departure warning but without side assist: The system does not warn you if you operate the turn signal before crossing a lane demarcation. In this case, it assumes that you intend to change lanes.

Applies to vehicles with lane departure warning in combination with side assist: If you operate the turn signal while the lane departure warning is active, the steering will be corrected just before you cross the lane demarcation if the side assist detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle and judges the situation to be critical. This intervention is intended to keep the vehicle in the lane.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.

¹⁾ 55 km/h - 250 km/h in certain countries

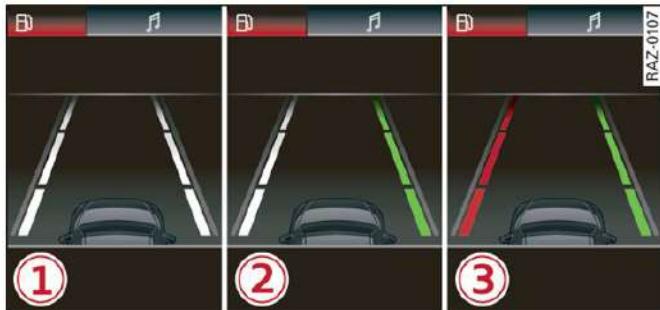
Description

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning



B8V-0692

Fig. 131 Turn signal lever: Switching lane departure warning on/off



RAZ-0107

Fig. 132 Instrument cluster: Display showing driver assist system

Switching lane departure warning on/off

The lane departure warning is automatically activated¹⁾ each time you switch on the ignition.

- Press the button -arrow- ⇨ Fig. 131 to switch the system on/off. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster will light up or go out.

Display and warning

The indicator lamps /, / on the left/right side indicate whether the system is available and/or ready to give warnings. Corrective steering inputs are indicated by the warning lamp / on the corresponding side.

You can also call up the **Driver assist** display on the on-board computer ⇨ page 17. The display provides the same information as the warning/indicator lamps.

Display or warning/indicator lamp	Meaning on corresponding side
① White line(s)	The lane departure warning system is switched on but not ready to give warnings.
② Green line(s)	The lane departure warning system is switched and ready to give warnings.
③ Red line	The lane departure warning system warns you by correcting the steering before you cross the lane demarcation. The steering wheel may also vibrate to warn you if the detected lane demarcations are crossed.

The lane departure warning system is ready to give warnings when it detects a demarcation on at least one side of the lane in which you are driving.

When the indicator lamp / lights up, the lane departure warning system is not ready to give warnings. This may be for the following reasons:

- The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in road works or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
- The current speed is below the threshold necessary to activate the system.
- The traffic lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The bend is too tight.
- The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
- You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ page 134 ff.
- The system initiates a corrective steering input to warn the driver that the vehicle is about to leave the lane. As the driver you are

¹⁾ Depending on country

always responsible for staying in your own lane.

- In certain situations, e.g. during heavy braking, the system may not correct the steering. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

Note

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The steering will not be corrected and the steering wheel will not vibrate if the system detects a situation where it is clear that an overtaking manoeuvre is intended.

Adjusting lane departure warning settings

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

You can switch the additional steering wheel vibration warning from the lane departure warning system on/off. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Driver assist > () > Lane departure warning > Vibration warning**.

Note

Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the lane assist/lane departure warning is unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or the camera may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the camera \Rightarrow page 136, Fig. 112 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Lane departure warning: please drive in the middle of the lane.

This driver message appears and an acoustic signal is given if the lane departure warning system has to intervene for a long time.

 **Please take over steering and direct your attention to the road.**

This driver message appears if no more steering activity is detected and the system registers several times that the vehicle may be about to cross one of the markings. Always leave your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. The lane departure warning system is switched on but not ready to give warnings. If the driver still does not react, the emergency assist may be activated on vehicles which have this function \Rightarrow page 170. On vehicles without emergency assist, the lane departure warning will be deactivated and will remain unavailable for a short time only.

Note

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Audi pre sense

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

The Audi pre sense functions can take action to protect the vehicle occupants and other road users in certain situations within the system limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, various Audi pre sense systems may be fitted:

- The **Audi pre sense basic** system can react in unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/understeers), or in the event of emergency/preventative braking.

- The **Audi pre sense front** system¹⁾ can detect an impending frontal collision and can react by giving warnings, applying the brakes and activating protective functions for the safety of the occupants.
- The **Audi pre sense rear** system monitors the traffic travelling behind the vehicle and can react to an impending rear-end collision.
- The **Audi pre sense side** system can detect an impending side collision with intersecting traffic or vehicles approaching from the side, and can activate protective functions.
- The **swerve assist** system can detect if the driver swerves to avoid an obstacle in a critical situation, and can assist by providing steering input.
- The **turn-off assist** system can detect critical oncoming vehicles in the opposite lane and can react by applying the brakes.

Audi pre sense protective functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Depending on the vehicle's speed and equipment, the following functions may be activated in certain situations:

- Visual and acoustic warnings.
- Activation of hazard warning lights¹⁾.
- Reversible seat belt tensioners.
- Automatic closing of windows and panorama sun roof.
- Adjustment of the seats.
- Additional protective functions provided by the individual systems.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.



Note

- Only some of the protective functions may be activated depending on the hazard situation and the Audi drive select* mode selec-

ted. Some functions may be modified or skipped.

- Audi pre sense may also be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:
 - If the occupants are not wearing seat belts.
 - If the ignition was switched on a few seconds before. The indicator lamp will light up.
 - If the vehicle is reversing.
 - If there is a fault in the airbag control unit.
 - If the ESC is restricted or switched off, or if there is a fault in the ESC ⇒ page 110.

Audi pre sense basic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense basic

Audi pre sense basic is activated automatically at speeds above approx. 30 km/h. In unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/understeers), or in the event of emergency/preventative braking, Audi pre sense basic can activate the protective functions of Audi pre sense.

! WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.

Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

Audi pre sense front uses the data from the camera to calculate the probability of a collision. An impending frontal collision with vehicles, pedestrians¹⁾ or cyclists¹⁾ can be detected within the limits of the system at various speeds both in town and on country roads.

Audi pre sense front is activated at speeds above approx. 10 km/h. The system can react to pedestrians¹⁾ and cyclists¹⁾ at speeds of up to 85 km/h and to other vehicles at speeds of up to 250 km/h.

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

Advance warning/acute warning

The system can draw the driver's attention to hazardous situations. An **advance warning** is given if:

- A vehicle in front brakes suddenly
- Your own vehicle approaches a much slower or stationary vehicle from behind
- A pedestrian or cyclist¹⁾ is standing in or moving towards your lane.

The driver message **Audi pre sense**  and a warning tone draw your attention to the danger.

In the event of an impending collision, an **acute warning** may also be given in the form of a brake jolt. In addition, the instrument cluster display draws your attention to the danger. If this warning is given, you may need to take evasive action or brake hard to avoid a collision.

Automatic braking

If you do not respond to the acute warning, Audi pre sense front can, subject to general system limitations, apply the brakes partially or fully¹⁾ in order to slow the vehicle down and take the impact out of a potential collision.

Automatic brake pressure increase

If Audi pre sense detects that you are not braking hard enough in the event of an impending collision, it may increase the brake pressure in certain situations.

Taking control of the vehicle

If the driver message  **Please take control of vehicle.** is displayed, the Audi pre sense system has applied the brakes to bring the vehicle to a standstill, and you now need to resume operation of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.
- The protection provided by Audi pre sense front is still subject to the prevailing physi-

cal limits. It is a driver assist function and cannot prevent a collision in every situation. The driver must always intervene personally. As the driver you are always responsible for braking in good time. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.

- Among other things, Audi pre sense front does not react to animals, crossing and oncoming traffic or objects such as poles, fences and railbound vehicles.
- Audi pre sense front may be restricted or unavailable in corners.
- If the brakes are applied automatically when towing a trailer, the behaviour of the trailer under braking may be different than usual.

Note

Please note that Audi pre sense front may apply the brakes unexpectedly. Always secure your luggage to prevent damage and possible injury.

Audi pre sense rear

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense rear

Audi pre sense rear uses the data from the radar sensors fitted at the rear of the vehicle to calculate the likelihood of a collision with the vehicle behind, within certain system limits.

The protective functions of the Audi pre sense system may be activated if it detects a collision risk from the vehicle behind.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.
- Audi pre sense rear does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

Note

- The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system are deactivated if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically.
- The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system may be deactivated if a fault develops in the side assist.

Audi pre sense side

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense side

Audi pre sense side uses the data from the radar sensors fitted additionally at the front and rear of the vehicle, as well as other sensors, and can react to an impending side collision with intersecting traffic or vehicles approaching from the side.

Audi pre sense side is active at speeds of up to approx. 60 km/h. The protective functions of Audi pre sense may be activated if the system detects a collision risk.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras [⇒ page 134 ff.](#)
- Audi pre sense side does not react to people, animals, or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

Note

- The functions of the Audi pre sense side system are restricted in towing mode.
- The Audi pre sense side functions may be deactivated if a fault develops in the intersection assist*.

Swerve assist

Applies to: vehicles with swerve assist

The serve assist can help you to steer around an obstacle in critical situations where you take sudden evasive action. If you take action to avoid an

obstacle following an acute warning, the swerve assist will help you by applying a small amount of steering torque to correct your steering angle while you are steering actively. The swerve assist is available at speeds of between approx. 30 km/h and 150 km/h.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras [⇒ page 134 ff.](#)
- The swerve assist does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

Note

- The functions of the serve assist may be unavailable if the ESC is restricted or switched off, or if there is a fault in the ESC [⇒ page 110.](#)
- You will be alerted on the instrument cluster display when the system intervenes.

Turn-off assist

Applies to: vehicles with turn-off assist

When taking a turn-off

When you start to take a turn-off to the left¹⁾ or when you are driving slowly, the turn-off assist can apply the brakes in order to prevent a collision with an oncoming vehicle. The effect of the brake application is to keep the vehicle in your traffic lane. This function is only available when you operate the turn signals and are driving at less than 10 km/h.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras [⇒ page 134 ff.](#)
- The turn-off assist does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

¹⁾ In countries with left-hand traffic: A turn-off to the right

Note

- The functions of the turn-off assist may be unavailable if the ESC is restricted or switched off, or if there is a fault in the ESC
⇒ *page 110*.
- You will be alerted on the instrument cluster display when the system intervenes.

Adjusting Audi pre sense settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇒ *page 137*.

You can make personal adjustments to the Audi pre sense settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Driver assist > (⚙) > Audi pre sense**.

Available settings:

- **Turn-off assist**
- **Swerve assist**

Advance warning¹⁾ - You can switch the advance warning off or set the warning time for Audi pre sense (**early/medium/late**).

Start by setting the advance warning to **early**. If you then find that the system warns you earlier than desired, you can set the advance warning to **medium**. The advance warning should only be set to **late** in exceptional cases.

Note

- Switch off Audi pre sense on private roads and if the vehicle is being towed away or loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. This prevents the Audi pre sense system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.
- If a system is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition¹⁾.
- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions of the Audi pre sense system are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135*, Fig. 111 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

¹⁾ Depending on country

Side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

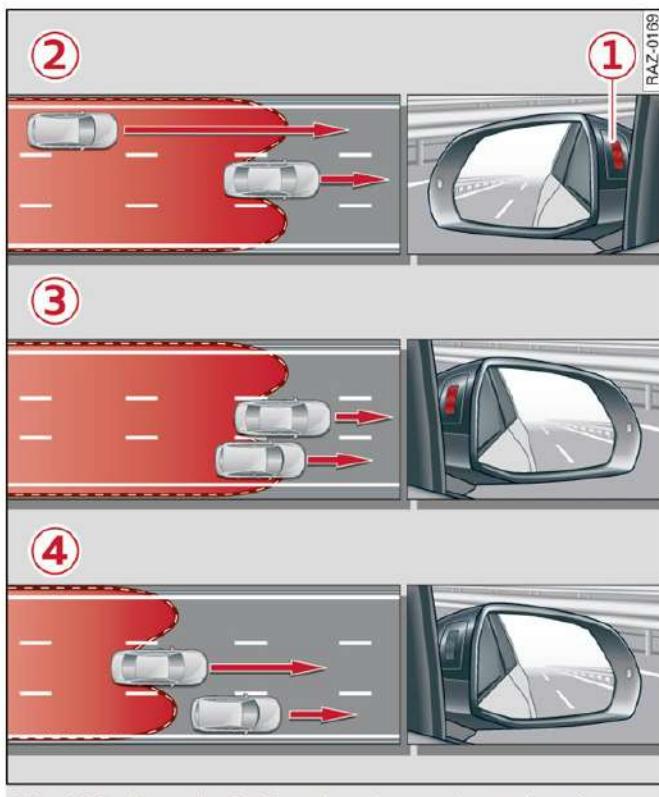


Fig. 133 Example: Driving situations and exterior mirror warning signal (example)

The side assist is active at speeds of approx. walking pace and above. If an approaching object is judged to be critical, the warning signal on the exterior mirror (1) lights up on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

Driving situations

The system can warn of the following dangers:

- (2) **Approaching vehicles:** The system may judge a vehicle to be critical even if it is still further away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the earlier the warning will appear.
- (3) **Vehicles moving at a similar-speed:** The warning signal on the exterior mirror lights up if a vehicle in another lane is judged to be critical. The side assist will give a warning for all the vehicles it has detected at the latest when they enter the "blind spot".
- (4) **Other vehicles being overtaken:** The warning signal lights up only if the system detects another vehicle which you are overtaking slowly (i.e. with a speed differential of less than about 15 km/h). There is no warning if you overtake a vehicle faster.

Information mode

In information mode, the side assist informs you when it has detected an object which it judges to be critical. This applies even when the vehicle is stationary if you operate the turn signal, so the system can be used when making a turn-off as well. At speeds of approx. 10 km/h and above, the system also informs you when it has detected an object which it judges to be critical even if you have not operated the turn signal.

The intensity of the warning signal in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front.

Warning mode

If you operate the turn signal and the warning signal flashes brightly, the side assist is warning you of what it judges to be a critical object.

Applies to vehicles with virtual exterior mirrors: On virtual exterior mirrors*, the complete display surround flashes.



Applies to: vehicles with virtual exterior mirrors

Fig. 134 Lane change warning signal

How it works

The side assist function monitors the blind spot and the traffic in the adjacent lanes behind your vehicle. The side assist can recognise traffic approaching from behind (within certain system limitations) and warn you as you change lane or turn off. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle.

The term "exterior mirrors" in this description may also refer to the virtual exterior mirrors*.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and additional driver assist systems, the warning signal may also flash when you have not operated the turn signal. If you come close to a detected lane marking and are in danger of leaving your lane, the system warns you of vehicles it judges to be critical. The system may initiate a corrective steering input as an additional warning
 ⇒ *page 159, Lane departure warning.*

Sensor range

The radar sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations the warning signal may light up even if no vehicle is travelling in an area that could be critical in the event of a lane change. For example:

- When you are travelling in a narrow lane or when you are not travelling in the centre of the lane. In this case the system may monitor another lane and register a vehicle that is *not* in fact travelling in an adjacent lane.
- When you are driving into a bend. The side assist may react to a vehicle in your own lane or two lanes away.
- If the system detects other objects (such as roadside equipment or crash barriers, etc.).



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 134 ff.*
- The warning signal may not light up in time if other vehicles are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly.



Note

- The warning signals on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.
- The systems are not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the systems may not be switched off automatically. This function must not be used when towing a trailer.

Adjusting the side assist settings

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇒ *page 137*. The warning signals light up briefly each time the ignition is switched on to indicate that the system is activated.

Adjusting the brightness

Applies to: vehicles without virtual exterior mirrors

You can adjust the brightness of the warning signal on the exterior mirror as desired. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Driver assist > (⌚) > Side assist > Brightness.**

The brightness of the warning signal is adjusted automatically according to the ambient light level. If the brightness has been automatically adjusted to the highest or lowest setting, you may not notice a change or the setting you have made may not become evident until the ambient light level changes. Please adjust the brightness of the warning signal for the information mode so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front. When you change the brightness, the warning signal will light up briefly with the intensity set for the information mode.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the side assist and exit warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Exit warning system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with exit warning system

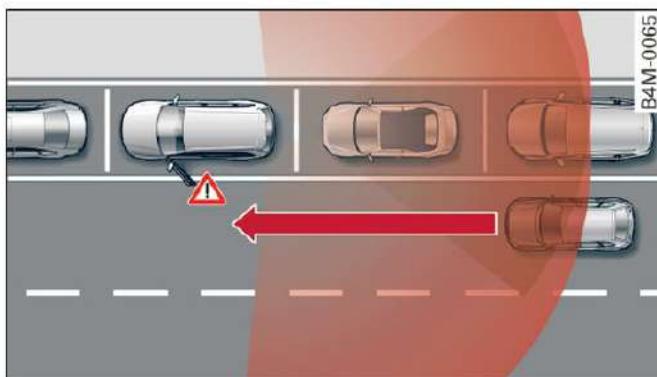


Fig. 135 Example: Detected traffic approaching from behind

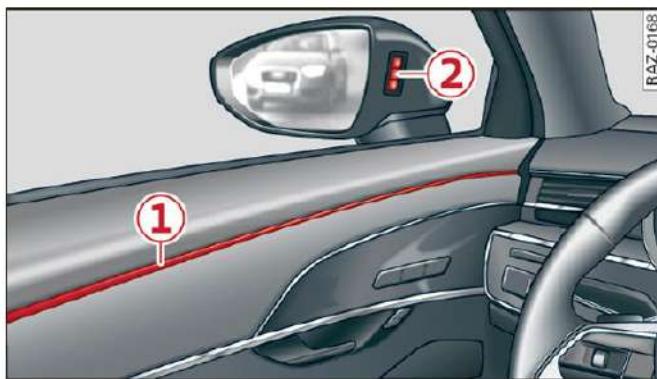


Fig. 136 Front door: Warning strip (example)

The exit warning system can recognise traffic approaching from behind (within certain system limitations) and warn you as you get out of the vehicle. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle **⇒ Fig. 135**.

How it works

If you pull one of the interior door handles when the vehicle is stationary and a road user judged by the system to be critical is approaching, the warning strip ① and the warning signal on the exterior mirror ② will light up on that side of the vehicle. At the same time, the door will be slightly delayed in opening.

The warning signals for the relevant side will flash when you open the door. The warning signals will light up if a road user judged by the system to be critical approaches when the door is already open.

For an example of the warning signal on virtual exterior mirrors, please refer to **⇒ page 166, Fig. 134**.

The driver messages for the exit warning system are identical to the messages for the side assist **⇒ page 167**.

Switching exit warning system on/off

- The system can be switched on and off in the MMI **⇒ page 137**.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras **⇒ page 134 ff.**
- Always watch the road and the area surrounding the vehicle. The exit warning system cannot replace the full concentration of the occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for their own safety and the safety of other road users when opening the doors and leaving the vehicle.
- The exit warning does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
- The warning signal may not light up in time if other vehicles are approaching very quickly.
- The exit warning does not react to stationary objects or persons.
- The exit warning does not react if the vehicle is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the vehicles in front and behind.

Note

- The exit warning system can remain available for approximately three minutes after unlocking the vehicle and opening the door or after switching off the ignition. After this period, the warning signals will light up briefly while the system is deactivated.
- The system is not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted

the system may not be switched off automatically. This function must not be used when towing a trailer.

Intersection assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with intersection assist

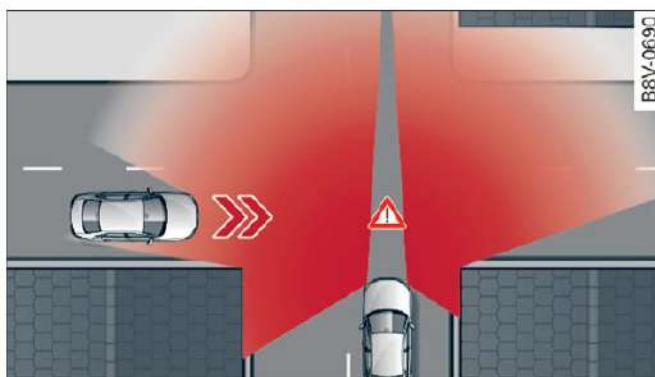


Fig. 137 Detected traffic approaching from the side (example)



Fig. 138 Instrument cluster: Intersection assist direction indicator

How it works

In complex intersection situations, the **intersection assist** can warn the driver if it detects traffic approaching from the side \Rightarrow Fig. 137.

Using the sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings, the system monitors the areas at the front and sides of the vehicle at intersections and blind exits. Under certain conditions, the system detects objects, such as cars, as they approach the vehicle \Rightarrow . The system can also warn the driver of a potential collision with approaching traffic at blind exits and intersections where it is difficult to see.

Requirements for the use of the intersection assist:

- The intersection assist must be switched on in the MMI \Rightarrow page 137.
- The vehicle must not be travelling faster than approx. 30 km/h.
- Transmission position D must be selected.

Displays, warnings and brake applications

- **Display:** Red arrows may indicate the direction from which the intersecting traffic is approaching. The symbols on the upper display only appear when the parking aid is activated. For vehicles with surround view cameras, the camera view must be set to **Front view** or **Corner view (front)**. This is only shown in the instrument cluster \Rightarrow Fig. 138 when the **Driver assist** display is called up in the on-board computer \Rightarrow page 17.
- **Warnings:** The driver message **Cross-traffic!** may warn you of critical intersecting traffic when you are driving forwards. In addition, a tone may sound.
- **Automatic brake jolt:** If the driver does not react to a warning when the vehicle is driving forwards at speeds up to approx. 10 km/h, a short sharp application of the brakes may also warn against a potential collision with an approaching object.

Driver messages

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the cross-traffic assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors \Rightarrow page 135, Fig. 111 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras \Rightarrow page 134 ff.

- The intersection assist does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
- The system cannot react if other vehicles are approaching very quickly.

Emergency assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with emergency assist

How it works

Within the limitations of the system, the emergency assist detects if the driver is inactive. It warns the driver in such cases and, if necessary, takes over operation of the vehicle to bring it automatically to a standstill in the same traffic lane.

The emergency assist is available automatically, irrespective of speed, when the adaptive cruise assist* is active. If the adaptive cruise assist* is deactivated, the system is only active if the vehicle is travelling at more than approx. 65 km/h.

Functions of the emergency assist

Within the limitations of the system, the emergency assist monitors the driver's steering, accelerating and braking activity. Depending on the hazard situation, it may provide visual, acoustic and haptic warnings at different levels:

- Speed reduction
- Driver messages
- Infotainment volume reduction
- Warning tone
- Seat belt jolt
- Brake jolt

If the driver remains inactive despite the warnings, the emergency assist will take the following actions within the limitations of the system:

- The Audi pre sense protective functions will be activated ⇒ page 162.
- The hazard warning lights will be activated¹⁾.

- The vehicle will be kept in lane and slowed to a standstill.
- As soon as the vehicle has come to a standstill, it makes preparations for the occupants to be rescued. The parking brake is applied, transmission position P is selected, the doors are unlocked and the interior lights are turned on. If you are stationary for a few seconds, an emergency call¹⁾ may be triggered.

Overriding emergency assist

You can override the emergency assist ⇒ :

- Move the steering wheel. Or:
- Press the brake pedal. Or:
- Press the accelerator firmly.

When the vehicle is stationary, the emergency assist can be cancelled by moving out of transmission position P or by releasing the parking brake ⇒ page 99.

Switching emergency assist on/off

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI system ⇒ page 137.

Driver messages

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the emergency assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ page 135, Fig. 111 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.
- The emergency assist is a system which is designed to help (in an emergency only) by

¹⁾ This function is not available on all models or export versions.

taking control of the vehicle and bringing it to a stop.

Note

- Only some of the measures may be activated depending on the hazard situation detected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.
- After the emergency assist is activated, you must wait for a short period of time before it can be activated again.
- Certain settings are automatically stored¹⁾ in the personal profile that is currently active.
- You will be alerted on the instrument cluster display when the system intervenes.

¹⁾ This function is not available on all models or export versions.

Parking and manoeuvring

Introduction

Depending on the equipment fitted on your vehicle, you may be provided with assistance by various parking aids when you are parking and manoeuvring the vehicle.

When you are parking, the **parking system plus** warns you acoustically and visually about obstacles detected in front of, behind and beside* the vehicle ⇒ page 172.

The **reversing camera** uses the MMI display to show a picture of the area behind the vehicle captured by the camera. Orientation lines in the image from the reversing camera assist you when parking and manoeuvring ⇒ page 174.

The **surround view cameras** are an extension of the reversing camera; they provide various views of the area around the vehicle to help you when parking and manoeuvring ⇒ page 174.

The **rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you about traffic approaching from either side while you are reversing or leaving a parking space ⇒ page 179.

Assisted parking

The park assist helps you to find suitable parking spaces ⇒ page 180 and to manoeuvre into and out of them; the driver must keep an eye on the area around the vehicle and monitor the parking manoeuvre.

The **park assist** helps you to manoeuvre the vehicle into and out of parking spaces. It takes over the steering when parking in open-air parking spaces. The driver must still accelerate, brake and change gears as necessary ⇒ page 182.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.

et location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.

Parking system plus

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus



Fig. 139 Centre console: Button for parking aid (example)

The parking system plus will help you to park the vehicle by providing acoustic and visual warnings about any obstacles detected.

Switching on and off

Important: The vehicle must be travelling at under 10 km/h.

- ▶ Press the or button in the centre console. When you switch the system on, you will hear a brief acknowledgement tone and the LED in the button will light up.

Switching on automatically

- ▶ The system is switched on automatically when the power unit is active and reverse gear is selected. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone.
- ▶ The parking aid is switched on automatically when the vehicle approaches an obstacle at under 10 km/h if **Automatic activation** is selected on the MMI. The acoustic signals are not emitted until the obstacle is well within range of the sensors.

Switching off automatically

The distance indicator for the parking system plus is switched off automatically when you drive forwards at over 10 km/h.

! WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras \Rightarrow page 134 ff.

! CAUTION

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

i Note

If the parking aid is switched off, it is only reactivated automatically if one of the following conditions has been met:

- The vehicle is driven faster than 10 km/h.
- The ignition is switched off and on again.
- The parking brake is applied and released again.
- Transmission position P is selected and then another position is selected.

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

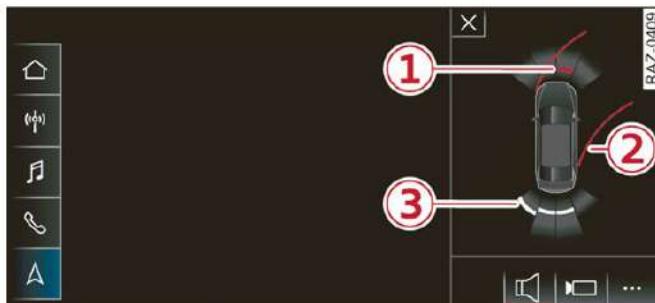


Fig. 140 Upper display: Distance indicator

When the sensors detect an obstacle, you will be alerted by acoustic signals (beeps) and a visual display.

Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. A continuous warning tone will also sound if there is an obstacle less than approx. 0.20 m from the side* of the vehicle; in this case, you

should not drive forward or reverse any further \Rightarrow !.

The acoustic warnings can be switched off by pressing \square on the upper display; they will remain switched off until the next time the parking aids are switched on. The volume can be adjusted in the settings $\square \square$ \Rightarrow page 184.

Visual warnings

The visual warnings on the upper display help you to see the critical area around the vehicle and to estimate the distance to an obstacle.

Red segments ① represent objects detected within the path of travel. The red lines ② indicate the anticipated path of travel, depending on the steering wheel angle. A white segment ③ indicates an obstacle that has been detected outside the path of travel. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle the closer the segments move towards the vehicle in the graphic. At the latest when the penultimate segment is highlighted the vehicle has reached the danger (collision) zone. Obstacles within the danger (collision) zone are shown in red, even if they are beyond the path of travel. Stop moving immediately.

Fault warnings

If a sensor or loudspeaker malfunctions, $\text{P} \Delta$ will be shown in the corresponding area on the MMI. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

If $\text{P} \Delta$ is shown on the MMI, the corresponding ultrasonic sensor is iced up or dirty. Clean the area in front of the sensors \Rightarrow page 135, Fig. 111.

If $\text{P} \Delta$ is displayed in the event of a fault, the parking aid functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors \Rightarrow page 135, Fig. 111 and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

⚠ WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

! CAUTION

- Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
- Applies to vehicles with assisted parking functions: If you use the assisted parking functions to park in short parking spaces, the parking aid warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.20 m away from the obstacle. Stop moving immediately!

i Note

- The side zone* ⇒ page 135, Fig. 110 is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, that area will be displayed in black until the area has been scanned and evaluated.
- The volume of the warning beeps will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is closer than 0.30 m). If the tone is muted and the obstacle is closer than before, the tone will sound again. If the tone is muted and the obstacle is further away than before, no tone will sound. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.

– There is no rear or side* distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically.

Reversing camera/ surround view cameras

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

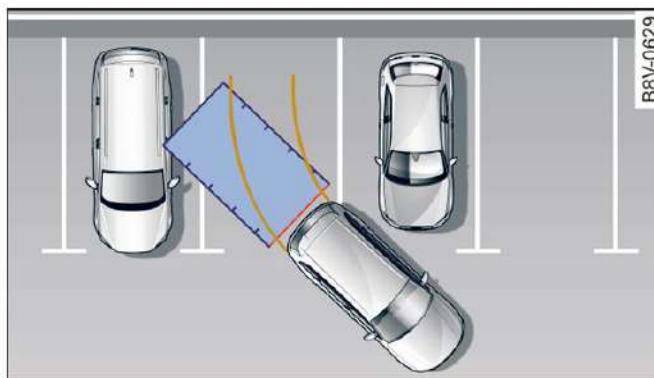


Fig. 141 Diagram: Orientation lines for parking

Depending on the equipment fitted on the vehicle, a reversing camera or multiple surround view cameras may be available.

The **reversing camera** assists you by displaying orientation lines when you are parking or manoeuvring the vehicle.

The **surround view cameras** additionally provide a wide range of views showing the area around the vehicle; these can be selected as preferred.

⚠ WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras



Fig. 142 Centre console: Button for parking aid

Switching on and off

Vehicles with reversing camera: The vehicle must be travelling at under 10 km/h.

Vehicles with surround view cameras: The vehicle must be travelling at under 30 km/h.

- ▶ Press the button in the centre console. When you switch the system on, you will hear a brief acknowledgement tone and the LED in the button will light up. Or:
- ▶ Select on the upper display when the distance indicator is shown ⇒ page 173, Fig. 140.

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically when the power unit is active and reverse gear is selected. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone.

Switching off automatically

- ▶ If the system has been activated automatically by selecting reverse gear, it switches itself off when the vehicle is driven forwards at over 10 km/h.
- ▶ If you have switched the system on manually via the button or via on the upper display, or if you have changed the view*, the system switches itself off when the vehicle is driven forwards at over approx. 30 km/h.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

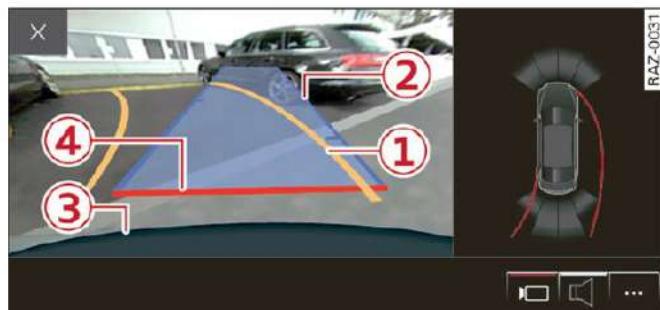


Fig. 143 Upper display: Approaching a parking space

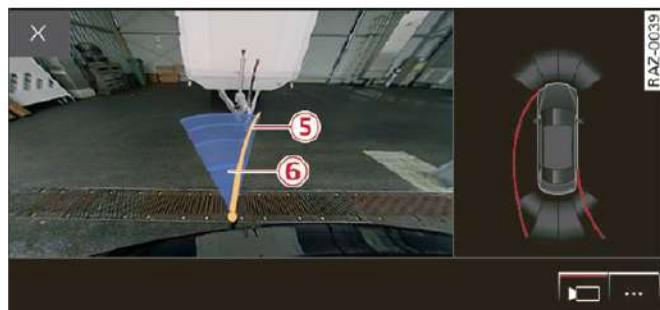


Fig. 144 Upper display: Trailer view

When using the reversing camera/surround view cameras to help you park, the acoustic and visual warnings from the parking system plus will provide you with further guidance ⇒ page 173.

On vehicles with surround view cameras, the overhead view is shown on the side of the display. You can change between the graphic display and camera picture ⇒ page 184.

Visual orientation lines

- ① The orange orientation lines represent the path of the vehicle ⇒ . Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines are pointing towards the parking space.
- ② You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the blue markings. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 1 metre. The blue marking is an extension of the vehicle outline and reaches about five metres to the rear of the vehicle.
- ③ You can see the rear bumper at the bottom of the display.
- ④ You should stop reversing, at the latest, when the red orientation line is bordering on an obstacle.

Trailer view

Applies to: vehicles with trailer view

The trailer view ⇒ Fig. 144 helps you to position the vehicle in front of a trailer.

Vehicles with surround view cameras: You must switch to the **rear view** ⑤ ⇒ page 177, Fig. 145.

- Select  on the upper display with the parking aid activated.
- Select the **trailer view** ⇒ page 184.

You can now position your vehicle in front of the trailer. The orange orientation line ⑤ ⇒ Fig. 144 indicates the anticipated path of the tow-bar. You can use the blue markings ⑥ to estimate the distance to the trailer hitch. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 30 cm. The width of the blue area represents the maximum angle to which the steering wheel can be turned.

Symbols

If  is displayed and the corresponding display area is not available, the camera will not be available on the corresponding side. The exterior mirrors may have been retracted electrically or one of the doors or the boot lid may be open.

If  appears, a system fault has occurred and the corresponding display area is not available. The camera in this area has malfunctioned.

If  is shown, the corresponding ultrasonic sensor is iced up or dirty. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ page 135, Fig. 111.

If a symbol remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 134 ff.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited ex-

tent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

- The orange orientation lines ① show the path of the rear end of the vehicle if you were to reverse using the current steering angle. Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear. Please make sure you keep a sufficient distance between the vehicle and any obstacles to make sure that the exterior mirror or edge of the vehicle do not collide with the obstacles.
- Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
- Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

Note

- Applies to vehicles with air suspension: The orientation lines and the blue area markings on the camera display are less accurate when the vehicle is raised/lowered using the air suspension.
- There is no rear or side* distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode. The image of the reversing camera will then be shown without orientation lines and blue area markings. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically.

How to use the surround view cameras

Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras

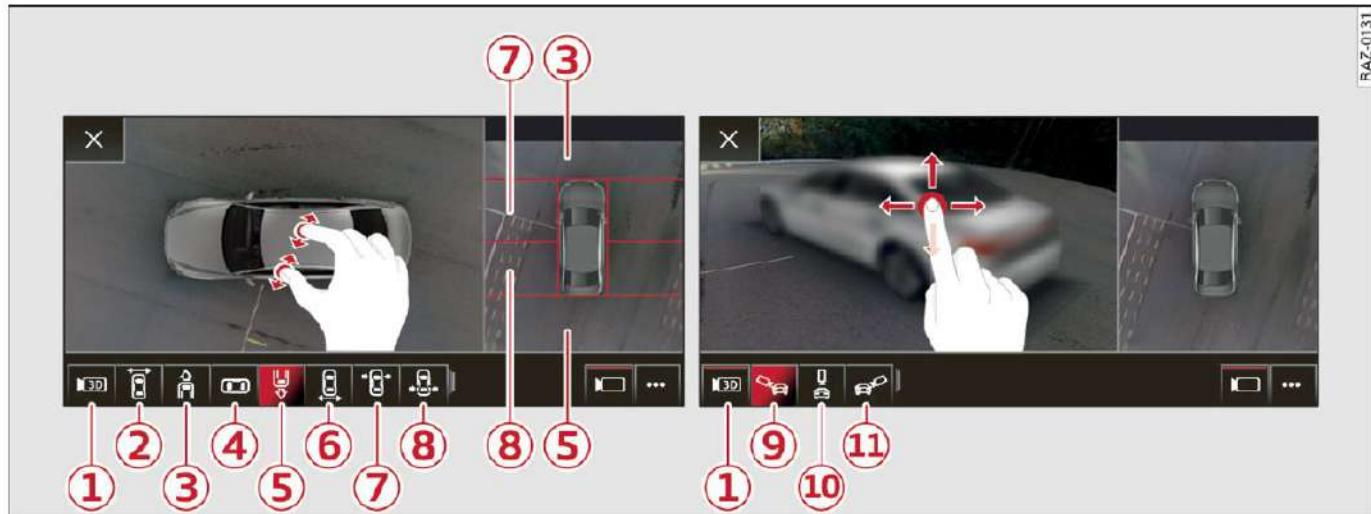


Fig. 145 Upper display: Surroundings (left-side); 3D surroundings (right-side)

On vehicles with surround view cameras, you can choose from a selection of different views.

The camera views can be controlled via the touch display. In some views, you can move or zoom in/out of the displayed area and tilt/rotate the **3D overhead view**.

Selecting views

- ▶ To display the whole selection bar, tap on the current view (2) or swipe the edge of the selection bar from left to right¹⁾.
- ▶ To select a view, tap on the desired view in the upper display (2 - 8) or tap on an area in the **side view** at the edge of the display²⁾.
- ▶ To select a **3D overhead view**, first select the **3D** symbol (1) and then select the desired **3D overhead view** (9) - (11).

Switching quickly between views

To switch quickly between views (e.g. from **Corner view (front)** to **Front view**):

- ▶ Press twice on the camera picture. Or:

- ▶ Drag the camera picture to one side with two fingers using a pull/pinch movement.

Zooming in/out of a view

Applies to: Overhead view and 3D overhead view

- ▶ To zoom in/out of an area, place two fingers on the area and move them apart or pinch them together ⇒ Fig. 145 (left-side).

Moving a view

Applies to: Overhead view and 3D overhead view

- ▶ To move a view, press on it with one finger and drag it in the desired direction.
- ▶ To centre the **3D overhead view** again, press twice on the camera picture.

Tilting/rotating a view

Applies to: 3D overhead view

- ▶ To tilt/rotate the **3D overhead view**, swipe your finger in the desired direction ⇒ Fig. 145 (right side).
- ▶ To centre the **3D overhead view** behind the vehicle again, press twice on the camera picture. ►

¹⁾ In some countries the gesture is made in the opposite direction. The order of the views may differ. However, the symbols used to identify the views are the same.

²⁾ Important: The area around the vehicle (**camera**) must be selected and visible in the **side view** at the edge of the screen ⇒ page 184.

	Symbol/designation	Description
①		Switch between 3D overhead view and Overhead view
②	Corner view (front) or display selection bar	This view makes it easier to leave narrow parking spaces and to drive out of exits and intersections where your view is restricted. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area in front of the vehicle.
③	Front view	This view helps you make the most of the space in front of the vehicle when manoeuvring.
④	Overhead view	This view helps you to manoeuvre and position the vehicle precisely. The overhead view is composed from the camera pictures. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system ⇒
⑤	Rear view	This view helps you make the most of the space behind the vehicle when manoeuvring. The image from the reversing camera is displayed.
⑥	Corner view (rear)	This view can be helpful when driving out of narrow parking spaces or out of an exit onto an obscured road. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area behind the vehicle.
⑦	Front tyres	This view helps you to monitor the steering angle and the distance from the front tyres to the kerb while you are parking the vehicle.
⑧	Rear tyres	This view helps you to monitor the distance from the rear wheels to the kerb while you are parking the vehicle.
⑨ ⑩ ⑪	3D overhead view	In these views you can monitor the area around the vehicle in 3D while parking. The view of the area around the vehicle is generated using camera images and data from the sensors. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system ⇒



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 134 ff.*
- The **overhead view** and **3D overhead view** are generated using the individual camera images. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.



Note

- Depending on the gear selected, the system will switch automatically between the suitable views (**Front view** or **Rear view**). If you change the view manually, the system will temporarily stop switching between views automatically.
- **Corner view (front)** is displayed the first time you activate the system while in a forward gear.



CAUTION

Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

Rear cross-traffic assist

Applies to: vehicles with rear cross-traffic assist

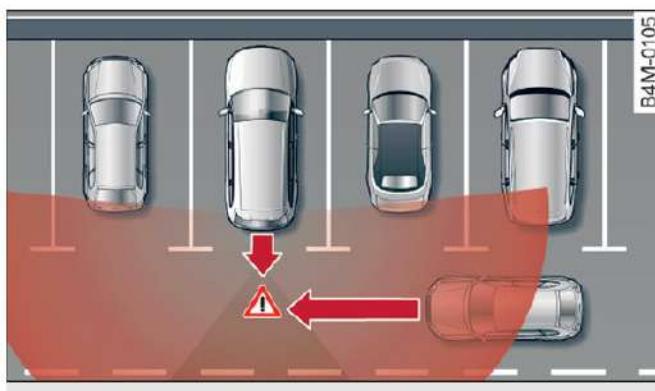


Fig. 146 Diagram: Rear cross-traffic assist



Fig. 147 Upper display: Display for rear cross-traffic assist

While you are reversing, the rear cross-traffic assist can warn against a potential collision with detected traffic approaching from either side. The system uses the radar sensors to monitor the area behind and to the side of the vehicle when you are leaving a parking space. It detects objects, such as other cars, as they approach the vehicle \Rightarrow Fig. 146 \Rightarrow Δ .

Requirements for the use of the rear cross-traffic assist:

- The rear cross-traffic assist must have been switched on via the parking aid settings in the MMI \Rightarrow page 184.
- Reverse gear must be selected and the vehicle must not be reversing faster than approx. 10 km/h.

Displays, warnings and braking

- **Display:** The arrows ① on the upper display only appear when the parking aid is activated. For vehicles with surround view cameras, the camera view must be set to **Rear view** or **Corner view (rear)**. The arrows indicate the direction from which the intersecting traffic is approaching.

– **Acoustic warnings:** A tone may sound continuously as an additional acoustic signal when you are reversing.

– **Automatic brake jolt:** If the driver does not react to a warning, a short sharp application of the brakes may also warn against a potential collision with an approaching object.

The warning tone and the automatic brake jolt only occur while you are reversing.

Driver messages

If , or is displayed in the event of a fault, the rear cross-traffic assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras \Rightarrow page 134 ff.
- The rear cross-traffic assist does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
- The system cannot react if objects are approaching very quickly.
- The rear cross-traffic assist does not react if the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside or is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the surrounding vehicles.

Note

- After an automatic brake jolt, no further brake jolt will occur for the next few seconds.
- If the rear cross-traffic assist gives an acoustic warning signal, the parking aid may

no longer be able to warn you against obstacles it has detected.

- The system is not available if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically. This function must not be used when towing a trailer.

Assisted parking

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking

If your vehicle is equipped with the park assist, the system will help you to find suitable parking spaces. The ultrasonic side sensors measure the parking spaces.

Once a parking space has been found, the systems provide assistance with parking while the driver monitors the area around the vehicle with the help of the parking aids and cameras.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras → page 134 ff.

Parking options

Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking

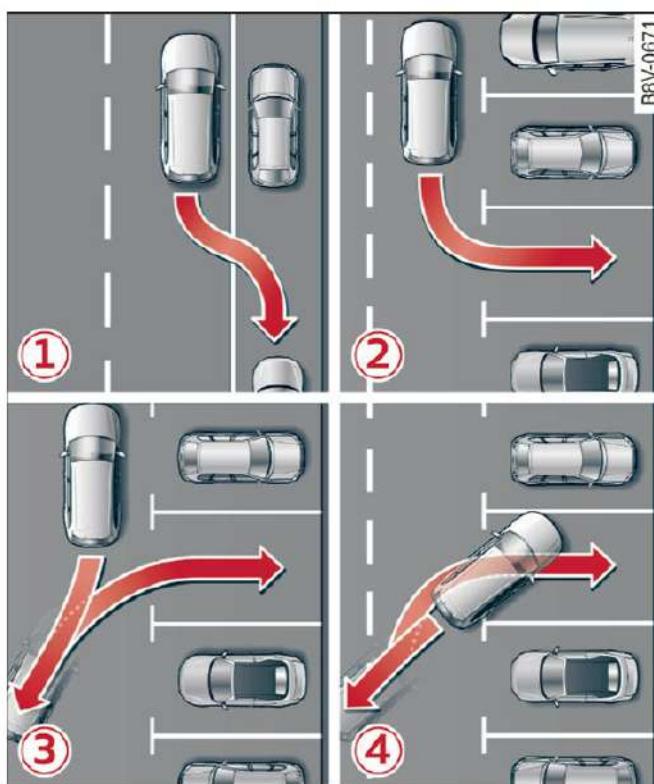


Fig. 148 Diagram: Options for parking at the roadside

Options for driving into a parking space

The following parking options may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

- ① Reversing into parallel parking spaces.
- ② Reversing into perpendicular parking spaces.
- ③ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already driven past them.
- ④ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already positioned the front of the vehicle in the space.

Options for driving out of a parking space

- ① Driving out of parallel parking spaces

Note

You can approach a perpendicular parking space driving forwards and then activate the system; however the front of the vehicle will need to be in the space ④ so that the sensors can measure the gap.

Finding a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking



Fig. 149 Upper display: Parking space search function activated

Activating the parking space search function

- ▶ To activate the parking space search function, select **P@** on the lower display, or:
- ▶ To activate the parking space search function while the parking aid is switched on, select **P@** on the upper display.

Looking for a parking space

- ▶ Drive slowly forwards past the line of parked cars. For the best parking result, you should maintain a distance of approx. 1 metre to the row of parked cars.
- ▶ The vehicle first looks for a parking space on the same side of the road. To look for a space on the other side of the road, activate the turn signal for that side or press on the corresponding side next to the vehicle on the upper display.

Selecting a parking space

When the system finds a parking space which might be long/wide enough for your vehicle, this space is displayed. The system automatically suggests an option for driving into the space **(1)**.

If there are different options for driving into the space, you can choose one of them manually. Select one of the suggested options **(1)** on the upper display.

Starting the parking manoeuvre

A **P** will appear in the intended parking space **(3)** on the upper display as soon as the vehicle reaches the correct position. The indicator on the roof in the display **(2)** shows the required direction of travel and braking point, as appropriate.

- ▶ Position the vehicle as parallel as possible to the line of parked cars or to the kerb.
- ▶ Check that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle ⇒ **!**.

Start the parking procedure using the park assist ⇒ *page 182*.

Manoeuvring area

The vehicle may swing out during the parking manoeuvre ⇒ **!**. A driver message may appear if there are obstacles within the manoeuvring area which may impede the parking procedure or constitute a risk (e.g. on the other side of the road). Try driving further forwards and closer to the row of parked cars, as appropriate.

! WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 134 ff.*
- The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

! CAUTION

- Even parking spaces which the system has identified as being suitable may not have been detected correctly. It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a parking space shown in the display is suitable for the vehicle.
- Certain conditions in and around the parking space (e.g. objects such as trees, posts or road surfaces such as loose gravel, snow or ice) can cause unexpected results when parking.

i Note

- You can activate the system after you have already driven past a parking space (as long

- as you were driving slowly enough). To do so, select P \ominus .
- The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) must not be switched off during the parking manoeuvre. If the ESC intervenes, the parking manoeuvre is interrupted.
 - You can approach a perpendicular parking space driving forwards and then activate the system; however the front of the vehicle will need to be in the space ④ \Rightarrow page 180, Fig. 148 so that the sensors can measure the gap.
 - The park assist systems cannot be used to park the vehicle if a trailer is attached or an electrical connector is plugged into the trailer socket.
 - The system is not available when certain other assist systems are switched on.
 - If there are suitable parking spaces on both sides of the road (for instance on a one-way street), you can change the direction of the turn signals or press on the corresponding side on the upper display to park on the other side of the road, even if you have already activated the park assist.
 - Assisted parking cannot be used in combination with the parking systems to park the vehicle on tight bends.

– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

- Do not use the park assist if you are transporting objects which project beyond the vehicle, if snow chains are fitted or if the parking space is on a slope.
- In certain situations, the park assist will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take over the steering wheel in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or wheel rims; alternatively, you can abort the parking manoeuvre.

Note

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations when using the park assist.

Using the park assist to park the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Important: A suitable parking space must have been found and selected \Rightarrow page 180. The vehicle must be stationary to begin with.

- ▶ After stopping for a moment, select reverse gear.
- ▶ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▶ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator carefully \Rightarrow !.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the display and the warning tones until the parking manoeuvre is complete.
- ▶ The indicators on the upper display show the required direction of travel. Drive in the direction specified by the arrows or symbols on the roof of the vehicle in the display ② \Rightarrow page 181, Fig. 149.

Park assist

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Once a parking space has been found, the park assist helps you to drive the vehicle into and out of the space. The park assist steers the vehicle while the driver operates the accelerator and brake pedal and monitors the area around the vehicle.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras \Rightarrow page 134 ff.
- The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).

The park assist automatically steers the vehicle into the parking space while the driver operates the pedals. The maximum manoeuvring speed is approx. 7 km/h.

For instructions on how to stop the park assist, refer to [⇒ page 183](#).

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras [⇒ page 134 ff](#).
- The park assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

Note

You can cancel the direction of travel given by the system before parking by shifting between transmission position D and reverse gear. The system will then calculate the further path and steering directions for the manoeuvre based on the position of the vehicle.

Using the park assist to leave a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside, the park assist can help you to drive out of the parking space.

- ▶ Switch on the power unit.
- ▶ Select  on the lower display.
- ▶ Wait until a message appears on the upper display requesting you to specify the direction in which you wish to leave the space; this is needed to start the manoeuvre.
- ▶ Activate the corresponding turn signal or press on the corresponding side next to the vehicle on the upper display.
- ▶ Take your hands off the steering wheel.

- ▶ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator carefully .
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the upper display and the acoustic warning tones until the manoeuvre is complete.
- ▶ The indicators on the upper display show the required direction of travel. Drive in the direction specified by the arrows or symbols on the roof of the vehicle in the display 
[⇒ page 181, Fig. 149](#).
- ▶ The procedure is complete when no more manoeuvring is necessary and the specified steering angle is sufficient to drive out of the space. Take over the steering .

The park assist automatically steers the vehicle out of the parking space while the driver operates the pedals. The maximum manoeuvring speed is 5 km/h.

For instructions on how to stop the park assist, refer to [⇒ page 183](#).

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras [⇒ page 134 ff](#).
- The park assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

CAUTION

Take over the steering as soon as you are requested to do so after the system has completed the last manoeuvre, so that the steering wheel remains at the specified angle and is not turned back to the central position.

Stopping the park assist

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

The park assist stops automatically under the following circumstances:

- If you switch off the system;
- If you move the steering wheel by hand;
- If you drive too fast;
- If the time limit has been exceeded;
- If an obstacle is detected;
- If the ESC intervenes.

Take full control of the vehicle and complete the parking manoeuvre manually. Or:

- In some situations you can resume the parking manoeuvre. Select **P⊕**.
- To continue unparking with the park assist, switch the power unit off/on. Select **P⊕**.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 134 ff.*

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If **P⊕ OFF** or **P⊖ OFF** is displayed in the event of a fault, the park assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 135, Fig. 111* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Settings for parking aids

The parking aids can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Parking aid**.
- Applies to MMI: Select **⋮** on the upper display with the parking system activated.

Available settings:

Automatic activation

Trailer view - To display the trailer view. For vehicles with surround view cameras, the camera view must be set to **Rear view**.

View - To switch between the graphic display (**graphic**) and the area around the vehicle (**camera**) in the side view at the edge of the display.

Clean reversing camera - To clean the reversing camera.

Front volume - Volume for the front and side* zones.

Rear volume - Volume for the rear zone.

Entertainment fader - The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is switched on.

Rear cross-traffic assist



Note

- Certain settings are automatically stored in the personal profile that is currently active.
- You will hear a short tone* each time you adjust the volume.

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can make and receive calls in your vehicle via the MMI. You have different options for doing so; this depends on your vehicle's equipment and the features of your mobile phone.

Handsfree operation

After connecting your mobile phone to the MMI system via Bluetooth, you can use the handsfree system. Your phone calls will be made via the antenna of your mobile phone.

Car phone function¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with car telephone kit

As part of Audi connect infotainment*, a car phone function is available via a separate mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* or a SAP²⁾-enabled mobile phone.

The car phone function and the Audi phone box* use the vehicle's external aerial to make calls. The use of the external aerial reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality ⇒ page 189.



WARNING

- According to health organisations, mobile phones may interfere with the function of pacemakers. A minimum distance of 20 cm between the mobile phone aerial and the pacemaker should therefore be maintained.
- Do not carry a mobile phone in your breast pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
- If you suspect interference, switch the mobile phone off immediately.
- The speech dialogue system* ⇒ page 27 must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed

telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!

- Switch off your mobile phones in all areas where there may be a risk of explosion. Remember that these areas may not always be adequately marked. Such places are filling stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles and other places where fumes, chemicals (e.g. from leaking propane or fuel vapours in vehicles or buildings) or large quantities of dust particles (e.g. from flour, wood or metal) could accumulate in the air. This warning also applies to all other places where you would normally switch off the vehicle.
- Today's driving conditions require the full attention of drivers. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇒ page 20, Notes on traffic safety.



CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ page 202.



Note

- The maximum range of the Bluetooth connection is limited to the interior of the vehicle. The connection can be susceptible to interference from other electronic devices.
- For information regarding which Bluetooth connections and functions your mobile phone supports, contact your mobile network service provider or consult the mobile device database at www.audi.com/bluetooth.
- We recommend using the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot* ⇒ page 205 when the car phone function* is in use so that your mobile phone's apps retain access to the Internet.
- When the car phone function* is active, Audi connect infotainment* is available using

¹⁾ Not available in all countries. Only on vehicles with Audi connect infotainment* and Audi phone box*

²⁾ SIM Access Profile

your own SIM card or the embedded SIM card¹⁾²⁾ ⇒ *page 203*.

Setting up

Connecting a mobile phone to the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important

The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile phone during the connection procedure.

The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇒ *page 265* and the mobile phone must be activated.

The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.

The MMI must not be connected to more than one mobile phone.

Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth

- On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE**.
- Follow the instructions given by the system. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
- Press on the desired mobile phone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- To update the list, press .
- A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.
- Confirm the PIN on your mobile phone, or:
- Enter the PIN to establish a connection on your mobile phone. You have about 30 seconds to enter the PIN.
- You may need to enter the PIN for your SIM card in the MMI³⁾.
- Please note any additional system queries on your mobile phone or the MMI, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may also

need to confirm the download of your contacts and allow access to your messages separately.

Connecting a mobile phone via USB

- On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE**.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, you will be shown information on the profiles used to establish the connection. You can also change the profiles afterwards ⇒ *page 265*.

In addition, the contacts on the mobile phone are automatically loaded into the MMI. This may take several minutes, depending on how many contacts are stored on the mobile phone.

The telephone functions are also available in the instrument cluster ⇒ *page 200*.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

- You have successfully connected your mobile phone to the MMI via the Bluetooth SIM Access Profile. To use the Audi connect infotainment services, you have the option of using the embedded SIM card¹⁾²⁾ or your own SIM card.
- Confirm the system query with either **Yes** or **No**. For more information on Audi connect infotainment, please refer to ⇒ *page 202*.

No: All data connections for all Audi connect infotainment services will be established by a mobile network provider via the embedded SIM card¹⁾²⁾ ⇒ *page 203*. Your mobile phone will be connected via **Handsfree** only, and you will not be able to use the car phone function*.

Yes: All data connections for all Audi connect infotainment services will use your own SIM card. All connections via the embedded SIM card¹⁾ will be disconnected, and you will be able to use the car phone function* and Audi connect infotainment services.

¹⁾ SIM card installed in vehicle at factory.

²⁾ Not available in all countries.

³⁾ Not available in all countries. Applies to mobile phones with Bluetooth SIM Access Profile on vehicles with Audi connect infotainment* and Audi phone box*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information
⇒ page 202.

Note

- You can adjust further settings for connected mobile phones in the **Connected devices** menu ⇒ page 264.
- You can also search for the MMI system via the Bluetooth device search function on your mobile phone.
- Bluetooth devices only have to be bonded once. Any devices that have already been bonded to the MMI system are connected automatically when the Bluetooth function is switched on, the devices are within range of the car and the ignition is on. The mobile phone last connected is given priority.
- You will need to authorise the MMI connection on your mobile phone to enable automatic connection.
- Please note any system queries on your mobile phone or the MMI, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may also need to confirm the download of your contacts and allow access to your messages separately.
- You receive the SIM PIN and the PUK (personal unblocking key) from your mobile network service provider together with the SIM card. If you enter the SIM PIN code incorrectly three times¹⁾ in a row, the SIM card will be blocked. A PUK must be entered in order to reactivate the SIM card.
- The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car. Depending on the mobile phone, telephone calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone so that you can continue talking.

– For further information regarding your mobile phone, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone. For information on using a phone in your car, please go online (e.g. www.audi.com/bluetooth) or ask an Audi dealer.

Operating two phones via the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with telephone and Audi phone box

You can connect two mobile phones to the MMI system (e.g. your business and personal mobiles). You can make and receive calls in the vehicle using both mobile phones.

Connecting a second mobile phone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI, or your own mini SIM card²⁾ must be inserted in the SIM card reader* to make phone calls.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > . Follow the instructions given by the system, or:
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Telephone 1/ Telephone 2** > **New connection**.

Refer to ⇒ page 186, *Connecting a mobile phone to the MMI*.

Using a mini SIM card in the SIM card reader*

Refer to ⇒ page 188, *Making and receiving calls using your own mini SIM card*.

Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** >  > **Switch phones**: The device name of the mobile phone currently active will be displayed.

¹⁾ The number of possible attempts depends on the SIM card.

²⁾ Not available in all countries. On vehicles with Audi connect infotainment* and Audi phone box*

Note

- If you have connected two mobile phones to the MMI via Bluetooth, telephone 2 will be disconnected as soon as you insert your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* to make and receive calls.
- The device name of the mobile phone currently active (e.g. MyPhone) is displayed in the **TELEPHONE** menu.
- If telephone 1 does not connect to the MMI automatically when the ignition is switched on, you can select  in the **TELEPHONE** menu to use a previously connected telephone 2.
- You can send and receive messages on both telephone 1 and telephone 2 **⇒ page 195**.
- The MMI only accesses one SIM card on multi-SIM mobile phones. You can switch between SIM cards on the mobile phone itself.

Making and receiving calls using your own mini SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and Audi phone box

The SIM card reader is located in the storage compartment in the centre console.

With this telephone option¹⁾, you can be reached on the telephone number of your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader. Depending on the type of mini SIM card, this may be the same number as for your current mobile phone contract (twin/Multi SIM card) or another number from a different mobile phone contract.

Using your own mini SIM card

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

- The missing corner of the mini SIM card should be at the front left. Slide the mini SIM card into the slot in the SIM card reader until you feel it engage.
- If requested, enter the PIN code for your mini SIM card in the MMI.

- Press **OK**.
- If you would like the MMI to connect automatically in the future, select **Yes**.
- Select one of the connection types **Car phone (SIM)** or **Pers. mobile phone (BT)**.

Car phone (SIM): The vehicle's external aerial is used. Your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader is used for phone calls and for Audi connect infotainment.

Personal mobile phone (Bluetooth): The external car aerial is only used in conjunction with the Audi phone box. Your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader is only used for Audi connect infotainment.

You can set whether you would also like the system to establish a data connection for Audi connect infotainment **⇒ page 204**. Please observe the notes on using Audi connect infotainment **⇒ page 203**.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, the signal strength and type of connection will appear in the status line of the MMI **(2)** **⇒ page 21, Fig. 15**.

Switching between the mini SIM card and your mobile phone

Important: A mini SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** **>**  **> Switch phones: Display SIM card**. The device name of the mobile phone currently active will be displayed.

Removing a mini SIM card

- Briefly press the mini SIM card.

CAUTION

- To avoid damaging the SIM card reader, only use mini SIM cards (25 mm x 15 mm). Please contact your mobile network service provider for more information on mini SIM cards.

¹⁾ Not available in all countries.

- Should you have inserted a different SIM card size in the SIM card reader, do not under any circumstances attempt to remove it yourself as this may damage the SIM card reader. Please contact a qualified workshop.
- If you use SIM card adapters, the vibrations caused by the movement of the vehicle may cause the SIM card to become detached from the adapter - risk of damage to the SIM card reader.

Note

If your own mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader and is used for telephone calls, you can access the contacts of another mobile phone \Rightarrow page 264.

Disconnecting a mobile phone

The device will be disconnected from the MMI and removed from the list of paired devices.

- Use the connection manager to disconnect a connected device \Rightarrow page 265.

Using the Audi phone box

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box



Fig. 150 Storage compartment in centre console: Audi phone box with holder and connections (example)

You can use the Audi phone box to charge your mobile phone's battery wirelessly*. You can make

and receive calls using the vehicle's external aerial. Using the external aerial reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality.

- **Audi phone box with holder:** Open the Audi phone box's holder ①. Place the mobile phone between the Audi phone box and the holder so that the back of the mobile phone is facing the Qi symbol ②.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to use the following functions after doing this:

- **Establishing a connection to the vehicle's external aerial¹⁾**
- **Charging a mobile phone wirelessly***: Important: The ignition must be switched on, the charging function must be activated on the MMI and you must have a Qi compatible²⁾ mobile phone.

Alternatively, you can **charge your mobile phone via a USB adapter**: Connect your mobile phone to the Audi music interface ③ \Rightarrow page 245 using a USB adapter. You can charge your mobile phone using special USB adapters \Rightarrow page 245.

Reminder signal

When the reminder signal function is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile phone is still in the Audi phone box when you are leaving the vehicle.

Important:

- There must be a Qi compatible²⁾ mobile phone in the Audi phone box, or:
- Your mobile phone must be connected to the Audi music interface via a USB adapter with the Audi smartphone interface active, or:
- Your iPhone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth \Rightarrow page 186 and be being charged with a USB adapter via the Audi music interface.

¹⁾ Not available in all markets. Additional car phone function only with Audi connect infotainment*.

²⁾ The Qi standard enables you to charge your mobile phone wirelessly.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > Reminder signal**.

The following settings are available:

- **Sound**
- **Spoken***: This setting is activated at the factory.
- **Off**
- **Show pop-up notifications***: If this function is switched on, notifications on the charging status of your mobile phone will be displayed. You will also be reminded not to forget your mobile phone when you leave the vehicle.
- **Wireless charging***: If this function is switched on, you can charge your Qi compatible mobile phone wirelessly in the Audi phone box.



WARNING

- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres - risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- The mobile phone may become hot while charging wirelessly. Consider the temperature of your mobile phone when removing it. Take the mobile phone out of the Audi phone box carefully.
- An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Always keep a minimum of 6 cm away from the charging plate of the Audi phone box. The limits for long-term exposure according to ICNIRP 1998 are kept to at this distance. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) or passive implants (e.g. artificial joints) are therefore very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a specialist doctor if you have any questions. Alternatively, you can switch the Audi phone box's wireless charging function in the front* on and off separately. You will still be able to charge your mobile phone using a cable.



Note

- The Audi phone box is not available in all countries. Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with more detailed information.
- Only one mobile phone can be charged wirelessly at a time in the Audi phone box.
- An enhanced transmission quality cannot be guaranteed if more than one mobile phone is placed inside.
- To avoid malfunctions, ensure that the mobile phone is correctly placed inside the Audi phone box.
- Make sure that there are no objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile phone.
- If the mobile phone is placed in the Audi phone box in a bag or a protective case, this may interfere with the connection to the external aerial.
- Any metal objects in the Audi phone box will prevent the mobile phone from charging wirelessly or being used to make calls via the external aerial.
- The maximum charging capacity is 5 W.
- The charging time and the temperature vary depending on the mobile phone being used.
- USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
- Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has tested these products for suitability, reliability and safety.

Using the telephone

Accessing telephone functions

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 151 MMI: Selection menu

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇒ page 186, or your own mini SIM ►

card must be inserted in the SIM card reader*
⇒ *page 188*.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select TELEPHONE.

The following telephone functions are available

⇒ *Fig. 151*:

- ① Search
- ② Call list ⇒ *page 191*
- ③ Favourites ⇒ *page 191*
- ④ Contacts ⇒ *page 192*
- ⑤ Mailbox ⇒ *page 193*
- ⑥ Dial number ⇒ *page 193*
- ⑦ Switching between two mobile phones
⇒ *page 198*

Your mobile phone's device name is displayed in the TELEPHONE menu, e.g. MyPhone.

Accessing the call list

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 152 MMI: Dialling a telephone number from the call list

Important: The call list must contain a telephone number.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select TELEPHONE > Call list.

Possible symbols in the call list ⇒ *Fig. 152*:

- ① Missed calls
- ② Numbers dialled
- ③ Received calls
- ④ Edit call list
- ⑤ Display business card ⇒ *page 192*
- ⑥ Number of interactions with a contact

If there has been more than one interaction with a contact, the most recent action is displayed in the form of an arrow ①, ② or ③.

Press on a contact or phone number from the list until the Options menu appears. Depending on your mobile phone, the following options may be available:

- **Store as a shortcut:** Refer to ⇒ *page 23, Shortcuts*.
- **Edit phone number:** To edit a telephone number before making a call. Press Dial to start the call.
- **Show history:** Important: You must have already had more than one interaction with a contact. All interactions with a contact/number will be displayed.
- **Store as favourite:** Refer to ⇒ *page 191*.
- **Send text message:** Refer to ⇒ *page 195*.
- **Send e-mail:** Refer to ⇒ *page 196*.

Note

The call list can only be edited on the MMI.

Managing favourites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can store your preferred number for a contact in the favourites line for quick access.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select TELEPHONE > Favourites.

Storing an existing telephone number as a favourite

- Press Call list.
- Press on a contact from the list until the Options menu appears.
- Press Store as favourite. The favourite has been stored will appear briefly.

Deleting stored favourites

- Select: Favourites > ↘ one or more favourites or Select all > Delete.
- Press Done.

Note

- The names of the favourites in the MMI correspond to the contacts' names.
- Favourites stored on the mobile phone are not displayed on the MMI.

- If you are using more than one mobile phone, you can add favourites to the MMI separately for each phone.

Calling up contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 153 MMI: Business card (example)

You can connect several different mobile phones to the MMI system, or use different mini SIM cards in the SIM card reader*, allowing you to manage up to four private directories.

After a mobile phone has been connected successfully, the contacts are automatically imported from the mobile phone into the MMI.

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇒ page 186. You must have stored a contact on your mobile phone.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE > Contacts**.

The contacts are displayed in alphabetical order; they can be sorted by first name/surname ⇒ page 199, **Sort order**.

You can open the contacts via both the **TELEPHONE** and **NAVIGATION** menus.

Displaying business card

To open the business card, press on a contact in the directory. The business card shows you a contact's details.

The following options are available when you press on a contact in the business card:

- ① Store as favourite ⇒ page 191, *Managing favourites*
- ② Options

- ③ Call
- ④ Send text message ⇒ *page 195*
- ⑤ Start navigation
- ⑥ Send e-mail ⇒ *page 196*

Business card options

Press ②.

- **Send contact***: You can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇒ *page 195*.
- **Add destination**: You can add a business address or a private address. Also refer to ⇒ *page 226, Contacts as a navigation destination*.
- **Read name¹⁾**: The MMI system automatically creates a name tag for each contact, which you can have the system read to you ⇒ *page 27*.
- **Store as a shortcut**: Refer to ⇒ *page 23, Shortcuts*.

Contact options

Press on a contact from the list until the **Options** menu appears.

- **Send contact**: You can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇒ *page 195*.
- **Send text message**: Refer to ⇒ *page 195*.
- **Send e-mail**: Refer to ⇒ *page 196*.
- **Store as favourite**: Refer to ⇒ *page 191*.
- **Store as a shortcut**: Refer to ⇒ *page 23, Shortcuts*.

Deleting contacts

- **Delete all contacts**: Select: **Contacts > ↗ > Delete all**. All contacts (on the MMI system only) will be deleted.
- **Delete imported contacts**: Important: You must have imported a contact. Select: **Contacts > ↗ > one or more contacts** or **Select all > Del. imported contacts > Done**. The imported contacts will be deleted.

i Note

- Please pay attention to any synchronisation requests on your mobile phone when downloading contacts. You must confirm any synchronisation queries from contacts before

¹⁾ Not available in all languages.

the contacts can be loaded from your mobile phone onto the MMI.

- Which contacts are displayed on the MMI depends on the mobile phone you are using. For more information on compatibility-tested mobile phones, please go online (e.g. www.audi.com/bluetooth) or contact an Audi dealer.
- Please note that only contacts from the mobile phone currently in use are displayed.
- In certain cases, contacts from a mobile phone may not be transmitted in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with certain initial letters may not be displayed on the MMI system.
- If your own mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader* \Rightarrow page 188, the SIM card entries and the contacts in the local MMI memory are displayed.
- If your own mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader* and is used for telephone calls, you can access the contacts of another mobile phone \Rightarrow page 264.
- When the MMI system has downloaded contacts from the mobile phone, the contacts from the SIM card will no longer be shown on the MMI.
- The contacts in the local MMI memory are visible at all times and are therefore not protected against access by other users.
- When you switch the ignition on again after switching it off and leaving the car, the MMI system will load the mobile phone's directory if the phone is within range and Bluetooth is activated both on the phone and on the MMI system. If this is not the case, the MMI system will show the contacts from the mini SIM card in the SIM card reader*.
- You can only delete the contacts in the local MMI memory.

Listening to voicemail messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE > Mailbox**.

Important: No mailbox number must have been stored yet.

- **To enter the mailbox number:** Enter the number desired. Press **OK**.

Important: A mailbox number must already have been stored.

- **To dial the mailbox number:** Press **Mailbox**. The call will be started immediately.

Note

- This service must be set up and activated by your mobile network service provider before you can use it. For more information, contact your service provider.
- The mailbox number depends on your service provider.

Dialling a number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you may be able to dial a number in the following ways:

- Entering text via the MMI \Rightarrow page 24.
- Using the voice control function \Rightarrow page 27.

Dialling the emergency number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI system via Bluetooth.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE > Dial number > the emergency number for the specific country (e.g. 112) > Dial**.

WARNING

- Since your telephone operates via radio waves, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely solely on your telephone when a vital communication (e.g. medical emergency) is involved.
- Always follow the directions of the emergency operators when making an emergency call and do not end the call before you are requested to do so.

Note

Emergency numbers are not the same for all countries. Please make sure that you know the emergency number for the country you are in.

During a telephone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The following options may be available during a call depending on the mobile phone being used and the type of connection:

- ▶ **End call:** To hang up.
- ▶ **Mute:** The caller will no longer be able to hear you; you will still be able to hear the caller. Press **Unmute** to switch the microphone back on.
- ▶ **Hold/Resume:** To put a call on hold and retrieve it from the hold queue.
- ▶ **To send a tone sequence:** Press **Numbers**. You can enter DTMF tones ("touch-tones"), which are then sent to the person you are speaking to.
- ▶ **To answer an incoming call:** If you are already talking on the phone when someone else calls, select **Replace** to place the current call on hold and to answer the incoming call.
- ▶ **To decline an incoming call:** If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be declined.
- ▶ **To mute the incoming call:** Press **Mute**.
- ▶ **Further call options:** Press **More**.

Important: There must be two callers on the line.

- ▶ **Conference***: Up to five callers and one caller on hold can take part in a conference (depending on the mobile network service provider).
- ▶ **Switch:** You can switch between two phone calls (one of them will be on hold at any given time). Press on the corresponding call. Select **End call** to end whichever call is active. The call on hold will remain in the hold queue and can be retrieved by selecting **Resume**.
- ▶ **To answer an incoming call:** If you are already talking on the phone when someone else calls and you already have another call on hold, you can press **Replace** to replace the current call with the incoming call.

Press **More**.

- **To transfer a call to your mobile phone***: Press **Transfer call to mobile phone** to transfer your current call from the MMI to your mobile phone or Bluetooth headset*.
- **Retrieve call***: Important: A call must be in progress. Press **Retrieve call** to transfer the current call back to the MMI from your mobile phone. ►

Answering and ending telephone calls

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus

- ▶ To answer/end a call, press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel. For usage instructions, refer to ⇒ page 15.

You can choose from the following options on the MMI when you have an incoming call:

- **To answer a call:** Press **Answer**.
- **To decline a call:** Press **Ignore**.
- **To decline a call via text message*:** The function must have been activated in the settings. Press **Ignore with text message**.
- **To mute the ring tone:** Press **Mute**.

Caller information: Depending on whether the caller is stored as a contact and whether the telephone number is transmitted with the call, the caller's name, his/her telephone number or **Unknown** will appear on the MMI. A photo of the caller may also be shown if one has been assigned to the contact in your mobile phone and transmitted to the MMI. You can find out if your mobile phone supports this function by asking your mobile network provider, consulting your mobile phone's operating manual or visiting www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Note

- Media playback or the radio is muted automatically during a call.
- A symbol is displayed in the status line of the MMI if there are any missed calls

② ⇒ page 21, Fig. 15.

- **Add call:** Select **Call list/Contacts/Favourites** > *an entry from the list* or press on **Dial number** and enter a phone number. The active call will then be placed on hold.
- **Remove participant(s)*:** Important: You must have started the conference. If a conference is in progress, you can remove participants individually. Press on the contact you wish to remove.
- **Microphone input level:** You can adjust the microphone input level during a call by moving the slider.

Connected devices: Refer to [⇒ page 264](#).

Telephone settings: Refer to [⇒ page 198](#).

i Note

- If you are using the **Handsfree** profile, the option *Call waiting* must be activated on your mobile phone for you to be alerted to incoming calls during a conversation. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone.
- Only one telephone call can be active at a time.
- The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car. Depending on the mobile phone, telephone calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone so that you can continue talking.
- The display for the incoming call on the MMI may remain visible for several seconds after the call is answered or ignored; this depends on the type of mobile phone you are using.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: vehicles with car phone function or mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

Depending on your mobile phone and your mobile phone contract, you may be able to send and receive text messages via the MMI.

Important: Your own mini SIM card with a messaging option must be inserted in the SIM card reader* or your mobile phone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP) [⇒ page 186](#).

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MESSAGES** > () > **Text message (SIM card)*/Text message (telephone 1)/Text message (telephone 2)***.

Mailboxes

- **New text message:** Press on a template from the list or dictate a text message. Press **Add** and select one or more recipients from your contacts. To remove a recipient again, press **Delete**. Press **Send**.
- **Inbox:** All the text messages you have received are displayed.
- **Sent:** All the text messages you have sent are displayed.
- **Outbox:** All the text messages to be sent are displayed.
- **Drafts***: Text messages which have been stored on the mobile phone but not yet sent are displayed on the MMI.
- **Deleted*:** Deleted text messages are displayed.
- **User-defined*:** User-defined folders can be taken from your mobile phone.

Message options

The following options may be available when you press on a text message:

- **Read*:** To have the text message read out loud¹⁾.
- **Reply:** You can reply to a text message you have selected in the **Inbox**.

¹⁾ Not available in all languages.

- To switch from one message to the previous/next one, press < or >.
- **More:** Further options

The following options are available when you press **More**:

- **Call:** Important: A number must be stored. You can call the contact.
- **Forward:** You can add text to a selected text message and forward it to further recipients.
- **Navigate to:** Important: A navigation address must be stored for the contact in the directory. You can start route guidance.
- **Extract numbers:** You can extract a number from a text message. Important: The text message must contain a number.
- **Resend:** You can re-send a text message you have selected. Important: The text message must be in the **Outbox**.

Press on an entry in the **Inbox** and hold it until the **Options** menu appears.

- **Reply:** You can reply to a text message you have selected in the **Inbox**.
- **Forward:** You can add text to a selected text message and forward it to further recipients.

Settings

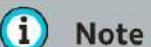
Press ☰.

- **Automatically forward text messages to mobile phone^{*1)}:** If this function is switched on, text messages are also stored automatically on your mobile phone.
- **Notification for new text messages:** If this function is switched on, a notification will be displayed when a new text message is received. An envelope symbol ☐ is displayed in the status bar of the MMI if there are any new text messages.
- **Text message centre***: The number of your mobile network service provider's text message centre is displayed. If no number has been stored, you can enter the number of the text message centre. For more information, contact your service provider.

- **Delete text messages from SIM card***: A crossed-out envelope symbol is displayed in the status bar of the MMI if the SIM card memory is full. You can still send text messages but will not be able to receive any new ones. Select **All sent messages** to delete all sent text messages from the SIM card. Select **All read messages** to delete all read text messages from the SIM card.

Delete text messages

Select: *a mailbox > ☐ > one or more text messages > Delete > Done*.



Note

- Depending on your SIM card (e.g. if you are using a Multi SIM card), you may need to activate the function for sending and receiving text messages. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone.
- For more information on compatibility-tested mobile phones, please go online (e.g. www.audi.com/bluetooth) or contact an Audi dealer.
- In order to send text messages via the MMI, you will require a mobile phone with the Message Access Profile which also supports sending messages.
- Messages deleted using the MMI are also automatically deleted on the mobile phone.
- Depending on your mobile phone, it is possible that only newly received messages are shown.

E-mail

Applies to: MMI system and mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

Depending on your mobile phone, you may be able to send and receive e-mails via the MMI.

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP) must be connected to ►

¹⁾ This function is not supported by all mobile phones.

the MMI \Rightarrow page 186. Please refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone to find out whether it supports this function.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MESSAGES** > (✉) > **E-mail (telephone 1)/E-mail (telephone 2)***.

Mailboxes

- **New e-mail:** Press on a template from the list. Press **Add** and select one or more recipients from your contacts. To remove one or all recipients, press **Delete**. Press **Send**.
- **Inbox:** All the e-mails you have received are displayed. To update the list, press \textcircled{Q} .
- **Sent:** All the e-mails you have sent are displayed.
- **Outbox:** All the e-mails to be sent are displayed.
- **Drafts:** E-mails which have been stored but not yet sent are displayed.
- **Deleted:** Deleted e-mails are displayed.
- **User-defined***: User-defined folders can be taken from your mobile phone.

Message options

The following options may be available when you press on an e-mail:

- **Read*:** To have the e-mail read out loud¹⁾.
- **Reply:** You can reply to an e-mail you have selected in the **Inbox**.
- To switch from one message to the previous/next one, press < or >.
- **More:** Further options

Depending on your mobile phone and the current mailbox, the following options may be shown when you press **More**:

- **Call:** Important: A number must be stored. You can call the contact.
- **Forward:** You can add text to a selected e-mail and forward it to further recipients.
- **Extract e-mail add.:** You can extract the e-mail address from an e-mail.
- **Navigate to:** Important: A navigation address must be stored for the contact in the directory. You can start route guidance.

- **Extract numbers:** You can extract a number from an e-mail. Important: The e-mail must contain a number.
- **Show all recipients*:** You can have the recipients of the e-mail displayed.
- **Show all attachments*:** You can have a list of attachments in an e-mail displayed.
- **Resend:** The selected e-mail can be sent again in the **Outbox** and **Sent** mailboxes.

Press on an entry in the **Inbox** and hold it until the **Options** menu appears.

- **Reply:** You can reply to an e-mail you have selected.
- **Reply to all:** You can reply to all the recipients of an e-mail you have selected.
- **Forward:** You can forward an e-mail you have selected to further recipients.

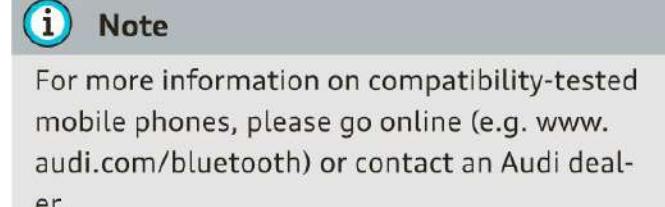
Settings

Press $\textcircled{\text{O}}$.

- **Notification for new e-mails:** If this function is switched on, a notification will be displayed when a new e-mail is received. An envelope symbol ✉ is displayed in the status bar of the MMI if there are any new e-mails.

Deleting e-mails

Select: *a mailbox* > (✉) > *one or more e-mails* > **Delete** > **(Done)**.



¹⁾ Not available in all languages.

Settings

Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > .

Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

Switch phones: The device name of the mobile phone currently active will be displayed. Press the button to switch the phone.

Ignore with text message*

If this function is switched on, you can decline an incoming call by sending a text message.

Call options*

The following options may be available to you depending on the mobile phone:

- **Call forward:** Forwarding of incoming calls to your mailbox or to another phone number can be switched on/off. You can check via **Status** whether this function is activated or deactivated.
- **Call waiting:** If this option is activated, you will be informed of incoming calls when you are on the phone. You can check via **Status** whether this function is activated or deactivated.
- **Transmit caller ID:** Sending your telephone number in outgoing calls can be switched on/off. Select **Netw. dep.** to use the setting agreed in your mobile network service contract. The settings apply only to the **TELEPHONE** menu in the MMI system. When the Bluetooth connection has been terminated, the settings of your mobile phone apply. You can check which setting is active via **Status**.

Ring tone and volume settings

- **Ring tone and message volume:** You can adjust the volume of the selected ring tone and of the sound played when a message is received by moving the slider.
- **Ring tone***: Possible ring tones are played when you select the function **Ring tone**. Press on an entry from the list.

- **Microphone input level:** You can adjust the microphone input level by moving the slider.

Switch on car phone/data module

Applies to: vehicles with car phone/data module

You can use the car phone/data module if this function is switched on.

The car phone will be turned on automatically when the ignition is switched on, as long as it was **not** switched off separately the last time it was used.

Edit mailbox number

You can change the number of your mailbox.

Support VoLTE

Voice over LTE* is supported if this function is switched on.

Network settings

- **Registration on mobile network:** To dial into your service provider's mobile network automatically or manually.
- **Manual network selection:** Important: The data module must be switched on and **Registration on mobile network** must be set to **manual**. Select a network manually from the list of networks available at your current location.

Serial number (IMEI)

Applies to: vehicles with car telephone kit

The serial number (IMEI) of your car phone will be displayed.



Note

- You can bond several mobile phones to the MMI system; however only two* connections are active at a time.
- All bonded Bluetooth devices can be deleted by resetting the **Bluetooth** function to the factory settings ⇒ *page 264*.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Contacts** > .

Switching between two mobile phones

Important: telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected.

Switch phones: The device name of the mobile phone currently active will be displayed. Press the button to switch the phone.

The directory of the selected telephone will be displayed.

Hide greyed out contacts

If this function is switched on, contacts for which no number has been stored are hidden.

Sort order

You can sort your contacts alphabetically by **surname or first name**.

Download contacts

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI, or a mini SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader*.

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can download the contacts from your mobile phone manually. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, the Bluetooth connection may have to be disconnected and re-established before you can update the contacts.

Memory capacity

You can manage up to 23,000 contacts. Up to 5,000 contacts per mobile phone can be loaded from a maximum of four phones, and up to 3,000 contacts can be imported from a storage device.

Import/export contacts

Important: An SD card must be inserted in the SD card reader* \Rightarrow page 242, or a USB mass storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface \Rightarrow page 245.

You can import or export contacts in the vCard format (.vcf) into or from the MMI.

– **To import contacts from a storage device:** Select **Import contacts > Search for import data > SD card 1 or USB device 1/USB device 2 > de-**

sired contacts or **Select all contacts > Start import.**

– **To export contacts to a storage device:** Select **Export contacts > Find export medium > SD card 1 or USB device 1/USB device 2 > desired contacts** or **Select all contacts > Start export.** Important: Only contacts which were imported previously can be exported.

Note

- Please always note the information in the Audi connect chapter \Rightarrow page 202.
- Further information on the myAudi account can be found at my.audi.com.
- The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the MMI system.
- Never store important data on SD cards or USB mass storage devices. Audi shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of data or media.
- It is not possible to export contacts which have been downloaded from a mobile phone.
- There should be no files or directories on the storage medium other than the contacts you wish to import.
- Apple or MTP devices (e.g. smartphones) are not recognised as USB storage devices.

Mobile network settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings > Mobile network.**

Switch on car phone/data module*

Applies to: vehicles with car phone/data module

Refer to \Rightarrow page 198.

Store SIM PIN in MMI*

Applies to: option using your own SIM card

When this function is switched on, the SIM PIN is stored in the MMI after it has been entered for the first time. You can save the SIM PIN codes of four different SIM cards on the MMI.

Telephone

Automatic network selection*

Applies to: option using your own SIM card

- **Automatic network selection:** When this function is switched on, you can dial into your service provider's network automatically.
- **Network provider:** Important: The data module must be switched on and automatic network selection must be switched off. Select a network manually from the list of networks available at your current location.

SIM PIN settings*

Applies to: option using your own SIM card

- **SIM PIN query:** When this function is switched on, the system asks for the SIM PIN code.
- **Change SIM PIN:** You can change the PIN code for your SIM card. First enter the existing PIN for your SIM card. The SIM PIN can only consist of numbers from 0 to 9. The new SIM PIN has to be entered twice, as a precautionary measure, and is stored on the SIM card.

Instrument cluster

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel and telephone

You can use the multi-function steering wheel to control functions of the MMI via the display in

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
Connecting the mobile phone to the MMI fails.	<p>Check if the requirements for connecting a mobile phone have been met ⇒ page 186, or:</p> <p>Check if you have accidentally declined the PIN for setting up the connection on your mobile phone. If necessary, repeat the connection procedure ⇒ page 186.</p>
The mobile phone does not support the SIM Access Profile (e.g. iPhone).	<p>Insert your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader and use the functions of the car telephone kit independently of your mobile phone.</p> <p>When the mini SIM card is inserted, you can also use the contacts from your mobile phone by connecting the mobile phone to the system via the Contacts profile ⇒ page 264.</p>

the instrument cluster. For information on how to do so, refer to [⇒ page 15](#) and [⇒ page 29](#), *Other function selector buttons*.

Important: The telephone tab must be selected in the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Press the  button.

Possible options:

- **Call list:** Important: The call list must contain a telephone number.
- **Favourites:** Important: You must have added favourites on the MMI.
- **Switch phones:** Important: Two mobile phones must be connected to the MMI.
- **Go to call:** Important: A call must be in progress.



Note

- The call list can only be edited on the MMI.
- It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Subject	Advice
After the mobile phone was connected not all/none of the contacts were loaded into the MMI.	<p>Avoid using special characters in names.</p> <p>Avoid using contact groups on your mobile phone.</p> <p>Pay attention to any requests on your mobile phone when connecting via Bluetooth.</p>
Some telephone functions are greyed out/not available.	<p>The telephone functions will depend on the mobile network service provider and the mobile phone used. For more information, please contact your mobile network service provider, see the operating instructions for your mobile phone, or go online to www.audi.com/bluetooth.</p>
Some telephone functions are greyed out/not available, even though the mobile phone supports them.	<p>On corporate phones, some Bluetooth settings may not be compatible with the system or the Bluetooth function of your mobile phone may have been deactivated. For more information, contact your system administrator.</p>
Applies to vehicles with Audi phone box: Your mobile phone cannot be charged wirelessly or the charging cycle is interrupted.	<p>Check that the Audi phone box's wireless charging function is switched on.</p> <p>Check that your mobile phone is Qi compatible.</p> <p>Check that your mobile phone is in the correct position in the Audi phone box ⇒ <i>page 189</i> and that there are <i>no</i> other objects in the Audi phone box.</p>
The MESSAGES menu is not available.	<p>Check whether your mobile phone has the option <i>Show messages</i> and make sure that this option is activated.</p>

Audi connect

General information

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

- Audi connect infotainment
- Audi connect vehicle control services

Further information on Audi connect is also available on the Internet at www.audi.com.



WARNING

- Only use Audi connect services when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely – risk of accident! Please always observe [⇒ page 20, Notes on traffic safety](#).
- Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving.
- Do not allow the features of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from watching the traffic – taking your eyes off the road can cause an accident.
- No Wi-Fi devices may be used from the front seats in the areas around the airbags while the vehicle is being driven. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on [⇒ page 70, Airbag system](#).
- The Audi connect infotainment services should only be used via a Wi-Fi hotspot when the vehicle is stationary or from the rear seats if the vehicle is in motion – risk of accident!



CAUTION

- Applies when using the embedded SIM card: With a small number of exceptions, the data connection costs for Audi connect infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect infotainment during the licence period. Please note that costs can be incurred if certain services are used. This ap-

plies, for example, to online radio/podcasts or Internet connections and services which use the Wi-Fi hotspot, such as online media. Depending on your country, you will need to purchase data plans for an additional charge [⇒ page 210](#) or use your own SIM card for these services. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

- Applies when using your own SIM card in the SIM card reader or in a mobile phone via Bluetooth (SAP): If you use your own SIM card, all data connections for all Audi connect infotainment services will use it. Depending on your network provider, you may be charged for this service, especially if you are using the system abroad. We therefore strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For more information, contact your service provider.
- In certain cases, the data connection for the Wi-Fi hotspot is established via the SIM card of your Wi-Fi device as a substitute. This depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. Depending on your network provider, this may incur charges, especially if you are using the system abroad. We therefore strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your Wi-Fi device.
- Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used, for example, to connect to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.



Note

- The availability of the services depends on the licence period.
- AUDI AG only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available indefinitely; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.
- The latest mobile phone standards are not available for use in all countries. For further

information, please consult an Audi dealer or your mobile network service provider.

- Audi connect infotainment services are only available within the mobile network area covered by your network provider.
- The availability, scope, provider and price of the services offered can vary, as can the way in which the services are displayed on the screen. These variations depend on your country, model, model year, device and mobile phone contract.

Audi connect infotainment

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Audi connect infotainment services allow online information to be directly transmitted into the vehicle.

An Internet connection is required in order to use Audi connect infotainment. The following options may be available for this, depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

- Embedded SIM card
- SIM card reader
- Mobile phone via Bluetooth

! WARNING

Please always observe the information  in General information on page 202.

! CAUTION

Please always observe the information  in General information on page 202.

Embedded SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and embedded SIM card

The data connection for the Audi connect infotainment services is established via an embedded SIM card (eSIM card) fitted in the vehicle. You can use Audi connect infotainment services right away.

! CAUTION

Please always observe the information  in General information on page 202.

SIM card reader

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and SIM card reader

All data connections will be established via the SIM card in the card reader if one is inserted  in General information on page 202.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. A data connection for Audi connect infotainment services must be configured. Your own SIM card must be the size of a mini SIM card  and must have a data option.

Inserting SIM card

The SIM card reader is located in the storage compartment underneath the centre armrest.

- ▶ The missing corner of the SIM card should be at the front left as you insert it.
- ▶ Slide the SIM card into the slot in the SIM card reader until you feel it engage.
- ▶ Enter the PIN for your SIM card.
- ▶ Press **OK**.
- ▶ If you would like the MMI to connect automatically in the future, select **Yes**. Refer also to  page 209.

After connecting successfully, the signal strength and type of connection will appear in the status line of the MMI   page 21, Fig. 15.

Removing SIM card

- ▶ Briefly press the SIM card.

! CAUTION

– Please always observe the information  in General information on page 202.

- To avoid damaging the SIM card reader, only use mini SIM cards (25 mm x 15 mm). Please contact your mobile network service provider for more information on mini SIM cards.

- Should you have inserted a different SIM card size in the SIM card reader, do not under any circumstances attempt to remove it yourself as this may damage the SIM card reader. Please contact a qualified workshop.
- If you use SIM card adapters, the vibrations caused by the movement of the vehicle may cause the SIM card to become detached from the adapter - risk of damage to the SIM card reader.

Note

- Further information on the Internet connection can be found on [⇒ page 209](#).
- The SIM card must not be removed from the SIM card reader while Audi connect infotainment services are being used.

Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and SAP-enabled mobile phone

Depending on the country and your vehicle's equipment, it may be possible for the MMI to use your mobile phone's SIM card to establish an Internet connection. For information on whether your mobile phone supports Bluetooth SAP for data connections, please refer to the operating instructions of your mobile device.

All data connections are established via the SIM card in the mobile phone [⇒ ! in General information on page 202](#).

Important: Your mobile phone must support the Bluetooth SIM Access Profile (Bluetooth SAP for data connections). The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. There must not be a SIM card inserted in the SIM card reader. The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must not be connected to a mobile phone. Access to your SIM card (*SIM Access*) must be activated on your mobile phone. Your own SIM card must have a data option.

Connecting a mobile phone

- Switch on the Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of both the MMI system [⇒ page 264](#) and the mobile phone.
- Connect the mobile phone to the MMI [⇒ page 186](#).

Only after the mobile phone has been successfully connected via Bluetooth SAP for data connections will the name of your mobile phone appear in the connection manager [⇒ page 264](#) in the **Data connection** menu. If this does not happen, make sure that the car phone function is switched on.

Switching on the car phone

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **Settings > Connected devices**.
- Press and hold your mobile phone in the MMI until the **Options** menu is displayed. Press on **Bluetooth profiles**.
- Switch on the **Car phone** function.

If your mobile phone does not support Bluetooth SAP for data connections or the requirements for connecting a mobile phone have not been met, it will not be possible to switch on the car phone function.

After connecting successfully

Your mobile phone is no longer connected to the Internet.

- To establish the Internet connection, connect your mobile phone to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot [⇒ page 205](#).

CAUTION

Please always observe the information [⇒ ! in General information on page 202](#).

Note

- It is only possible to connect a mobile phone via the SIM Access Profile on vehicles with the Audi phone box.
- The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car.

Using the Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices (such as smartphones) to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot. If the MMI is connected to the Internet \Rightarrow page 203, the connected Wi-Fi devices can also use the MMI's Internet connection.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings > Wi-Fi**. Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings > Wi-Fi > Wi-Fi hotspot settings**. The access codes for the Wi-Fi hotspot will be displayed. If necessary, activate the discoverability setting on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- ▶ Switch your mobile device's Wi-Fi function on and connect it to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot using the access data displayed.
- ▶ Please note any system queries on your Wi-Fi device.

Your device should now have been successfully connected to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot.



WARNING

Please always observe the information \Rightarrow in *General information on page 202*.



CAUTION

Please always observe the information \Rightarrow in *General information on page 202*.

Audi connect infotainment services

Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Before you first use certain Audi connect infotainment services, it is necessary to configure them via your personal myAudi account \Rightarrow page 30.



Note

- When you call up certain Audi connect infotainment services on the MMI, you may also need to enter your myAudi access data.
- Some Audi connect infotainment services must be activated via my.audi.com.
- Only one myAudi account can be connected to your vehicle, irrespective of the key user and further users.
- Detailed information on configuration can be found on the Internet at my.audi.com.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

The following services and more may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

Weather

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ On the home screen, press **WEATHER**.

To edit the settings: Select **WEATHER > ☰**.

To add a location: Select **In new town > a location**.

- ▶ To set the weather location permanently to a particular town, press on *a town*.
- ▶ To always display the weather for the current vehicle location, press on the crosshairs.

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- ▶ To display the weather at the destination town, press on .

To delete a location: Select > *one or more locations* or **Select all > Delete**.

News

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NEWS**.

Personalised newsfeeds can be displayed if you have logged into myAudi in your vehicle \Rightarrow page 30.

Twitter

Important: You must have linked your vehicle to myAudi ⇒ *page 30*. You must have linked your myAudi account to Twitter.

You can only connect one Twitter account to your myAudi account. Not all settings can be changed on the MMI. In some cases, it will be necessary to go to the Twitter website itself.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NEWS** > . Press on a corresponding Twitter entry in the list.

Calendar

Important: The myAudi app must be installed and started on your mobile device. Access to the calendar must be permitted on your mobile device. You must be logged in to your myAudi account using your access data in the myAudi app and must have selected your vehicle. The Wi-Fi function must be activated on your mobile device and on the MMI and your mobile device must be connected to the MMI system's Wi-Fi hotspot ⇒ *page 205*.

You can have the calendar of your mobile device displayed on the MMI.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **CALENDAR**.



WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇒ in *General information on page 202*.



CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇒ in *General information on page 202*.

Functions on demand

Purchasing functions in the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with functions on demand

With certain equipment versions in some countries you can purchase functions on the MMI.

Setting up

- ▶ Register at my.audi.com.

- ▶ Specify the key user ⇒ *page 31*.
- ▶ Go to my.audi.com, activate the option for making purchases in the vehicle and follow the instructions on the system.

Purchasing functions

Important: You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the vehicle.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SHOP** > *desired function*.

Displaying purchased functions

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SHOP** > > **Purchased functions**.

Functions on demand are marked by the symbol in the MMI menus. You can find an overview of all functions on demand in the shop.



CAUTION

If a limit has been specified for purchasing functions in the vehicle and you are logged in to myAudi, you can purchase functions without any further safety prompts.



Note

Before you sell your vehicle, reset all the settings to the factory defaults.

Purchasing functions via myAudi

Applies to: vehicles with functions on demand

With certain equipment versions in some countries you can purchase functions at any time using your myAudi account. To display purchased functions in the vehicle, use one of the following methods:

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **PURCHASES**, or:
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SHOP** > > **Purchased functions**.

Audi connect vehicle control services

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

With the Audi connect vehicle control services¹⁾, you can use various services via the myAudi app or via my.audi.com.

WARNING

Please always observe the information  in *General information on page 202*.

Note

- Whether you are able to call up certain types of data or operate functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle's battery. These functions are therefore only available to a limited extent after the ignition has been switched off.
- The Internet connection for the Audi connect vehicle control services is established via an eSIM card. The costs for this are included in the price of the Audi connect vehicle control services. The mobile network, for example, must be available to use the services.

Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

- ▶ Register at my.audi.com.
- ▶ Specify the key user  *page 31*.
- ▶ Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access data.

Note

It may also be necessary to enter your 4-digit PIN (which you specified at my.audi.com) when calling up some Audi connect vehicle control services.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

The following services and more may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

Remote locking/unlocking

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched off.

This service can be used to lock and unlock the car.

Vehicle status report

This service transmits data from the driver information system to a server. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, specific values such as the remaining range and the vehicle's mileage can be called up. The values provided may differ from those displayed in the vehicle.

Car finder

This service transmits the location where the vehicle is parked to a server when the ignition is switched off. The location of the vehicle, your own location or the route to your vehicle can be displayed. If the vehicle is stolen or towed from its last location without switching the ignition on and off again, the new parking position cannot be detected with this service.

Theft alarm notification

Important: The vehicle must be stationary. Push notifications must be activated on your mobile device.

Please observe the information on  *page 36*. This service sends a notification to your mobile device if your vehicle's anti-theft alarm is triggered.

Audi service request

Important: The service must be activated on my.audi.com and you must have selected an Audi service partner.

¹⁾ Depends on the country and the vehicle's equipment. The availability of the services offered is time-limited.

This service transmits service-related data to your selected Audi service partner, who will contact you when a service appointment is due.

Stolen Vehicle Locator

This service helps you to find your vehicle if it is stolen.

- Inform the police. You will receive a reference number.
- Call the service hotline and give them the reference number.

The service hotline will forward the details gathered to the police. The number of the service hotline is provided when the vehicle is purchased.

Trip data

Depending on the equipment in the vehicle, certain data may be transmitted from the driver information system to a server. An overview of your trips can be displayed, with values from the short-term/long-term memory (such as travel time, etc.) The values provided may differ from those displayed in the vehicle.

Remote charging

Important: The ignition must be switched off to change the charging mode.

You can control the charging cycle remotely via this service.

- Charging mode: Immediate or scheduled charging
- Programming a timer
- Activating/deactivating a timer

For more information, please refer to
⇒ page 112.

Auxiliary air conditioning

Important: The ignition must be switched off to start/end the air conditioning process.

You can use the services to control the air conditioning remotely.

- Start/finish the air conditioning cycle
- Programming a timer
- Activate/deactivate a timer

For more information, please refer to ⇒ page 90.

Remote car signal

You can use this function to sound the vehicle's horn or activate the turn signals. You must be within a certain distance of the vehicle to operate this function. Only use this function if it is permitted by the laws and regulations which apply in your current location.

WARNING

- Do not let the vehicle status report tempt you into ignoring any driver messages or warning/indicator lamps that may light up in the vehicle. This could lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.
- Before using the air conditioning functions please ensure that your vehicle is properly parked and that the ignition is off.
- Before using the functions for the high-voltage battery charging cycle, please ensure that your vehicle is properly parked and connected to a suitable power outlet, and that the ignition is off.

CAUTION

If you use the remote locking/unlocking service to lock a vehicle with a safelock mechanism, the safelock mechanism will not be switched on.

Note

For certain services, you can specify whether you wish to receive information via push notifications and/or e-mails.

Settings

Mobile network

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings > Mobile network**.

Depending on the type of connection, the following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

Data connection settings

You can select when you would like the system to establish an Internet connection in the **Data connection settings** menu. The online connection is ended automatically when a requested Audi connect infotainment service no longer requires any further data.

- **Data roaming:** This function is deactivated when the vehicle leaves the factory. Data roaming must be activated before you can use a data connection abroad. This setting is saved for the current SIM card/the mobile device currently connected.
- **Allow MMI online services:** If this function is switched on, a data connection will be established automatically for the use of Audi connect infotainment services.
- **Allow Wi-Fi devices:** If this function is switched on, you can allow or deny a connection to the Internet.

Access point

Depending on the SIM card used, the connection may be configured automatically. The following settings can be changed. For more information, contact your service provider.

- **Access point (APN):** The system access point depends on your mobile network service provider and is assigned automatically.
- **User name:** The user name for your online profile is assigned by your mobile network service provider.
- **Password:** The password for your online profile is assigned by your mobile network service provider.
- **Use settings:** To store modified settings.
- **Reset configuration:** The connection settings will be reset.

Automatic network selection

Applies to: option using your own SIM card

- **Automatic network selection:** When this function is switched on, you can dial into your service provider's network automatically.
- **Network provider:** Important: The data module must be switched on and automatic network selection must be switched off. Select a net-

work manually from the list of networks available at your current location.

Data usage meter

The amount of data you have currently used is displayed.

- **Reset:** You can reset the usage statistics to zero.
- **Warning limit:** You can set a warning limit for your data usage (GB/MB).

WARNING

Please always observe the information  in *General information on page 202*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information  in *General information on page 202*.

Note

For more information on roaming charges, contact your service provider.

Wi-Fi settings

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings > Wi-Fi**.

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

Wi-Fi

If this function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is activated and Wi-Fi devices can be connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Wi-Fi hotspot settings

The Wi-Fi connection between the MMI and your Wi-Fi device is encrypted. You can change the following values as required:

- **Access point (SSID):** Name of the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- **Password:** A random MMI password is set at the factory. This password can be changed. The encryption method requires the password to be ►

at least 8 characters long. Please select a secure password.

– **Discoverability:** You can activate/deactivate the discoverability of the Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Please always observe the information  *in General information on page 202.*

CAUTION

Please always observe the information  *in General information on page 202.*

Data plans¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with data plans

Important: You must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account. You must be registered as the eSIM card owner in the mobile network provider's customer portal and have purchased a data plan. You must have activated the function to purchase data plans in the vehicle via the mobile network provider's customer portal.

Purchasing data plans

Applies to: vehicles with an embedded SIM card

You can purchase data plans directly in the vehicle from a selected mobile network provider for Audi connect infotainment services. Data plans can be used for certain services  *in General information on page 202.*

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings > Data plans.**
- **Current data plans:** The duration and data volume of the data plan you are currently using are displayed on the MMI.

– **Purchase data plan:** Press on the desired data plan in the list. Confirm your purchase of the selected data plan.

– **Delete SIM owner:** You can delete the SIM owner at any time in the vehicle, for instance when you sell it. You will then not be able to purchase any data plans.

– **Support:** You can call the support hotline if you require assistance.

WARNING

Please always observe the information  *in General information on page 202.*

CAUTION

- Please always observe the information  *in General information on page 202.*
- Please note that, when using your own SIM card, you will be unable to use any current data plans.

Note

- Please note that any vehicle passenger can delete the SIM owner.
- The vehicle stored in the network provider's customer portal is not deleted automatically when you delete the SIM owner in the vehicle. When selling your vehicle, you should delete the vehicle in the network provider's customer portal to prevent any further purchases at your expense.
- For journeys abroad, you will need to purchase appropriate data plans. If no data plans are available for the required country, you may be able to use your own SIM card.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment. ▶

¹⁾ Not available in all markets.

Subject	Advice
Audi connect infotainment services: Some Audi connect infotainment services are greyed out/not available.	Before you first use some Audi connect infotainment services, it is necessary to activate/configure them via your personal myAudi account. Detailed information can be found on the Internet at my.audi.com .
Wi-Fi hotspot: No Wi-Fi connection is possible.	Check whether Wi-Fi is activated on the MMI \Rightarrow page 209. Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.

Emergency call

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Description of the in-vehicle emergency call system.

An emergency call is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the emergency call centre using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following functions are available:

The **emergency call** function allows you to organise assistance as quickly as possible in dangerous situations. Use this function whenever you need help \Rightarrow page 212.

- Emergency call system via third-party provider (TPS emergency call)
- Statutory European emergency call (EU eCall) based on the 112 SOS number
- Statutory ERA-GLONASS emergency call

The **online roadside assistance call** function allows you to request assistance in the event of a breakdown or a minor accident \Rightarrow page 213.

Emergency call

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

The services are provided via a SIM card installed in the vehicle. Provision of these services requires that the mobile network of the SIM card be functioning and ready for use. The services provided by AUDI AG are only available within the area covered by the mobile network chosen by AUDI AG.

Note

- The emergency call function cannot be deactivated via the settings on the infotainment system.
- EU eCall is a public service of general interest and is provided free of charge.
- ERA-GLONASS is provided free of charge.

- The availability of the TPS emergency call is time-limited.
- The cost of TPS voice calls and data connections is included in the price of the services.

Functions

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

In the event of a serious accident, the emergency call system is automatically activated via on-board sensors \Rightarrow page 213, *Automatic emergency call*. It is also automatically activated if the vehicle is equipped with a TPS emergency call which does not work in the event of a serious accident.

The emergency call can also be triggered manually if needed. For instructions on how to activate the system manually, please refer to \Rightarrow page 212, *Manual emergency call*.

The TPS emergency call can be placed manually or automatically \Rightarrow page 212.

The ERA-GLONASS emergency call can be placed manually or automatically \Rightarrow page 212.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

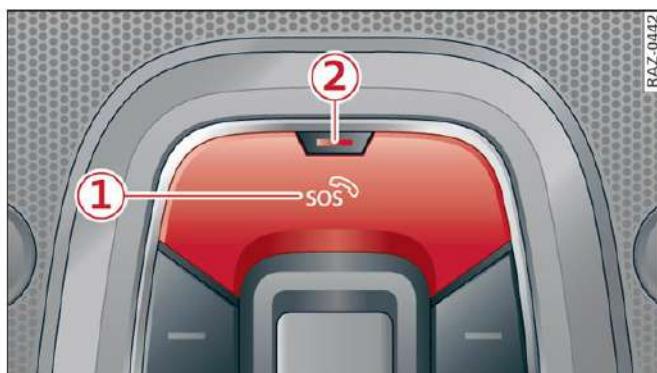


Fig. 154 Front headliner: Cover for emergency call button

Important: The LED ② must be lit in green.

Manual emergency call

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Lightly press the cover ① to open it.
- Press the emergency call button until the LED ② flashes in green. The emergency call will be placed.
- If you press the emergency call button accidentally, press it again immediately until the LED ►

lights up permanently in green. The emergency call will be cancelled.

Automatic emergency call

In some circumstances, the vehicle's electronics will make an emergency call automatically if, for example, an airbag has been triggered. The LED in the emergency call button ② will flash in green. The emergency call will be placed. This call cannot be cancelled.

Meaning of LEDs

- **Green** – The emergency call function is available.
- **Red** – A fault has occurred in the emergency call function. Please contact a qualified workshop. Please note the driver messages regarding the availability of the emergency call function
⇒ *page 213*.
- **Off** – The emergency call function is temporarily unavailable, e.g. if there is no network.

Applies to EU eCall: In the event of a critical system failure which would cause the on-board emergency call system to be out of action, the vehicle occupants receive the following warning
⇒ *page 213, Meaning of LEDs* and ⇒ *page 213, Driver messages*.

Note

If the emergency call is dropped due to a poor connection, the system will re-connect automatically.

ERA-GLONASS test mode

Applies to: vehicles with ERA-GLONASS emergency call function

The ERA-GLONASS test mode involves, among other things, a test emergency call to a test control centre.

The test mode can be started within the first 20 seconds after the ignition is switched on. Briefly press the emergency call button behind the cover ① ⇒ *page 212, Fig. 154* ten times after switching on the ignition.

Note

The test mode must only be started by a qualified technician.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Emergency call function: fault. Function partially available. Please contact workshop

You can make an emergency call if the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, but not all of the functions may be available. For example, you may not be able to make a voice call to the emergency call centre. However, it may be possible for the system to transfer data. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Emergency call function: fault. Function unavailable. Please contact workshop

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, you cannot make an emergency call. Drive to a qualified workshop as soon as possible and have the fault rectified.

Online roadside assistance call

Description

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call

A call to the online roadside assistance service¹⁾ is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the Audi call centre using the vehicle's data transfer function.

¹⁾ The availability of the services offered depends on your country and is time-limited.

Making an online roadside assistance call

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call

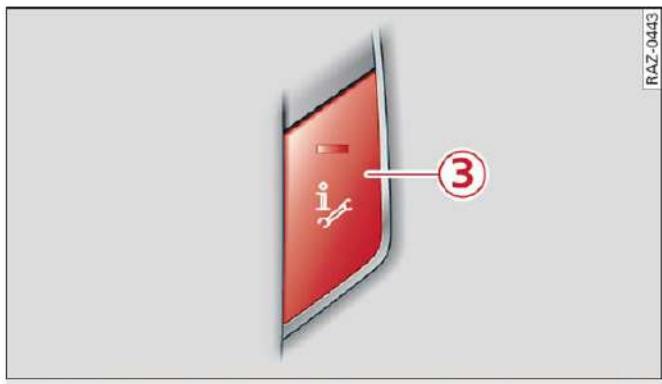


Fig. 155 Front headliner: Online roadside assistance call button

Making an online roadside assistance call

- ▶ Press button ③. The LED in the button will light up in red and the online roadside assistance call will be placed.
- ▶ If you press button ③ accidentally, simply press it again. Or:
- ▶ Applies to MMI: Press on **Cancel** or **End call**.

Audi incident assistance

The vehicle electronics detect if a minor accident has occurred. You can then choose between an online roadside assistance call or an emergency call.

Note

If the roadside assistance call is dropped due to a poor connection, the system will re-connect automatically.

Information on data processing

EU eCall

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function (EU eCall)

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and Council and, in particular, must be necessary in order to protect the vital interests of the person affected as set out in Article 6 Paragraph 1 Sub-paragraph d of Regulation (EU) 2016/679.

The processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling eCall emergency calls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

Data types and their recipients

The EU eCall system may only collect and process the following data: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger car or light goods vehicle), type of vehicle power (petrol/diesel/CNG/electric/hydrogen), the last three locations of the vehicle and direction of travel, log file of automatic system activation and its time stamp. Further data: version and ID of log file, number of vehicle occupants, location credibility.

The recipients of data processed in association with the EU eCall are the relevant Public Safety Answering Points (PSAP) designated by the corresponding national authorities, under whose sovereignty they are situated, to answer and process eCalls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

Form of data processing

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data stored in the system memory are not accessible outside the system before an emergency call is placed.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that it is not traceable and cannot be tracked continuously during normal operation.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data are automatically and continuously erased from the internal system memory.

The vehicle location data are continuously overwritten in the internal system memory to ensure that not more than three current locations, which are required for normal system operation, are available.

The activity log of the EU eCall system is stored only for as long as is necessary to fulfil the purpose of handling the eCall emergency call and, in any case, not more than 13 hours after the time at which the eCall emergency call was placed.

Modalities for facilitating the exercise of the data subject's rights

The data subject (vehicle holder) has the right to access the data and, where appropriate, to request that data concerning him or her be rectified, erased or made unavailable where the processing of such data infringes the conditions set out in Regulation 2016/679. Any rectification, erasure or blocking of data carried out in compliance with this Regulation shall be communicated to the third-party who received the data insofar as this does not prove impossible and is not associated with unreasonable expenditure.

The data subject has the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority if he or she believes that the processing of personal data would infringe his or her rights.

Contact address for queries about access rights:

AUDI AG
DSGVO-Anfrage
Postfach 600108
14401 Potsdam

Information about third-party services and other services with added benefit

TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance

Applies to: vehicles with EU eCall in conjunction with TPS emergency call or online roadside assistance

For a description, please refer to [⇒ page 212](#) for operation, [⇒ page 212](#) for functions and [⇒ page 213](#) for online roadside assistance.

Any processing of personal data through the TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance systems must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2).

The fulfilment of the contract for TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance forms the legal basis for the use of the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance and for the processing of data by the system/services.

The TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance systems may process personal data only by express consent of the data subject (the vehicle keeper).

For information on the modalities for data processing by the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance system, including all required additional information on traceability, tracking and processing of personal data, please refer to:

- Modalities [⇒ page 215](#)
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS > General > Legal information > About Audi connect.**

The keeper of a vehicle which is equipped with TPS emergency call system in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system instead of the TPS emergency call system. To deactivate/reactivate the TPS emergency call system, please contact an Audi dealership.

Note

The deactivation/reactivation of the TPS emergency call system at an Audi dealership is subject to a fee.

Navigation

Calling up the navigation menu

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The navigation system guides you directly to your destination, avoiding traffic obstructions and using alternative routes if desired.



Fig. 156 Upper display (standard map): Route guidance not started

Calling up the navigation menu

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.

The map is displayed after the navigation system is called up for the first time.

Calling up the navigation menu via the multi-function steering wheel

- Applies to multi-function steering wheel: Select the navigation tab in the instrument cluster.
- To display the navigation menu when route guidance has been started, select the following in the instrument cluster:  button > **Map**.

The following functions are available on the MMI:

- ① Open the menu **Select destination**
⇒ page 217, Fig. 157.
- ② Open the intelligent search function
⇒ page 217.
- ③ **To switch between the map and menu:** Press  repeatedly until the desired function is shown.

For further information on the map please refer to ⇒ page 224, *How to use the map*.

WARNING

- Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the in-

formation in the chapter ⇒ *page 20, Notes on traffic safety*.

– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation. Always adhere to the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations. If the recommended route is in contradiction with the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations, these always take precedence – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ ! in *General information on page 202*.

i Note

- Snow or other obstructions on the GPS aerial or trees or large buildings could affect the reception of the satellite signals and make positioning difficult. GPS reception and vehicle positioning can also be adversely affected by deactivation or a malfunction of several satellites.
- Road names can change; therefore the names stored on the MMI may be different from the actual names in exceptional cases.
- Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the upper display to operate certain functions.
- Applies to vehicles with Audi connect infotainment: Further services may be available depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

myAudi navigation

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

The MMI's navigation system works seamlessly together with the myAudi app.

Your destinations (favourites, last destinations) are synchronised via your myAudi account. All the important destinations are available in the vehicle and the myAudi app.

To load the destinations into the vehicle automatically, we recommend linking the login details of your myAudi account to your personal profile ⇒ *page 30*.

myAudi navigation functions:

- You can send destinations and tours to the vehicle from the myAudi app \Rightarrow page 220.
- Active route guidance in the myAudi app can be continued on the MMI.
- Depending on the situation, it may be possible to continue an active MMI route guidance procedure in the myAudi app to navigate you to the destination after you leave the vehicle.

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs \Rightarrow **!** in General information on page 202.

Entering a destination

Selecting a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 157 Upper display (menu): Selecting a destination

Calling up the menu

Applies to: MMI

- On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
- When the map is displayed, press (1) \Rightarrow page 216, Fig. 156.

The following functions are available \Rightarrow Fig. 157:

① Intelligent search	217
② Enter address	218
③ Last destinations	218
④ Favourites	219
⑤ Special destinations	219
⑥ Contacts	220
⑦ Received destinations and tours ..	220

Intelligent search for navigation destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can use the intelligent search function to enter navigation destination details in any order (e.g. Forest Road 20 London). You can search for special destinations, contacts, recent destinations, received destinations/tours or favourites in the same way to help you navigate to the desired destination.

Calling up the menu

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > .

Intelligent search

- Enter one or more search terms in the entry field. Refer to \Rightarrow page 24, Text entry.
- Press the desired destination in the results list. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
- Press **Start**. The route guidance function is activated and the map is displayed \Rightarrow page 222, Fig. 159.

When the MMI is connected to the Internet \Rightarrow page 202, Audi connect, the **Intelligent search** automatically includes results from the Internet. Refer to \Rightarrow **!**.

Change search area

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > .
- To change the search area, press // \Rightarrow table on page 219 repeatedly until the desired search area is selected.

Internet search¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Internet search

You can use the results from a search engine provider to find a navigation destination.

¹⁾ AUDI AG only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available indefinitely; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ *page 202, Audi connect*.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  > **G**.
- ▶ Enter one or more search terms in the entry field.
- ▶ The search engine provider displays suggestions  to narrow the search.
- ▶ Press on any suitable suggestions until the desired destination is shown in the results list. If necessary, swipe upwards/downwards with one finger until the suggestions  or destinations  appear.
- ▶ Press on the desired destination . The **Details** menu will be displayed.
- ▶ Press **Start**.

The route guidance function is activated and the map is displayed ⇒ *page 222, Fig. 159*.



CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒  *in General information on page 202*.



Note

- The terms suggested by the MMI depend on the destinations to which you have recently driven.
- The navigation system always searches for the fastest route. For information on alternative routes please refer to ⇒ *page 225*.
- Whether the level of congestion is taken into account when the route is being calculated depends on your traffic avoidance settings ⇒ *page 232*.

Entering an address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

As an alternative to the intelligent search function, you can also enter an address step by step.

Calling up the menu

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  > **Enter address**.

Entering a destination via the address

- ▶ Press on the corresponding input field and enter the address.
- ▶ Press **Use address**. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
- ▶ Press **Start**.

The route guidance function is activated and the map is displayed ⇒ *page 222, Fig. 159*.

Navigating to a town centre

- ▶ Press **Town/post code**. Search for a town or post code via the entry field. **Or:** Press on a town from the list.
- ▶ Select **Use address** > **Start**.

Navigating to a street intersection

Important: You must enter a street first.

- ▶ Select: **Intersection** > *a street* > **Start**.

Loading last destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The destinations and tours you have most recently used can be loaded directly as the new navigation destination.

As soon as you start route guidance, the destination is automatically stored in your most recent destinations. The destinations you have recently used are indicated by the  symbol.

If you have met the requirements for myAudi navigation, your recent destinations will be synchronised with your myAudi account ⇒ *page 216*.

Calling up the last destination

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  > **Last destinations** > *desired destination* > **Start**.
- ▶ Applies to multi-function steering wheel: On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab >  button > **Last destinations** > *desired destination*.

Changing and loading the last destination

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  > **Last destinations** >  > *change the address* > **Use address** > **Start**.

Restoring the last tour

Important: A tour with at least two stopovers must have been cancelled recently.

Your last tour is indicated by the  symbol.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION > (目的地) > Last destinations > Restore last tour**. Route guidance will be started immediately.

Deleting recent destinations

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION > (目的地) > Last destinations > (删除) > one or more entries or Select all > Delete > (Done)**.

Note

The last tour will be deleted automatically from the list of recent destinations if you start route guidance to a new destination after cancelling the tour.

Using a favourite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can call up frequently required destinations in your favourites. The home address/business address option is a quick and easy way of starting route guidance.

Important: At least one favourite must have already been stored ⇒ page 225.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION > (目的地) > Favourites > desired destination > Start**. Or:
- ▶ Applies to multi-function steering wheel: On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab >  button > **Favourites > desired destination**.

Special destinations (points of interest)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect infotainment

You can search for special destinations (e.g. restaurants). If the MMI is connected to the Internet, special destinations on the Internet are automatically taken into account for the search.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION > (目的地) > Special destinations**.

The search is always performed in the currently selected search area ⇒ *table on page 219*.

- ▶ **To find a special destination:** Enter the name of the special destination.
- ▶ **To find a special destination via categories:** Select a category (e.g. Restaurants) > a special destination.
- ▶ **Change search area:** Important: The route guidance function must be active. Press / repeatedly until the desired search area ⇒ *table on page 219* is selected.

Sorting special destinations

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ *page 202, Audi connect*. You must have selected a category.

- ▶ Press the corresponding sorting symbol until the desired sorting criterion is set.

Search areas in detail

Symbol	Meaning
	Search in immediate vicinity
	Search along the route
	Search at destination/search at stopover

Search in immediate vicinity: The special destinations are displayed in a list, starting with destinations nearest to the vehicle.

Search in vicinity of route: Special destinations along the route can only be selected when the route guidance function is active. The special destinations are located directly on or in the immediate vicinity of your route. You can select special destinations from different categories. For

example, you can look for a hotel or a car park along the route.

Search at destination/search at stopover: Special destinations near the destination/stopover can only be selected when the route guidance function is active. You can select special destinations from different categories. For example, you can look for a hotel or a car park at the destination.

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs
⇒ **!** in *General information on page 202*.

i Note

The distances to special destinations are shown as the crow flies from your current location. The actual driving distance between your current position and the special destination is updated automatically. However, the list of special destinations is not sorted again.

Selecting a contact as a destination

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and navigation system

You can navigate directly to your contacts.

Important: A postal address with navigation data must be available for a contact or a navigation destination must have already been added for a contact ⇒ *page 226*.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION > (MMI) > Contacts > a contact**.
- ▶ Press on an address.
- ▶ Check and, if necessary, change the address.
Start navigating ⇒ *page 218, Entering an address*.

The route guidance function is activated and the map is displayed ⇒ *page 222, Fig. 159*.

Further functions for contacts in the navigation system can be found on ⇒ *page 226*.

i Note

- Addresses which you have imported from your mobile phone into the MMI can also be used as navigation destinations.

– If a directory contact is greyed out, no navigation destination/postal address has yet been added for the contact.

Loading received destinations and tours

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect infotainment

You can search for destinations or tours in the myAudi app and send them to the vehicle.

Important: The MMI and the mobile device must be connected to the Internet ⇒ *page 202, Audi connect* and you must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device.

- ▶ Send a destination/a tour to the vehicle from the myAudi app.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION > (MMI) > Received destinations and tours**.
- ▶ Make sure that you are logged in to the vehicle and the myAudi app with the same myAudi account. The received destinations and tours will be loaded automatically.
- ▶ **To navigate to a destination:** Press a destination.
- ▶ **To delete destinations:** Select > one or more entries or **Select all > Delete > (Done)**.

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs
⇒ **!** in *General information on page 202*.

Destination details

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 158 Upper display: Details (example)

When you select a destination, the details are displayed. The route guidance is not activated at this point.

The functions available depend on the vehicle's equipment and the destination selected.

- ① **Map preview:** To enlarge the map preview, press on the map.
- ② **Route criteria:** Refer to [page 232](#).
- ③ **Weather:** Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet [page 202, Audi connect](#). Also refer to [page 205](#).
- ④ Applies to: MMI and telephone
Call: Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI [page 186](#). The call is made directly to the phone number which is stored for the destination.
- ⑤ **Start:** To start navigating to the destination shown immediately. The map will be displayed [page 224, How to use the map](#).
- ⑥ **Park:** Press **Park** to search for a car park at the destination. You can use the car park directly as the destination or stopover.
- ⑦ **Details:** Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet [page 202, Audi connect](#).
- ⑧ **Weather at destination:** Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet [page 202, Audi connect](#).
- ⑨ **Display showing distance/driving time to destination**

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs [! in General information on page 202](#).

Using a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A location on the map can be set as a destination.

Calling up the map

Applies to: MMI

- On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
- Press **Δ** to show the map (if necessary).

Setting a convenient map scale

- Select: **⊕/⊖ > a scale**.

Marking a destination

- Press on a location on the map and hold it until a marking is shown ⑪ [page 222, Fig. 160](#).
Or: The address of the selected destination is shown ⑯ [page 222, Fig. 160](#).

Using map content (e.g. special destinations) as a destination

Important: Map content must be displayed [page 232](#).

- Press on an location on the map (e.g. ⑫ [page 222, Fig. 160](#)).

Setting the destination

- Select: ⑮ [page 222, Fig. 160](#). Or:
► To show details for the destination, press ⑯ [page 222, Fig. 160](#) > **Start**.

The route guidance function is activated and the map is displayed [page 222, Fig. 159](#).

Stopovers and tour plan

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter further destinations while route guidance is active.

Entering a stopover

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- Enter a destination [page 217](#).

Displaying stopovers/tour plan

All destinations are listed in the tour plan.

- On the map, press ⑦ [page 222, Fig. 159](#).

Editing stopovers

- On the map, press ⑦ [page 222, Fig. 159](#).
- **To add a stopover:** Select **Add destination > a destination > Add**.
- **To move a stopover:** Press . Touch the symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.
- **To delete a stopover:** Select > one or more entries or Select all > **Delete > (Done)**.

e-tron route planner

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and e-tron route planner

The MMI includes charging stations along the route if the destination cannot be reached with the current battery level.

Important: The **e-tron route planner** must be activated ⇒ page 232. The charging target must be set to at least 80% ⇒ page 117.

If a destination is out of range, a fast route including stopovers for charging is automatically suggested.

- ▶ To call up alternative routes with stopovers for charging, press on  before accepting the e-tron route plan.
- ▶ To start route guidance as suggested, press on **Accept**.
- ▶ To display the route, press  on the map ⑦ ⇒ page 222, Fig. 159.
- ▶ To call up the route planner afterwards, press  on the map ⑦ ⇒ page 222, Fig. 159 while route guidance is active. The tour plan will be displayed. Press on **e-tron route planner**.

The e-tron route planner shows the estimated time of arrival at the destination, together with the estimated battery level , suggested charging time  and distance from the current location.

Note

- The estimated arrival time includes the suggested time for charging at the stopovers.
- If the charging target setting is less than 80%, the charging cycle is cancelled prematurely and the required charging time at the stopover will not be attained.
- In some countries, the data on charging stations which was available at the time of publishing may not have been complete. In this case, the e-tron route planner may not be able to plan a route. Please check whether a map update is available on the MMI and start the update if necessary. Enter your destination in the e-tron route planner again. Alternatively, you can switch off the e-tron route planner ⇒ page 233 and call up

the navigation system. Plan your route using charging stations you know about as stopovers.

Stopping route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Important: The route guidance function must be active and the map must be displayed.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: Press on  ③ ⇒ page 222, Fig. 159. Or:
- ▶ Applies to multi-function steering wheel: On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab >  button > **Stop route guidance**.

Map

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 159 Upper display: Active route guidance on standard map (example)



Fig. 160 Upper display: Marked object on standard map (example)

Calling up the map

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
- ▶ Press  to show the map (if necessary).

The following list gives an overview of the information displayed on the map. Press on a function (e.g. Alternative routes) to display further options.

- ① Destination entry ⇒ page 217

- ② Intelligent search ⇒ page 217
- ③ Stop route guidance ⇒ page 222
- ④ Current route
- ⑤ Request spoken cue
- ⑥ Alternative routes ⇒ page 225
- ⑦ Display active destinations/stopovers/tour plan. The distance to the destination including the estimated time of arrival is displayed ⇒ page 221. If the  symbol appears, the destination is out of range ⇒ page 222, *etron route planner*.
- ⑧ On vehicles with trailer mode, this symbol indicates that the function is switched on ⇒ page 233.
- ⑨ Traffic information ⇒ page 229
- ⑩ Altitude
- ⑪ Display of the maximum speed limit¹⁾ in towns, on motorways, dual carriageways and other major roads.
- ⑫ Current vehicle position
- ⑬ Route information ⇒ page 233
- ⑭ Name of the street you are currently on.
- ⑮ Start route guidance for the marked object on the map ⑯ ⇒ page 221, *Using a destination from the map*
- ⑯ Display details for the destination ⇒ page 220
- ⑰ Search for special destination near a marked position
- ⑱ Set map orientation. Also refer to ⇒ page 232.
- ⑲ Navigation settings ⇒ page 232
- ⑳ Set map scale. Set a map scale. **Or:** Press the magnifying glass displayed to set the automatic zoom ⇒ page 232.
- ㉑ Marked destination. Refer to ⇒ page 221, *Using a destination from the map*.
- ㉒ Map content (special destinations, favourites). If several different types of map content are located close to each other, their symbols are stacked on the map. To display a list of individual symbols, press on ⑯

⇒ Fig. 160. Press on a special destination from the list.

- ㉓ Centre map to current vehicle position

Further possible symbols on the map

Symbol	Meaning
	Home address ⇒ page 225, <i>Favourites</i>
	Business address ⇒ page 225, <i>Favourites</i>
	Favourites ⇒ page 225
	Shows the current destination

Displaying traffic information on the map/map preview

The following coloured markings indicate the traffic flow along your planned route:

Green: no obstructions

Yellow: congested traffic

Red: traffic jams/obstructions

Hatched markings show the stretch of road affected by the traffic obstruction.

Traffic information

- **Coloured warning symbols:** There is an upcoming traffic obstruction or hazard alert on your route.
- **Greyed out warning symbols:** Traffic obstructions that are not relevant for your route.
- All traffic jams or other obstructions are marked with a coloured warning symbol on the map when route guidance is not active.
- **Warning symbols with arrow:** Traffic obstructions that you have avoided, e.g. .

You can set which coloured markings and traffic information are shown on the maps ⇒ page 232.

¹⁾ Applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display only

How to use the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can use the gestures described below to operate the map ⇒ *page 222, Fig. 159*.

Moving the map

- ▶ Swipe in the desired direction with one finger.

Moving the map quickly

- ▶ Swipe in the desired direction with one finger and release your finger.

Zooming in on the map

- ▶ Move two fingers apart on the map. **Or:** Double tap the map with your finger.

Zooming out on the map

- ▶ Move two fingers together on the map. **Or:** Double tap the map with two fingers.

Turning the map

- ▶ Turn the map with two fingers.

Tilting the map

- ▶ Swipe up/down with two fingers.

Note

Some of these methods may not be available on every touch display or in every menu.

Navigation view when route guidance is started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

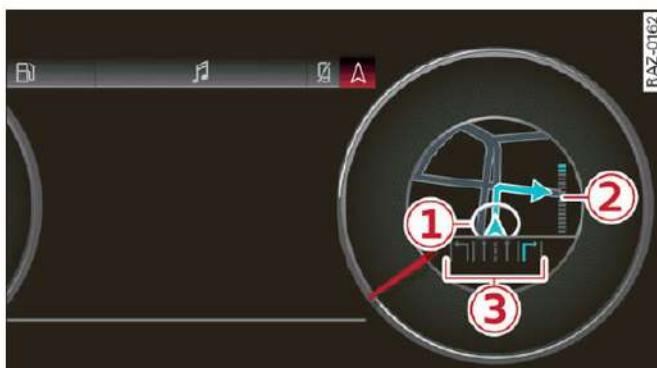


Fig. 161 Standard view in instrument cluster: Turn-off with route guidance started

Important: The route guidance function must have been started ⇒ *page 217*.

The following information is displayed in the driver information system (if available):

- ① Current vehicle position
- ② A bar graph appears when you approach a turn-off. The fewer bars are displayed, the shorter the distance to the turn-off point. If no turn-off is imminent, the right-hand speedometer shows the remaining distance to the destination/stopover, the estimated arrival time and a direction arrow for the upcoming manoeuvre. If there is no upcoming manoeuvre, the distance to the next manoeuvre is displayed.
- ③ Lane recommendation

Personal route assist

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and personal route assist

Your MMI system can memorise routes that you frequently follow and suggest them based on your vehicle's current location (e.g. the daily route to your workplace and back).

When this function is activated, the MMI records routes you have driven (even if you do not use the navigation system).

Even if route guidance is not started, your MMI system checks the traffic situation and shows possible traffic disruptions along the route you will probably take.

Calling up personal routes

Important: The personal route assist function must be switched on ⇒ *page 233*. Route guidance is not active. A notification will be displayed.

- ▶ The MMI will suggest up to three routes. Select one of the suggestions. Route guidance will be started.

Alternative routes

A notification is displayed on the MMI if there are any larger traffic disruptions (more than 7 minutes delay), irrespective of which menu is selected. If the MMI has calculated an alternative route, you can use this.

- ▶ Press on the notification.

The alternative routes will be displayed
⇒ page 225, *Alternative routes*.

Your personal trips are no longer recorded as soon as you switch off the personal route assist function. Trips which have already been recorded remain stored.

Deleting personal routes

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION > ☰ > Personal route assist > Delete recordings from the last 24 hours or Delete all personal routes and destinations**.

i Note

If the personal route assist function is switched off and you press , the settings for the personal route assist function will be displayed ⇒ page 233.

Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 162 Upper display: Alternative routes shown on the overview map (example)

Calling up alternative routes

Important: The route guidance function must have been started ⇒ page 217 and the map must be displayed ⇒ page 224.

- Press  ⇒ page 222, Fig. 159.

① Adjust route

You can adjust the route as far as the next destination/stopover.

- Press  . The  symbol will be shown on the map.
- Press and hold  and drag the route to the desired position with your finger. Repeat this until the desired route is displayed.
- Press .

- To cancel, press the current route **③**. Or: Press .

② Exclude route

You can exclude an upcoming section of the current route for a specific distance to avoid, for example, an upcoming road or tunnel closure. The navigation system will automatically calculate an alternative route and the length of the excluded section. The route you entered will only be excluded in the current route guidance; if required, you will need to re-enter the route you wish to avoid. If you exclude a route section, this section will be hatched in red and white on the map.

- **To exclude a route:** Press **②** ⇒ Fig. 162.
- **To cancel the route exclusion:** Press .

③ Current route

The distance to the destination and the estimated time of arrival is displayed for the current route.

④ Alternative route

If traffic information is available, the level of congestion on your route (including the delay length) is displayed. The distance to the destination and the estimated time of arrival is displayed for the alternative route.

Selecting a route

- Press on the information window for the corresponding alternative route (e.g. **④** ⇒ Fig. 162).

Further functions

Favourites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can call up frequently required destinations in your favourites. The home address/business address option is a quick and easy way of starting route guidance.

Calling up the favourites

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION > ☰ > Favourites**.

If you have met the requirements for myAudi navigation, the favourites list will be

synchronised with your myAudi account
⇒ page 216.

Storing a favourite

- ▶ In the details, press ⇒ page 220, Fig. 158.
Or: Press **Store as favourite** ⇒ page 231 in the options menu.

Storing home/business address

- ▶ Press **Home address/Business address**. When you call this menu up for the first time, you will be asked to set the corresponding address.
- ▶ Select: **Create now** > *enter a destination* > **OK**.

Editing home/business address

Important: The favourites list must be displayed. Your home address or business address must have already been stored.

- ▶ Press **Home address/Business address** until the **Options** menu is displayed.
- ▶ Select: **Change address** > *enter a destination* > **(Set as destination)** or **(complete the address)** > **OK**.

Editing favourites

Important: The favourites list must be displayed. At least one favourite must have already been stored.

- ▶ **To use a favourite as the destination:** Press a favourite.
- ▶ **To rename a favourite:** Press a favourite until the **Options** menu is displayed. Select: **Change name** > *a name* > **OK**.
- ▶ **To delete a favourite:** Select > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > **(Done)**.

Important: The favourites list must be displayed. At least two favourites must have been stored.

- ▶ **To move a favourite:** Press . Touch the symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

Note

- If you delete the home/business address, only the address is deleted. The entry in the favourites is still displayed.

- When moving favourites, please note that positions 1 and 2 are reserved for the home and business addresses.

Contacts as a navigation destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Two addresses (private/business) can be stored as a destination for each contact. Addresses for contacts on your mobile phone are displayed as postal addresses.

Calling up contacts

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > > **Contacts**.

Adding a destination to a contact

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇒ page 186. Or: You must have imported contacts ⇒ page 199, *Import/export contacts*. The **Hide greyed out contacts** option must be switched off ⇒ page 226. A business/private address must not have been stored for the desired contact.

- ▶ Select: *a contact* > > **Add destination**.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

Settings

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > > **Contacts** > .

Hide greyed out contacts

When this function is switched on, contacts without a stored postal address or navigation destination will not appear in the navigation system. For information on further settings, please refer to ⇒ page 198, *Directory settings*.

Note

If you add a navigation destination to a contact, the destination is only stored on the MMI. The MMI does not change any contacts on your mobile phone.

Parking information

Applies to: navigation system and parking information

You can have roadside parking spaces displayed in locations which support this feature.

Important: **Parking** must be activated in the notifications ⇒ page 23, *Notification centre*. The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ page 202, *Audi connect*. Route guidance is active, you are almost at your destination and a notification is displayed. **Or:** A point on the map is marked.

- ▶ Press on the notification. **Or:** Press on  on the map.
- ▶ To navigate to a parking space, press on a colour marking on the map.
- ▶ Select:  > **Start**.

Colour markings on the map indicate the probability of finding a space, depending on availability.

Colour	Meaning
green	high probability
orange	average probability
red	low probability

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒  in *General information on page 202*.

Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and satellite map

You can have the navigation map shown with satellite images.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ page 202, *Audi connect*.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  > **Map settings** > **Satellite map¹⁾**.

For this map display, the system uses data packets received online in the form of satellite pictures and combines these pictures with the road network from the standard map display
⇒ page 222, Fig. 159.

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒  in *General information on page 202*.

i Note

- The satellite map¹⁾ is updated at regular intervals when it is called up. This can take a few seconds.
- When the satellite map¹⁾ is switched on and the position 3D map type is selected, the display automatically switches to the 2D map orientation while you are driving through a tunnel.
- Depending on the Internet connection, the standard map may also be displayed when the satellite map¹⁾ is activated.

Electric range

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and electric range display

The *electric range* function shows you the maximum distance you can drive using electric power. This takes into account factors such as road categories, speed and road elevation.

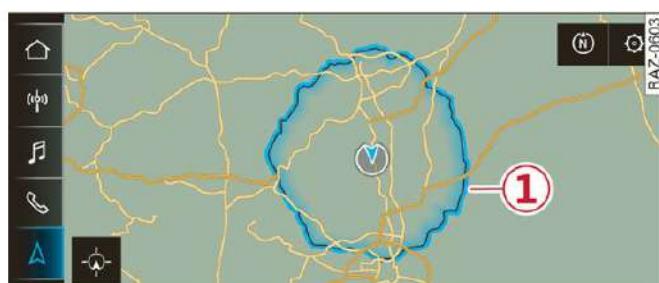


Fig. 163 Upper display: Electric range

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  > **Map settings** > **Show range**.

¹⁾ AUDI AG only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available indefinitely; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

The maximum distance your vehicle can travel on electric power is shown by the line ①.

Map update

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can update the map material on your navigation system. The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Map updates via the **online map update** function ⇒ *page 228*.
- Importing a map update to your MMI using an **SD card/USB connection** ⇒ *page 228*.
- Map update at your Audi dealer, who may charge for this service.

Online map update

Applies to: vehicles with MMI, navigation system and Audi connect infotainment

With the online map update function you can update the map material of your navigation system directly in the vehicle.

The MMI uses the vehicle's position to establish which regions you are most often in and uses this information to provide you with updates for these regions.

Starting the map update

Applies to: MMI

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ *page 202, Audi connect*.

- ▶ Map update notifications are shown on the upper display.
- ▶ The MMI starts the map update automatically if the option **Automatic online map update** ⇒ *page 229* is activated. **Or:**
- ▶ Press on the notification. **Or:** Call up the notification in the notification centre ⇒ *page 23* and press on the notification.
- ▶ If the option **Automatic online map update** ⇒ *page 229* is deactivated, press **Allow this time** or **Always allow**.

The MMI starts the map update. The status of the download process and the installation will be shown on the upper display.

A notification is shown when the update is complete.

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ *! in General information on page 202*.

i Note

Because of the large amount of data involved, we recommend that you download the entire package or any large country update packages to your computer from your myAudi account, save them on an SD card or a USB stick and then import them to your MMI system ⇒ *page 228*.

Map update via SD card/USB connection

Applies to: vehicles with MMI, navigation system and Audi connect infotainment

You can update the map material of your navigation system using the map update function.

Important: You must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account.

Preparing for the map update

- ▶ Download the map update at my.audi.com and save it on an SD card or a USB stick. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Starting the map update

Important: An SD card or a USB stick with a map update for your vehicle must be available.

- ▶ Insert the SD card in your vehicle's SD card reader ⇒ *page 242*. **Or:** Connect the USB stick to the Audi music interface ⇒ *page 245*. A map update notification will be shown on the upper display.
- ▶ Press on the notification. **Or:** Call up the notification in the notification centre ⇒ *page 23* and press on the notification. The update package will be displayed.
- ▶ Press **Next**. The status of the installation will be shown on the upper display.
- ▶ A notification is shown when the update is complete.

Map update settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect infotainment

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > System maintenance**.

Automatic online map update: Map updates are downloaded and installed automatically when this function is activated.

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs
⇒ **!** in *General information on page 202*.

Traffic information

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 164 Upper display: Overview of traffic information (example)

Calling up traffic information

Important: The map must be displayed
⇒ *page 224*.

- ▶ Press **⑨** ⇒ *page 222, Fig. 159*.

Displaying traffic message details

- ▶ Press on the traffic message **②** ⇒ *Fig. 164*.
- ▶ Press **←** or **→** to display the previous/next traffic message.

The following information can be displayed
⇒ *Fig. 164*:

- ① If your MMI has calculated a better route for the current route guidance, a corresponding message is shown. Further information can be found on ⇒ *page 230*.

② A traffic message is displayed. The distance to the hazard location is calculated based on the current vehicle position.

③ The traffic messages are sorted according to road name. When route guidance is active, traffic information for your current route is listed at the top. If there are several traffic messages for the same road, an arrow is displayed next to the road name in the corresponding line. Press the corresponding line to have all traffic information displayed.

④ On vehicles with hazard alerts, this symbol indicates that a hazard alert has been issued
⇒ *page 230*.

When route guidance is active, traffic obstructions and hazard alerts relevant for your route are shown in the top section of the list.

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs
⇒ **!** in *General information on page 202*.

i Note

- Urgent traffic information, such as a car travelling in the wrong direction on the motorway, is displayed automatically as a notification.
- Not available on vehicles for some markets.

Dynamic traffic avoidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Using the traffic information received via **TMC** or **ONLINE** – depending on availability – you can have the MMI guide you past traffic obstructions whenever possible. For this, the traffic avoidance must be switched on ⇒ *page 232*.

Traffic information (TMC)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and traffic information

Important: The map must be displayed
⇒ *page 224*.

- ▶ Press **⑨** ⇒ *page 222, Fig. 159*.

An overview of traffic information will be displayed ⇒ *page 229, Fig. 164.*

Important: The MMI traffic information must be switched on ⇒ *page 232.*

Traffic information is displayed on the standard map ⇒ *page 222, Fig. 159.*

Better route

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic information, your MMI calculates a better route (if one is available) and any possible time saving for the current route guidance. You can then choose which route you would like to use.

Important: The route guidance function must be active and traffic avoidance must be set to **manual** ⇒ *page 232.*

If your MMI has calculated a better route for the current route guidance, a corresponding notification is shown for a few seconds.

A message also appears in the traffic information overview ① ⇒ *page 229, Fig. 164.*

Using a better route

Important: A notification of a better route must be displayed.

- ▶ Press ②. The better route will be used for route guidance and the route will be recalculated. **Or:** Press the central area of the notification. The better route will be displayed along with your calculated arrival time ⇒ *page 225, Alternative routes.* Press on one of the better routes (e.g. ④ ⇒ *page 225, Fig. 162).*

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information

The MMI system can receive real-time information from the Internet regarding traffic congestion, accidents, roadworks and other incidents.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ *page 202, Audi connect.* The MMI traffic information must be switched on ⇒ *page 232.*

Traffic information is displayed on the standard map ⇒ *page 222, Fig. 159.*

Online traffic information is also displayed on the satellite map ⇒ *page 227.*

If no **ONLINE traffic information** can be received, the traffic information will automatically be received via **TMC** ⇒ *page 229.*

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ ① in *General information on page 202.*

i Note

- Every vehicle with active **online traffic information** contributes to specifying and predicting the traffic situation as precisely as possible. For this purpose, information on the position of your vehicle is encrypted and transmitted anonymously to the traffic data providers at regular intervals. You can switch off the data transmission at any time ⇒ *page 306.*
- The **online traffic information** network is not available in all countries or areas.

Hazard alerts

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with hazard alerts

The hazard alerts function allows information on hazards such as accidents, breakdowns, skidding risks or poor visibility to be detected by Audi vehicles ahead of you and forwarded to your vehicle online.

This function is subject to certain general system limitations and may be restricted or unavailable if the Audi vehicle driving ahead does not detect a hazard, e.g.:

- If the ASR or ABS was not triggered on a slippery road ⇒ *page 108*
- If the hazard warning lights of a broken-down vehicle were not switched on
- If the rear fog light was not switched on in poor visibility conditions

- If a vehicle's airbag was not triggered in an accident

WARNING

Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the hazard alerts function. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒  *in General information on page 202.*

Setting up

Applies to: hazard alerts

Important: The requirements for Audi connect infotainment must be met ⇒ *page 203.*

Switching hazard alerts on/off on the map

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  **Map settings** > **Traffic** > **Traffic information**.

If the traffic information function is switched off, the hazard alerts are not shown on the MMI's map.

How to use

Applies to: hazard alerts

A hazard alert is displayed on the instrument cluster for a few seconds when it is received. To hide the hazard alerts, press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Displaying hazard alerts on the map

Applies to: MMI

- On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
- Press  to show the map (if necessary).

Important: **Traffic information** must be switched on ⇒ *page 232.*

Breakdowns and accidents will be displayed on the map ⇒ *page 222, Fig. 159.*

Displaying in the route information

Important: **Traffic information** must be switched on ⇒ *page 233.*

Breakdowns and accidents are shown in the route information ⇒ *page 233.*

Displaying in the traffic information

Breakdowns and accidents are displayed in the traffic messages  ⇒ *page 229, Fig. 164.*

Options and settings

Options

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Different context-specific functions and settings may be available depending on the vehicle's equipment.

Important: A list of navigation destinations (e.g. Last destinations) must be displayed.

- Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.

Store as favourite

Refer to ⇒ *page 225.*

Edit address

You can edit an address for the next destination entry and navigate to the destination. Select the following: **Edit address** > *an address* > **Use address** > **Start**. If the address is permanently stored (e.g. in the favourites), the stored entry will not be changed.

Change address

Refer to ⇒ *page 225, Favourites.*

Enter address

Refer to ⇒ *page 226, Contacts as a navigation destination.*

Change name

Refer to ⇒ *page 225, Favourites.*

Store as a shortcut

Refer to ⇒ *page 23, Shortcuts.*

Settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can adjust the navigation system to suit your individual needs in the instrument cluster and on the MMI display. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Calling up the settings

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > .

Calling up the settings via the multi-function steering wheel

- Applies to multi-function steering wheel: On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab >  button.

Please note that a map setting made with the multi-function steering wheel only applies to the instrument cluster map.

Map settings

Satellite map: Refer to [page 227](#).

Show range: Refer to [page 227](#).

Traffic: You can have current traffic information displayed on the map. Refer to [page 223](#), *Displaying traffic information on the map/map preview*.

- **No traffic jams/obstructions**
- **Traffic jams/obstructions**
- **Traffic information**

Map colours

- **automatic:** The colour of the map changes to match the current light conditions (e.g. from day to night when driving through tunnels).
- **day/night**

Map orientation

- **2D pos./2D north:** The map depicts the vehicle's current position. The map is set to face the direction of travel or north.
- **3D map:** The current vehicle position is displayed on a three-dimensional map, and the map is set to face the direction of travel.
- **overview:** The entire route from the vehicle position to the final destination or next stopover

is displayed on the map. The map is set to face north.

- **Prayer compass:** Refer to [page 233](#).

Automatic zoom

- **on:** The map scale is adjusted automatically according to the category of the road you are on (motorway, major road, other road) to ensure that you always have the best possible overview of the route ahead. When there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will be adjusted automatically so that you have a more detailed view.
- **intersection:** When route guidance is active and there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will be adjusted automatically so that you have a more detailed view.
- **off**

MMI map content: This function controls whether additional information (e.g. special destinations) is shown on the map on the upper display.

- Please always refer to [!](#) for the following map content:
- **3D city model**
- The weather is shown on the map if the scale is set to 5 km or more.

Voice guidance

Voice guidance: You can change the spoken cue settings. With the setting **traffic**, the MMI will only give spoken cues on traffic jams/obstructions on your route.

Voice guidance during calls

Entertainment fader for navigation system: This option allows the volume of the current audio source to be temporarily reduced while a navigation cue is being played.

Route criteria

You can set which route criteria are permitted for the route calculation and which should be avoided.

Traffic avoidance

- **automatic:** The route is automatically optimised using the current traffic information. If the MMI system does not display a detour route although the automatic traffic avoidance function is on and a traffic jam has been reported on ►

the planned route, this is because the estimated time required for the detour is longer than the delay on the route with the traffic jam.

- **manual:** The MMI indicates that a better route is available and informs you of the potential time saving. You can then choose which route you would like to use. Refer to [page 230, Better route](#).

Motorways

Vignette roads

Toll roads

Ferries

Motorail

Seasonally restricted

- **automatic:** The MMI system determines whether the seasonally restricted road can be included in the route calculation based on the time tables currently stored in the navigation data.
- **allow:** Roads that are closed seasonally are included in the route calculation.
- **avoid:** Roads that are closed seasonally (e.g. mountain passes) are excluded from the route calculation.

e-tron route planner

This function can be switched on or off as required.

Route information

When this function is switched on and route guidance is active, route information  [page 222, Fig. 159](#) is shown. The next manoeuvre is displayed at the bottom. Special destinations and traffic information are also displayed. Press on the route information to have a preview of the next manoeuvre displayed on the map. You can switch the following information in the route information on/off:

- **Special destinations along the route**
- **Traffic information**

Personal route assist

The personal route assist function is switched off by default in the factory settings.

When this function is activated, your trips are recorded and destinations are suggested by the MMI [page 224](#).

Trailer mode

Trailer mode is switched off when the vehicle leaves the factory.

When this function is switched on, the MMI will take the speed limit for vehicles towing a trailer into account when route guidance is active and the calculated arrival time will be adjusted accordingly. The symbol  [page 222, Fig. 159](#) will be shown on the map when this function is activated.

Country information

When you cross a border, the new country's speed limits for towns and country roads will automatically be displayed in a notification. You can have this information displayed for every country on the list. Select: **Country > the desired country**.

Prayer compass display¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with prayer compass

Important: The standard map must be displayed [page 222](#).

- Select:  **Map settings > Map orientation > Mecca.** The direction of prayer in relation to the current vehicle position will be displayed.

Presentation mode

In presentation mode, the system “drives” the planned route on the upper display without moving the vehicle. You can choose your start location manually (**Set start location**) if, for example, you would like to calculate a route starting from a different position than the current position of the vehicle. **To simulate route guidance:** Start route guidance and press **Presentation mode**.

¹⁾ This function is only available for the markets of the Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC) member states.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect,
particularly those relating to connection costs
⇒  *in General information on page 202.*

Note

You can change the volume of a spoken cue
while it is being played using the ON/OFF button ⇒ *page 20*. Also refer to ⇒ *page 263*.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
Intelligent search: The desired destination cannot be found.	The destination may not be stored in the navigation database. Or: Check that you have spelt the search term correctly. Check the current search area ⇒ <i>page 217</i> and use a different one if necessary.

Radio

Calling up the radio menu



Fig. 165 Upper display: Station list

The radio supports the following wavebands: FM, AM, DAB* (digital radio). You can use the HD Radio receiver* to receive radio stations from the FM/AM wavebands digitally.

Depending on the station list, the following information may be displayed:

① Station list

Shows the stations that can currently be received. The station list is updated automatically.

② Station

If available, the station name and additional information as a supplement to the normal programme may be shown, for example.

③ Waveband

Shows the current waveband of the station.

Controlling the radio via the MMI

- Applies to MMI: To select a station, select the following from the home screen: **RADIO > Source > a station list > a station.**

- Applies to MMI: To select a waveband, select the following from the home screen: **RADIO > Source > a waveband.**
- To tune to a specific frequency, follow the instructions on **page 237, Search function.**

Controlling the radio via the multi-function steering wheel

Important: Radio mode must have been started.

- Select the radio/media tab via the multi-function steering wheel.
- To switch between radio and media, select button > **Switch to radio/Switch to media**.
- To display the station list, scroll the left thumbwheel.
- To switch to another source, press the button.
- To select a station/source, scroll and press the left thumbwheel.

Note

- The DAB* waveband is not available in all countries and equipment versions.
- The DAB* waveband also supports the transmission standards DAB+* and DMB Audio*, where available.
- Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Radio functions

Overview

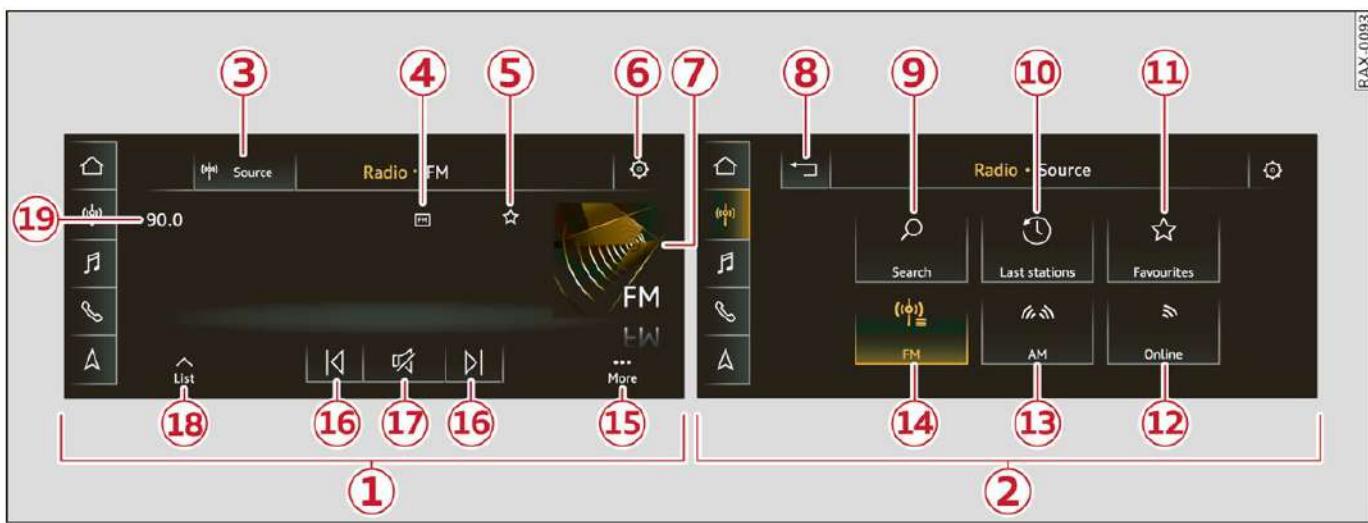


Fig. 166 Upper display: Radio functions in playback view (left-side), sources (right-side)

You can control the main radio functions in the playback view.

► Applies to MMI: **To open the playback view** ①: On the home screen, select RADIO > a radio station.

► Applies to MMI: **To open the sources** ②: On the home screen, select RADIO > Source.

The following table provides an overview of the symbols and radio functions.

	Symbol/designation	Description
①	Playback view	You can control the main radio functions in the playback view.
②	Sources	To show the available radio sources and call them up.
③	Source button	To display sources in the radio menu.
④	Waveband	Shows the current waveband of a station. If a symbol with the text WEB is displayed, the station is being received via the Internet. Please always observe the information ⇒ !.
⑤	Favourites	To store a favourite: Press ☆. Refer to ⇒ page 237, Favourites.
⑥	Settings	Refer to ⇒ page 240.
⑦	Station logo	The station logo is displayed if available. To switch between images: Press the station logo. Using your finger, swipe right/left to switch between Station logo^{a)} , Cover art and Slide show . Cover art: Album covers are displayed if available. Slide show: Depending on availability, additional information as a supplement to the normal programme may be shown (e.g. images from the studio, current photographs of artists or album covers).
⑧	Back	To go back one level.
⑨	Search	Refer to ⇒ page 237.
⑩	Last stations	To display stations from all frequencies that you have listened to recently ⇒ page 237.
⑪	Favourites	Refer to ⇒ page 237.

	Symbol/designation	Description
(12)	Online*	Refer to <i>⇒ page 238</i> .
(13)	AM	To display stations from the AM waveband.
(14)	FM or DAB/FM	To display stations from the FM waveband or the mixed DAB/FM* station list.
(15)	More	To call up options on the current station <i>⇒ page 239</i> .
(16)		To select the previous/next station.
(17)		To mute/unmute the playback.
(18)	List	To display the station list <i>⇒ page 235</i> .
(19)	Information area	If available, e.g. the station name and additional information as a supplement to the normal programme may be shown <i>⇒ page 240, Additional online data</i> .

^{a)} Station logos may not be available in all countries.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs
⇒ ! in General information on page 202.

Note

- Please note that not all functions are available in all sources and for all touch displays.
- Applies to MMI: To select the previous/next station, use your finger to swipe left/right in the middle of the display when the playback view is displayed.

Search function

Applies to: vehicles with search function

You can enter search terms in any order using the search function. You can search in all wavebands by station name or programme type (e.g. **News**). You can also select wavebands.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO > Source > Search**.

To select a waveband¹⁾: Enter a waveband. Press a waveband in the results list.

The following information is available:

Symbol	Description
	Result from the Last stations list
	Result from the Favourites list
	Result from a Station list
e.g.	Waveband of the station

Last stations

Applies to: vehicles with last stations function

You can listen to stations from all frequencies that you have previously listened to.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO > Source > Last stations**.
- **To listen to a recently heard station:** Press a station.
- **To delete a recently heard station:** Select: one or more stations or **Select all > Delete > (Done)**.

Favourites

Applies to: vehicles with favourites

You can store your favourite stations from any waveband in the favourites list.



¹⁾ This function is not available for DAB* waveband.

Controlling favourites via the MMI

- Applies to MMI: To call up a favourite, select the following from the home screen: **RADIO > Source > Favourites > a favourite.**
- To store a favourite, press ⑤ *⇒ page 236, Fig. 166*, or press **Store as favourite** in the options menu *⇒ page 239*.

Important: The favourites list must be displayed. At least one favourite must have already been stored.

- To delete a favourite, select *> one or more stations* or **Select all > Delete > (Done)**.

Important: The favourites list must be displayed. At least two favourites must have been stored.

- To move a favourite, press . Touch the symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

Online radio

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online radio

You can use the online radio function to listen to different radio stations or podcasts from the Internet.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet *⇒ page 202, Audi connect*.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO > Source > Online**.

The following functions are available in the online radio menu:

- **Search:** You can only search for online radio stations using this function. You can search for station names and categories.
- **Last station played:** The station you last listened to is played.
- **Top stations:** Select a station from the list of popular online radio stations.
- **To filter the list:** Select *> (a category) > a station name*. The following categories are available:
 - **Countries**
 - **Genres**
 - **Languages**

The following further categories may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

Podcasts

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO > Source > Online > Podcasts**.

The following functions are available:

- **To listen to a podcast:** Select *a podcast > a podcast episode*.
- **Search:** Press .

The following functions are available in the podcast playback view:

- **To display podcast episodes:** Press **List**.
- **To start/pause podcast playback:** Press **D/II**.
- **To select the previous/next podcast:** Press **K/D** or swipe left/right with your finger in the middle of the display.
- **To change the play position:** You can adjust the play position using the control.
- **To display the online radio menu:** Press on .
- **To switch to the radio:** Press **Source**. The sources in the radio menu will be displayed.

Podcast favourites

You can store podcasts in the **Podcast favourites**.

To store a podcast favourite: Important: The podcast playback view must be displayed. Press or **Favourite podcast** in the options menu *⇒ page 239, Options*.

Important: At least one podcast must be stored in the **Podcast favourites**.

- **To listen to a favourite podcast:** Press on the desired podcast.
- **To browse your favourite podcasts:** Swipe your finger to the left/right.
- **To display all favourite podcasts:** Press **All**.
- **To delete a favourite:** Select: **All > list > one or more podcasts** or **Select all > Delete > (Done)**.

Important: At least two favourites must have been stored.

- **To move a favourite:** Select **All > list**. Touch the symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs
⇒ **1** in *General information on page 202*.

i Note

- Depending on the Internet connection and network load, online radio playback may be interrupted.
- It may not be possible to receive online radio if your Internet connection's speed has been limited.
- Whether online radio can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
- The scope of the online radio services and the way that they are displayed in the vehicle may differ from the third party service.
- AUDI AG only enables you to access online radio via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content of the services.

Radio text

Applies to: vehicles with radio text

Additional information on the programme (e.g. general text messages, artist, composer, track) is shown in the radio text.

Calling up the radio text

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > *a waveband (e.g. FM)* > *a station* > **More** > **Radio text**.

The following functions may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

To display the most recent radio text entries:

Swipe downwards with your finger. Depending on the availability, the most recent radio text entries will be displayed.

To browse the radio text entries:

Swipe upwards/downwards with your finger.

If a radio text entry is displayed in colour, the station has provided a telephone number or a navigation destination as RadioText Plus information.

The following options are available:

Set as destination

- Select: *a navigation destination marked in colour* > **Set as destination**.

Call

- Select: *a telephone number marked in colour* > **Call**.

i Note

- A call to a number given in radio text will be started immediately.
- The availability of radio text and Radio Text Plus depends on the radio station.

Programme guide

Applies to: vehicles with programme guide

Radio programmes are displayed in the digital programme guide. The current and following radio programmes for the stations in the current station list are shown for all supported stations.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > **Source** > **DAB/FM***.
- Select: **More** > **Programme guide**.

To scroll in the programme guide: Swipe your finger to the right/left.

To scroll in the station list: Swipe your finger upwards/downwards.

To set a station immediately: Press on a radio station in the station list.

To zoom in/out of the overview: Press /. This could help you, for example, to enlarge short programmes in the overview so that you can select them.

To scroll to the current time: Press . The current time is marked by a coloured line.

To show details: Press on an entry in the programme guide.

Options and settings

Options

Important: The playback view **1** must be displayed ⇒ *page 236, Fig. 166*.

- Press **More**. Or:

Important: A list of radio stations/podcasts* must be displayed ⇒ *page 235, Fig. 165*.

- Press on a contact from the list until the **Options** menu appears.

The following functions may be available depending on the source selected:

Store as favourite

Refer to ⇒ *page 237*.

Programme guide

Refer to ⇒ *page 239*.

Radio text

Refer to ⇒ *page 239*.

Favourite podcast

Refer to ⇒ *page 238, Podcast favourites*.

Store as a shortcut

Refer to ⇒ *page 23, Shortcuts*.

Settings

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RA-DIO** > .

The following settings may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

HD Radio FM/HD Radio AM*

You can switch the reception of HD Radio on or off.

Traffic announcements*

When this function is switched on, you can receive traffic announcements from different wavebands. If DAB* traffic announcements are not available from the station currently set, they will be received from the FM waveband.

DAB announcements*

This function is largely the same as the traffic announcements function. However, when the function is activated, other information (such as news or weather reports) is also received.

Service following between related DAB stations*

When this function is switched on, the tuner attempts to find an alternative reception option when the reception quality becomes weaker.

When the function is switched off, the system will not do this. The current station will be maintained, and in some cases may no longer be received.

Additional online data

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ *page 203*.

When this function is switched on, additional information (e.g. station logos, cover, artist, track) will be downloaded from different providers, if available.

Service following online

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇒ *page 203* and a station must be providing information on its alternative Internet station in the background.

The radio tuner can establish a data connection and switch to an alternative station on the Internet (if available) if there is a loss of reception in the FM or DAB* waveband. You may be able to receive your local radio stations in all the regions of your country via the Internet. The  symbol denotes a station which is currently being received via the Internet.

– **On/Off**: Activates/deactivates the function to automatically switch to an alternative station on the Internet. Having this function switched on may lead to additional costs ⇒ .

– **With request**

Preferred online radio bit rate

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online radio

You can set the bit rate for online radio

⇒ *page 238* and for **Service following online**. ▶

To achieve optimum sound playback, press **High**.
To reduce data consumption, press **Low**.

Region for station logos¹⁾

We recommend using the setting **Automatic**. If station logos or names are missing, activate the region you are in or deactivate the function. You should deactivate this function when driving abroad.

Applies to journeys in Russia: Activate the city in Russia which is the closest to your vehicle's current location.

Note

- If the ⇒ *page 240, Traffic announcements** or ⇒ *page 240, DAB announcements** function is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the ON/OFF button ⇒ *page 29, Fig. 21*.
- There may be delays when the system is switching between regular wavebands and online radio* automatically.

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs
⇒  *in General information on page 202*.

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
A station is no longer listed in the station list.	Store the station as a favourite in advance and call it up via the favourites list ⇒ <i>page 237</i> .
Online radio: No online radio playback.	Check whether valid data packages have been purchased ⇒ <i>page 210</i> or, in certain countries, use your own SIM card.

¹⁾ Station logos may not be available in all countries.

Media

General notes

The MMI system includes various media drives and provides various options for connecting devices. For example, you can play media files via the SD card reader or connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface and operate them via the MMI.

Media and format limitations: The MMI system (including the SD card reader and the connection for the USB mass storage device*) has been tested for use with many of the products and media currently available on the market. However, there may be some devices/media and audio/video files that are not supported or cannot be played, or the functionality may be limited under certain circumstances.

Restricted performance: If you experience restricted performance, reset **Media** to the factory settings.

Digital rights management: Please note that copyright law applies to audio/video files.

The MMI media drives will not play DRM-protected files; these files are marked with the symbol .

Data storage: Never store important data on SD cards, CDs/DVDs or mobile devices. AUDI AG shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of files and media.

Loading time: The more files/folders/playlists are stored on a device, the longer it will take to load the files. If you want to reduce the time it takes to load the audio/video files, use a storage medium which contains only audio/video files, and create subfolders (e.g. for an artist or album).

Metadata: Metadata stored on audio files (e.g. artists, tracks, album covers) will be displayed automatically when the files are played. If this information is not stored on the relevant medium, the MMI system will use the database of metadata from Gracenote. Nevertheless, metadata may not be displayed in some cases.



CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs
⇒  *in General information on page 202.*

SD card reader

The SD card reader is located in the storage compartment underneath the front centre armrest.

Inserting an SD card

- ▶ The missing corner of the SD card should be at the front right as you insert it.
- ▶ Slide the SD card into the slot in the card reader until you feel it engage.

The SD card reader is called up and operated via the MMI ⇒ *page 246*.



CAUTION

- Only use one-piece SD cards. If you use adapter cards (more than one piece), the SD card can become detached from the adapter (e.g. caused by jolting, etc). Parts could then get stuck in the drive, impairing the functionality of the system.
- To prevent damage to the drives and storage media, always store the storage media in a suitable case and do not expose them to direct sunlight.

DVD drives

General notes

In view of the variety of CDs/DVDs and the difference in memory capacities, the functionality may be restricted in the case of some storage devices. Under certain circumstances, audio CDs/video DVDs that are copy-protected or CDs/DVDs that do not comply with the standard audio format, and multisession CDs cannot be played at all, or the functionality may be limited. We recommend always finalising the burning process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession is not supported for DVDs.

! CAUTION

To prevent damage to the drives and storage media:

- Always store the storage media in a suitable case and do not expose them to direct sunlight.
- Do not use storage media which are damaged, dirty or covered by stickers.
- Do not use 8 cm diameter single CDs/DVDs, shape CDs/DVDs (i.e. not round), cleaning CDs or protective rings.
- Never use force to push a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD will be drawn into the slot automatically.

i Note

The thermal cut-out switches off the playback temporarily if the outside temperature is unusually high.

DVD drive

Applies to: vehicles with DVD drive

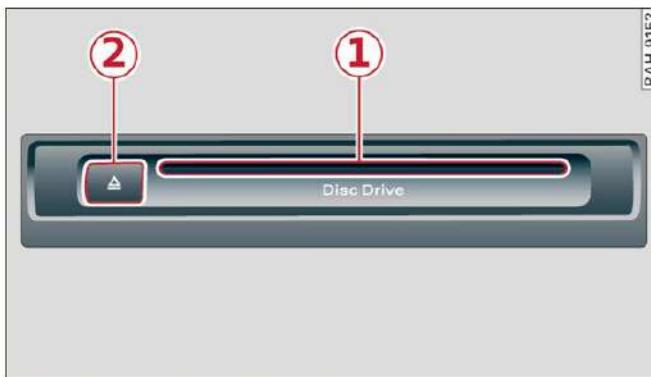


Fig. 167 Glove box: DVD drive

Loading a CD/DVD

- ▶ Insert the CD/DVD (text facing upwards) into the DVD slot ①, holding it straight. The CD/DVD will be drawn in automatically.

Ejecting a CD/DVD

- ▶ Press the button ②.

After it has been ejected, the CD/DVD will be pulled back into the DVD drive automatically after about ten seconds if it is not removed from the DVD slot.

The DVD drive is called up and operated via the MMI ⇒ *page 246*.

i Note

- Playback cannot be guaranteed if the media files have a high data rate.
- Please always note the information in the chapter ⇒ *page 242, General notes*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player

You can use the Bluetooth audio player to play music from your Bluetooth-enabled mobile device (e.g. smartphone) wirelessly via the MMI.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection procedure. The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇒ *page 264* and the mobile device must be activated.

Connecting a mobile device

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > Connect external device > New connection**. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
- ▶ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- ▶ To update the list, press ↻.
- ▶ A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.
- ▶ Confirm or enter the PIN on your mobile device to establish the connection. You have about 30 seconds to enter the PIN.

After the mobile device has been connected successfully, it will be shown as a Bluetooth audio player in the **Connected devices** menu.

- ▶ Playing media ⇒ *page 246*

i Note

- Pay attention to any connection queries on your Bluetooth device.
- You can bond several Bluetooth audio players to the MMI; however only one external device at a time can be actively connected to

the MMI as a Bluetooth audio player

⇒ *page 264.*

- Which media functions (e.g. random playback, list view, categories, search function, options) are supported depends on the Bluetooth device you are using.
- Please note the volume control on your Bluetooth device. AUDI AG recommends setting the volume of mobile devices to maximum when they are being used as Bluetooth audio players.
- For more information on which devices are supported, please visit www.audi.com/bluetooth) or contact an Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving.
- No Wi-Fi devices may be used from the front seats in the areas around the airbags while the vehicle is being driven. Please also observe the safety warnings on ⇒ *page 70, Airbag system.*

CAUTION

- Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒  *in General information on page 202.*
- In order to use online media, you generally have to set up an account with an online media service, which may lead to additional costs, especially if you are using the service abroad.

Note

- Depending on the Internet connection and network load, playback of the online media services may be interrupted.
- Whether online media can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
- AUDI AG only enables you to access online media services via the MMI system and accepts no responsibility for the content of online media services.
- Please always note the information in the chapter ⇒ *page 202.*
- Depending on the mobile device you are using, you may experience interruptions in media playback when using the myAudi app. To avoid interruptions, keep the myAudi app running in the foreground and do not lock the screen on your mobile device.

Online media

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online media

You can start and operate various online media services (such as music streaming services) via the MMI.

Important: One of the supported online media services must be available in your country.

Connecting online media:

- ▶ Connect the MMI to the Internet ⇒ *page 202.*
- ▶ Switch the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot on ⇒ *page 209.*
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > Connect online media.**
- ▶ Switch your mobile device's Wi-Fi function on and connect it to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot ⇒ *page 205.*
- ▶ Install and start the myAudi app on your mobile device.
- ▶ Log into the myAudi app with your myAudi account and select your vehicle.

Your mobile device is now connected to the MMI and is displayed in colour. Pressing on the device marked in colour will disconnect it.

Starting online media:

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source.** All the online media services supported in your country will be displayed.
- ▶ Press the desired online media service and follow the instructions given by the system.

Amazon Alexa

Applies to: vehicles with Amazon Alexa integration

You can play back different Amazon Alexa content over the MMI. The speech dialogue system is used for voice control.

Important: Amazon Alexa must be activated
⇒ *page 28*.

- ▶ Start Amazon Alexa via the speech dialogue system.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > Amazon Alexa**.

! CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs
⇒ *page 202*.

Multimedia connections

USB adapters

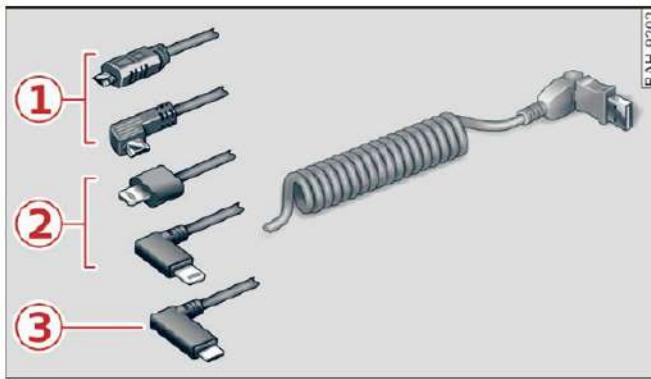


Fig. 168 Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapters

You can connect your mobile devices to the MMI and simultaneously charge the battery using a USB adapter connected to the Audi music interface.

The USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers:

- ① USB adapter for devices with micro USB connector
- ② USB adapter for devices with Apple Lightning connector
- ③ USB adapter for devices with USB-C connector

! CAUTION

Please handle the USB adapters with care.
Make sure the cable does not become pinched or trapped.

i Note

Mobile devices with Apple dock connector can only be charged using a suitable USB adapter but cannot transfer data.

Audi music interface

You can connect your mobile devices via the Audi music interface in order to charge the battery and operate the devices via the MMI.

The USB inputs for the Audi music interface are located in the storage compartment underneath the front centre armrest and in the rear cabin* and are marked with the symbol ↗.

Connecting/charging a mobile device via USB adapter

- ▶ Connect the corresponding USB adapter to the USB input on the Audi music interface and then connect it to the mobile device (e.g. smartphone).

The battery will be charged automatically.

Disconnecting a mobile device from the Audi music interface

- ▶ Disconnect the USB adapter from the Audi music interface.

Mobile devices connected to the Audi music interface are started and operated via the MMI
⇒ *page 246*.

To connect more than one mobile device: All of the devices (e.g. smartphones) plugged into the USB sockets of the Audi music interface can be used as playback sources.

! WARNING

Today's driving conditions require your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!



CAUTION

- To avoid damaging the USB inputs, please take care when detaching the connector from the Audi music interface.
- Use a USB extension cable to connect devices with an integrated USB connector (e.g. USB sticks). This will help to avoid damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
- Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.



Note

- Please always observe the information [⇒ page 80](#).
- When you switch off the ignition, the USB ports will continue to be supplied with power as long as the energy management system does not intervene.
- Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which have an integrated cable or which must be connected via a USB adapter ([⇒ page 245, Fig. 168](#)) to the Audi music interface; this could cause performance issues.
- It cannot be guaranteed that mobile devices which do not meet the specification USB 2.0 will function properly.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Video playback via the Audi music interface is not supported by Apple devices or by MTP devices (e.g. smartphones).
- iPod/iPhone malfunctions also affect operation of the device via the MMI. In this case, please reset your mobile device.
- We recommend that you use the most up-to-date iPod/iPhone software possible. Please refer to the operating instructions of your mobile device for important information.

- iPod touch/iPhone 5 and later with Lightning connector are supported via the USB adapter on the Audi music interface.
- For more information on the Audi music interface and on which devices are supported, please see the Audi mobile device database at www.audi.com/mp3 or contact an Audi dealer.

Playing media

Media sources

The following media sources can be selected, depending on the vehicle's equipment:

- **Amazon Alexa** [⇒ page 245](#)
- **SD card** [⇒ page 242](#).
- **USB** [⇒ page 245](#).
- **DVD drive** [⇒ page 243](#)
- **Connect external device**: You can connect external devices via Bluetooth and use the Bluetooth audio player [⇒ page 243](#). Alternatively, you can connect an external device directly to the Audi music interface [⇒ page 245](#).
- **Connect online media** [⇒ page 244](#).
- **TV** [⇒ page 255](#).

Calling up media

Playing media files via the MMI

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source** > *a source*. The symbol for a source may change depending on the device connected or the online media service* in use. The device name may be displayed (e.g. My-Phone).
- ▶ Select a track from the categories in the media centre [⇒ page 247](#).

Playing media files via the multi-function steering wheel

Important: At least one media drive must contain media files [⇒ page 246](#).

- ▶ Select the radio/media tab via the multi-function steering wheel.
- ▶ To display the playlist, scroll the left thumbwheel.

- ▶ To switch to another source, press the  button.
- ▶ To select a media file or a source, scroll and press the left thumbwheel.
- ▶ To switch between radio and media, select  button > **Switch to radio/Switch to media**.

Note

- If the \Rightarrow page 240, **Traffic announcements*** or \Rightarrow page 240, **DAB announcements*** function is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the ON/OFF button on the MMI control console.
- For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.
- Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Media centre



Fig. 169 Upper display: Media centre view

Several categories for selecting media files or browsing the media sources are available in the media centre.

You can browse your music collection with the help of the media centre's categories (e.g. albums). You can either browse any available source (e.g. SD card) or the active source. Music will still be played from the active source while you are browsing the media centre.

Calling up the media centre

- ▶ Applies to MMI: To browse any source, select the following from the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *a category*.

- ▶ To browse the active source from the playback view \Rightarrow page 248, select  > *a category*.

① Source symbol

Symbol of the source you are currently browsing. The symbol for a source may change depending on the device connected or the online media service* in use. A USB stick connected via the Audi music interface is shown as an example \Rightarrow Fig. 169.

② Device name of a source

Device name of the source you are currently browsing.

③ Categories

The categories in the media centre depend on the source, the mobile device and the connection type. Only search results within the active source are displayed.

Search

If a source supports the search, the category will be displayed \Rightarrow page 250.

Last tracks played

The most recently played media file will be played again.

Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select: *an artist* > *an album* > *a track*.

Playlists

All playlists and intelligent playlists on the source will be displayed. Select: *a playlist* > *a track*.

Intelligent playlists

- **Last tracks played:** The most recently played tracks are displayed.
- **Most played tracks:** The tracks played most are displayed.

Folders

The folder structure or the track/title/chapter list is displayed. Select: *a folder* > *a track*.

Compilations

You can control your playlists via the MMI. Select: *a playlist > a track*.

Composers

All available composers are displayed. Select: *a composer > an album > a track*.

Radio

Press on a radio station.

Audiobooks

You can control your audiobooks via the MMI.

Press on an audiobook.

Podcasts

You can control your podcasts via the MMI. Select: *a podcast > a podcast episode*.

Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select: *a genre > an artist > an album > a track*.

Videos

All available video files are displayed. Press on a video.

Tracks

All available tracks are displayed. Press on a track.

Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select: *an album > a track*.

! CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

- Cloud services and the radio category always require an Internet connection.
- Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ **!** in *General information on page 202*.

i Note

- Only the categories supported by the medium used are available.
- For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.
- If you synchronise a portable player with cloud services, the playlists may not be displayed correctly on the MMI. Use the device's local media library.

i Note

Applies to: iPod/iPhone

Please also observe the notes on the Audi music interface and supported devices
⇒ *page 245*.

Media functions

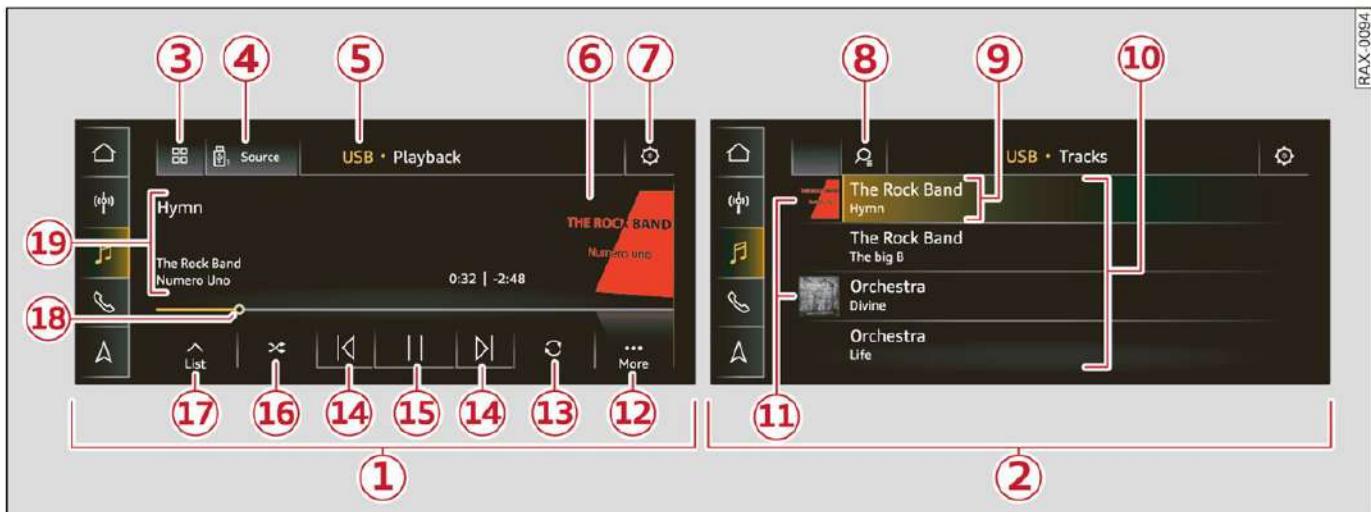


Fig. 170 Upper display: Playback view (left-side), playlist (right-side)

- Applies to MMI: To open the playback view ①:
On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > a source > a category** (e.g. Artist > album) > a track.
- To open a playlist ②: Select List ⑯ in the playback view.

The following table provides an overview of the symbols and media functions.

	Symbol/designation	Description
①	Playback view	You can control the main media functions in the playback view.
②	Playlist	The playlist will be displayed. The track currently playing is marked in colour.
③	Categories menu	The media centre categories are displayed (depending on the active source) ⇒ page 247.
④	Source button	To display sources in the media menu.
⑤	Source/device name	Applies to playback view: Device name of the source currently being played. Applies to media centre view: Source you are currently browsing ⇒ page 247.
⑥	Album cover in playback view	Important: A media source with album covers must be selected or the covers must be available online ⇒ page 251, Additional online data . Displays the current album cover. To display the playlist: Press the cover.
⑦	Settings	Refer to ⇒ page 251.
⑧	Filter	To filter the current list.
⑨	Information on the current track	Displays track and artist . The track currently playing is marked in colour.
⑩	List	To scroll in the list: Swipe your finger upwards/downwards.
⑪	Album cover in the playlist	Important: A media source with album covers must be selected or the covers must be available online ⇒ page 251, Additional online data . Displays the current album cover. The album cover is shown once for tracks from the same album.
⑫	More	Calling up options ⇒ page 250.
⑬	⌚ off	To switch between off/playlist/track: Press ⑬.
⑭	⌚ Playlist	The tracks in the current playlist will be repeated continuously.
⑮	⌚ Track	The current track will be repeated continuously.
⑯	◀/▶	To select the previous/next track (or station/chapter*): Press ▶ or ▷. To jump to the beginning of the track: After the track has played for 10 seconds, press ▶.
⑰	▷/II	To start/stop the playback.
⑱	🔀 Random playback	When this function is switched on, all the files in the playlist will be played in random order.
⑲	List	The playlist ② will be displayed.

	Symbol/designation	Description
(18)	Play position	You can adjust the play position using the control.
(19)	Information area	Displays track, artist and album.

DVD functions

Applies to: vehicles with DVD video

The following functions are available in the playback view:

- Important: The vehicle must be stationary and a DVD* must be playing.
- **To display the DVD main menu:** Press on the upper display. Press **DVD menu**.
- **To operate the DVD main menu:** Press on the desired function.
- **To switch to the media functions:** Press the upper display. Select: > *a chapter*, or start the film on the DVD main menu and press the upper display.
- **To set the picture format:** Press on the upper display. Select **Pic. format** > *a picture format* > **OK**. Refer to *table on page 251*.

Note

- Please note that not all functions are available in all sources and for all touch displays.
- Applies to MMI: To select the previous/next title, use your finger to swipe left/right in the middle of the display when the playback view is displayed.

You can search in the following categories:

- Artists
- Albums
- Tracks
- Genres
- Videos

Note

The system will only search for files on the active source.

Options and settings

Options

Certain functions and settings may be available depending on the selected source, the mobile device connected and the type of connection.

Important: The playback view must be displayed. Refer to (1) *page 248, Fig. 170*.

► Press **More**. Or:

Important: A list (e.g. playlist (2) *page 248, Fig. 170*) must be displayed.

► Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.

Similar music

The track currently playing is briefly analysed (e.g. by artist, genre, mood, time) so that the system can display an intelligent playlist with similar tracks.

More from this album

An intelligent playlist based on the track currently playing is displayed containing further tracks from the same album.

More from this artist

An intelligent playlist based on the track currently playing is displayed containing further tracks by the same artist. The system will search for artists in the source currently being played.

Calling up the search function

Applies to: vehicles with search function

You can search for e.g. titles and video files in all active sources.

Calling up the search function

Important: The selected source must support the search function. The media centre *page 247* must be displayed.

► Press on **Search**.

Entries containing the search terms entered will be displayed in the list of results. Every result is marked with the symbol of a category from the media centre *page 247*.

More from this genre

An intelligent playlist based on the track currently playing is displayed containing further tracks from the same genre.

Store as a shortcut

Refer to [page 23, Shortcuts](#).

Play

The track selected or all tracks in the folder are played.

Language¹⁾

You can set the language manually. It depends on the video DVD whether different languages and audio formats are available.

Subtitles¹⁾

You can select subtitles manually. It depends on the video DVD whether different languages are available.

Picture format

We recommend using the **Auto** setting for the picture format. You will be shown a preview of the setting when you press on one of the picture format options. Press **OK** to use the picture format selected.

The following table provides an overview of the picture formats. The possible picture formats depend on the source being played or the video file.

Picture format	Description
Auto	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the picture using the best possible width-to-height ratio.
4:3, 16:9, Cinema	The picture is set to the relevant format. Select one of these options if the picture shown with Auto selected is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus.

Picture format	Description
Zoom	The picture is enlarged to fill the entire display.
Original	The picture is displayed using the picture ratio of the source format. Select this option if the picture shown with Auto selected is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus.

Settings

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > ☰**.

Additional online data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet [page 203](#).

When this function is switched on, various information (e.g. covers) will be downloaded from the Internet for the track currently playing, if available.

Child lock for DVD playback*

You can use the child lock to restrict playback of video DVDs with age restrictions.

Displaying child lock menu

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > ☰ > Child lock for DVD playback**.
- Enter the child lock PIN. The PIN set at the factory is **1234**.
- Press **OK**.

Setting/deactivating the safety level

- Important: The child lock menu must be displayed.
- Select: **Safety level selected > a safety level** (e.g. **level 5**) > **☒**, or select **off** to lift all restrictions.
- Eight safety levels are available for the child lock function. If you select child lock level 5, all DVDs with safety levels 1-5 can be played. Playback of DVDs with a higher safety level will be blocked.

¹⁾ May not be possible during playback (depends on the DVD).

Changing PIN

- Important: The child lock menu must be displayed.
- Select: **Change PIN** > *a new PIN for the child lock* > **OK**.
- Re-enter and press **OK**.

i Note

- Not all video DVDs have a child lock feature.

– The child lock safety levels comply with the US standards of the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Please note that age ratings for DVDs may vary between different European countries.

– If you enter the wrong child lock PIN three times in a row, you will not be able to enter a PIN for approximately one minute. The PIN can only be reset by an Audi workshop.

Supported media and file formats**Overview**

The following media file specifications are supported by the DVD drive*, the SD card reader and the connection for the USB mass storage device:

	Audio files						Video files		
Supported media	SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards: with a capacity of up to 256 GB DVD drive: audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; video DVDs; audio DVDs with soundtrack compatible with DVD-Video; Audi music interface: mobile devices ⇒ page 245 (e.g. iPhone, MTP players, USB mass storage devices belonging to “USB Device Subclass 1 and 6” compatible with USB 2.0: USB sticks, USB MP3 players (plug-and-play capable), external USB flash memories and external USB hard drives).								
File system	Memory cards: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS. USB mass storage devices: FAT, FAT32, NTFS. USB mass storage partitions (primary/logical*): 2 per USB connection. CD/DVD file systems: ISO9660, Joliet, UDF.								
Metadata	Album covers: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px. Depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium or Gracenote*.								
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG-2/-4	Opus	FLAC	ALAC	MPEG-1/-2	MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.opus .ogg .oga	.flac	.m4a	.mpg; .mpeg	.mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi	.wmv; .asf
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX								

	Audio files		Video files
Specifications	Up to max. 320 kbit/sec and 48 kHz sampling frequency	48 kHz sampling frequency	Up to max. 10 Mbit/sec, 1920x1080 px and 30 fps
Number of files	DVD drive *: max. 1000 files per medium. USB mass storage devices and memory cards : max. 50000 files per medium; max. 1000 files per playlist/directory.		

i Note

- The format Windows Media Audio 9 Voice is not supported by the media drives.
- AUDI AG recommends a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.
- The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on

the language set on the system; it cannot be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.

- The manufacturer will provide you with information on the “USB Device Subclass” of a USB memory device.
- Some functions of MTP players such as video playback and the rating of tracks are not supported.

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
Audi music interface/Bluetooth audio player: The mobile device is not supported.	Please observe the notes in the chapter ⇒ page 245, Multimedia connections / ⇒ page 243, Bluetooth audio player . For information on which mobile devices are supported, please see the Audi mobile device database at www.audi.com/bluetooth .
Audi music interface: The portable player is not recognised as a source.	On some mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible if the battery charge is very low (less than 5% of its capacity). After it has been plugged in, the mobile device will only be recognised as a media source in the MMI again when it has sufficient battery charge.
Audi music interface: Problems during audio playback via an iPod/iPhone.	The Bluetooth audio player function is switched on. Switch the function off ⇒ page 264 when you are not using a Bluetooth audio player .
Audi music interface: No audio playback possible via a connected mobile device.	Make sure that the USB mode <i>MTP</i> is selected in your mobile device's settings.
Bluetooth audio player: Problems with track display and playback.	Problems can occur if a third party music playback app is open when you are playing audio via the Bluetooth audio player . AUDI AG recommends that you use the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (e.g. smartphone).
Online media: Failure of connection between the MMI and the myAudi app.	The MMI connection switch on the status screen of the myAudi app must be activated to establish a connection with the MMI.

Subject	Advice
Online media: No online media playback.	Check whether valid data packages have been purchased or, in certain countries, use your own SIM card.
Wi-Fi hotspot: Wi-Fi hotspot connection to your Wi-Fi device interrupted.	Make sure that the network optimisation function is switched off in the Wi-Fi settings or network settings of your Wi-Fi device. Please refer to the operating manual of your Wi-Fi device for further details.

TV

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with TV

It is possible to receive television in your vehicle via the applicable digital aerial standard¹⁾. Depending on its equipment, your vehicle may have a CI+ slot to receive encrypted channels ⇒ *page 259*.

For safety reasons, the TV picture on the upper display is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.

Note

Television reception in the vehicle via the aerial is not available nationwide in all countries. The signal can be affected by network coverage and vehicle speed, for example.

Calling up the TV menu

Applies to: vehicles with TV



Fig. 171 Upper display: Channel list (example)

① Channel list

② TV channel

- ③ Encrypted TV channel* ⇒ *page 259*
- ④ Audio channel*
- ⑤ Important: Channel list must be set to **Pre-sorted**. Classification* of TV channel: Sorting and displaying/hiding channels ⇒ *page 257*
- ⑥ CI+ slot is empty ⇒ *page 259*

Setting channels via the MMI

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > TV**.
- Press the  button and select **Channel list**.
- Press on a channel to set it.
- To switch from the TV picture to the channel list, press on the upper display and select **List** from the menu.

Setting channels via the multi-function steering wheel

Important: TV mode must have been started.

- On the instrument cluster, select the radio/media tab.
- To display the channel list, scroll the left thumbwheel.
- To select a channel, press the left thumbwheel.
- To switch to another media source, press the  button. Select and confirm the desired media source.

Note

Television broadcasts are interrupted by traffic reports if the traffic announcements* function is active ⇒ *page 240*.

¹⁾ At the time of printing, the TV tuner supported the following standards, depending on the country: DVB-T/DVB-T2 with MPEG-2, MPEG-4, HEVC (H.265).

TV functions

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with TV

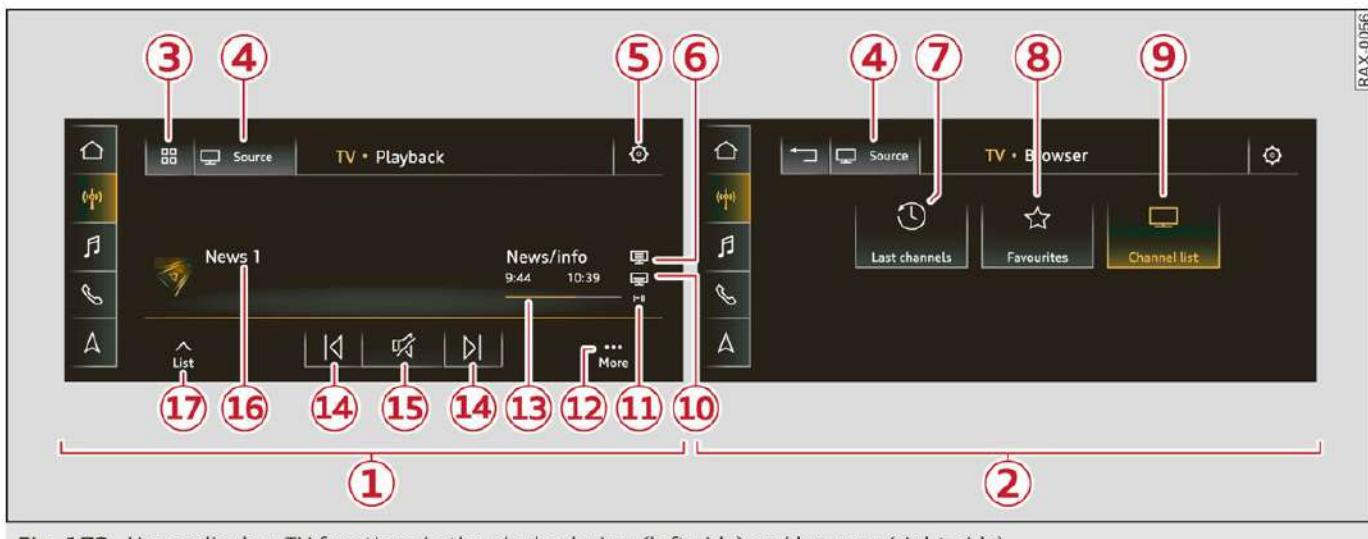


Fig. 172 Upper display: TV functions in the playback view (left-side) and browser (right-side)

How to use

- ▶ Applies to MMI: To open the playback view ①, select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > *a TV channel*. After a few seconds, the TV picture will be shown in full screen.
- ▶ To display the TV functions again, press the upper display.

▶ Applies to MMI: To open the browser ②, select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > *a TV channel* > ③.

Depending on the TV channel selected and the vehicle's equipment, the following options may be available:

	Symbol/designation	Description
④	Source button	To display sources in the media menu ⇒ page 246.
⑤	Settings	Refer to ⇒ page 258.
⑥	Teletext available	Refer to ⇒ page 257.
⑦	Last channels	To call up and delete recently viewed channels ⌂.
⑧	Favourites	To call up the favourites list, select, edit ⌂ and store favourites ⇒ page 257.
⑨	Channel list	To call up an overview of all channels currently available.
⑩	Subtitles available	Refer to ⇒ page 258.
⑪	Audio track available	Refer to ⇒ page 257.
⑫	More	To display the options menu ⇒ page 257.
⑬	Time of broadcast	If available, information on the time of broadcast and the duration of the programme is shown.
⑭	K/D	To select the previous/next station.
⑮	🔇/🔊	To mute/unmute the playback.
⑯	TV channel	The name of the channel currently being received is displayed.
⑰	List	To display the channel list.

Options

In the **Options** menu, you can change settings for the TV channel currently selected and call up certain functions, depending on availability.

- To call up the **Options** menu, press **More** ⑫
⇒ page 256, Fig. 172.

Depending on the TV channel selected and the vehicle's equipment, the following options may be available:

- **Store as favourite**
- **Store as a shortcut** ⇒ page 23
- **Teletext**
- **Programme guide**
- **Picture settings**

Audio track

For channels that are broadcast in multiple languages, you can select from the languages/sound channels available. Sound channels with audio description are marked with the symbol .

Channel classification¹⁾

If you select **Pre-sorted** ⇒ page 258, you can change the channel classification set at the factory and assign the TV channel to a category yourself.

Teletext

Applies to: vehicles with TV channels with teletext

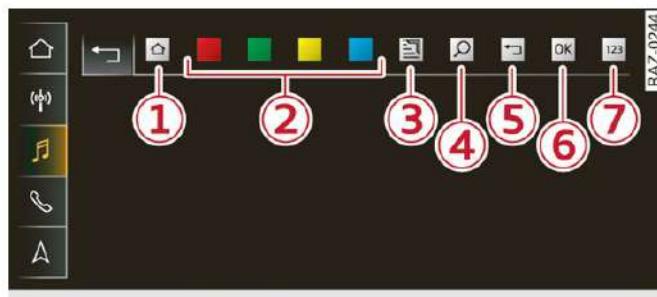


Fig. 173 Upper display: Teletext

Calling up teletext

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and the TV channel selected must support the teletext function.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > TV > a TV channel > More > Teletext.**

How to use the controls

- Swipe your finger up/down to call up the next/previous page.
- Swipe your finger left/right to call up the next/previous subpage.

Description	
①	To call up the start page.
②	To call up teletext pages directly. The coloured buttons have different functions depending on the page currently displayed.
③	To select the desired display option.
④	To switch zoom on/off, switch between upper/lower section.
⑤	To display the previous page ^{a)} .
⑥	To confirm the page number entered ^{a)} .
⑦	To enter the page number. Confirm with OK^{a)} if necessary.

^{a)} Not possible on versions for some countries.

Note

The assignment of the buttons depends on the teletext provider and may be shown on the display.

Programme guide (EPG)

Applies to: vehicles with TV channels with programme guide

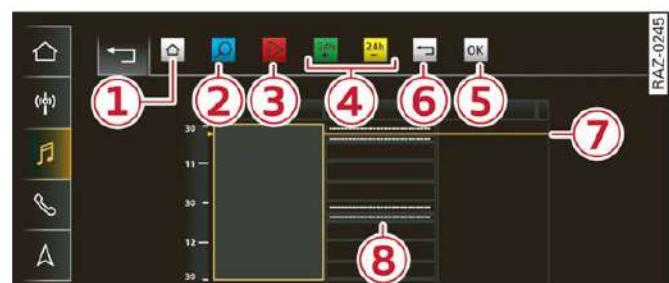


Fig. 174 Upper display: Programme guide

Calling up the programme guide

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and the TV channel selected must support the programme guide function.

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > TV > a TV channel > More > Programme guide.**

How to use the controls

- ▶ To select an item, swipe your finger right/left and up/down. The item will be displayed with a coloured frame.

Description	
①	To switch to the EPG entry of the current programme.
②	To zoom in/out of the EPG overview.
③	To set a channel via the EPG; the channel currently selected will be set in the background.
④	To operate the schedule preview, go back/forward a day.
⑤	To display a detailed view of the EPG entry currently selected.
⑥	To leave the detailed view of an EPG entry.
⑦	The time bar marks all TV programmes currently being broadcast.
⑧	Programmes with a short running time (dotted line).

Further settings

Settings

Applies to: vehicles with TV

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > TV > ☰**.

Depending on the TV channel selected and the vehicle's equipment, the following settings may be available:

- **Subtitles**
- **Child lock** ⇒ page 258
- **CAS system notification** ⇒ page 259
- **Open source texts**

Region code

The region code for your country is set as standard. More than one region code is available in

some countries. Select the region code with which the most channels are displayed in the channel list. If you are abroad, you may need to select the relevant region code from the list. To reset the region code to the factory setting, press **Set standard region code**. This will reset all TV tuner settings to the factory settings.

Channel Following

To ensure that you remain tuned to the selected TV channel, the TV tuner automatically switches between alternative channels if you leave the transmission area of the current channel when this function is switched on.

When this function is switched off, the alternative channels available are displayed in the channel list and can be selected manually.

Channel sorting¹⁾

If the setting **Pre-sorted** is selected, the channels in the channel list are sorted by category. The channels are assigned to categories at the factory. You can change the categories to change the channel sorting ⇒ page 257. Uncategorised channels are shown at the end of the channel list.

Classification filter

If the setting **Pre-selected** is chosen, you can specify which channel categories are displayed using the classification filter.

Child lock

Applies to: vehicles with TV and child lock

You can use the child lock to set an age limit for television broadcasts and to set a PIN to protect against unauthorised viewing.

Entering PIN

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > TV > ☰ > Child lock**.
- ▶ Enter the child lock PIN. The PIN set at the factory is **1234**.
- ▶ Press **OK**.

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

Setting/deactivating the safety level

- ▶ Select: **Safety level selected** > *an age limit from the list*, or:
- ▶ To lift all restrictions, select **off**.

Changing PIN

- ▶ Select: **Change PIN** > *a new PIN for the child lock* > **OK**.
- ▶ Re-enter and press **OK**.

Note

- If you enter the wrong child lock PIN three times in a row, you will not be able to enter a PIN for approximately one minute. The PIN can only be reset by an Audi workshop.
- Whether a digital signal for the child lock activation can be received depends on the broadcasting organisations.

Interference

Applies to: vehicles with TV

Subject	Remedy
Channel list is incomplete or not displayed.	No reception at your current location. Wait briefly or move your vehicle to a different location.
Freeze frame, muted sound, hour-glass display,  symbol.	Periods of interference in a digital channel. Move your vehicle to a different location.
Temperature too high/low.	The thermal cut-out of the television receiver has switched the picture and sound off temporarily.
Limited or no TV reception.	Change the region code of the TV tuner.

Receiving encrypted TV channels

CI+ module

Applies to: vehicles with CI+ slot

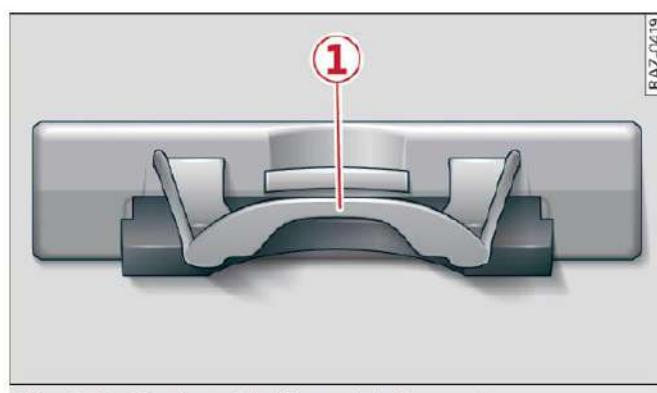


Fig. 175 CI+ slot with CI+ module inserted

You will require a CI+ module for DVB-T2 to receive encrypted DVB-T2 channels ③ \Rightarrow page 255, Fig. 171. The CI+ module is available from specialist retailers.

Inserting the CI+ module

The CI+ slot is located under the floor panel on the left side of the luggage compartment.

- ▶ Fold back the floor panel.
- ▶ Insert the CI+ module in the slot.

Preparing the CI+ module for use

- ▶ Switch the MMI on.
- ▶ Ensure that you have stable TV reception.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > TV > an encrypted TV channel**.
- ▶ Depending on the country and the provider, the CI+ module may need to be activated. Follow the instructions given by the provider of the CI+ module.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: If the provider requires an ID for activation, select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA > Source > TV >  > CAS system notification**. For further information on activation, please contact the provider of the CI+ module.

Changing the CI+ module

If you possess additional CI+ modules for trips abroad, you can change the modules in the vehicle.

- ▶ Remove the CI+ module from the CI+ slot
⇒ page 260.
- ▶ Follow the instructions ⇒ page 259, *Preparing the CI+ module for use.*

Displaying the menu of the CI+ module

The CI+ module has its own TV menu, which may vary between providers. Only use this TV menu in conjunction with the provider's operating instructions.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > TV >  > CAS system notification > CAS note.**
- ▶ To select a menu item, swipe your finger up/down. Press **OK**.

Removing the CI+ module

- ▶ To remove the CI+ module, hold it with two fingers and pull it carefully over the catch ①
⇒ Fig. 175.
- ▶ Fold the floor panel back down.

CAUTION

Additional charges may be incurred depending on the CI+ module provider in your country. For more information, contact your CI+ module provider.

Note

Use of the CI+ module depends on the service availability of third parties.

CI+ malfunctions

Applies to: vehicles with CI+ slot

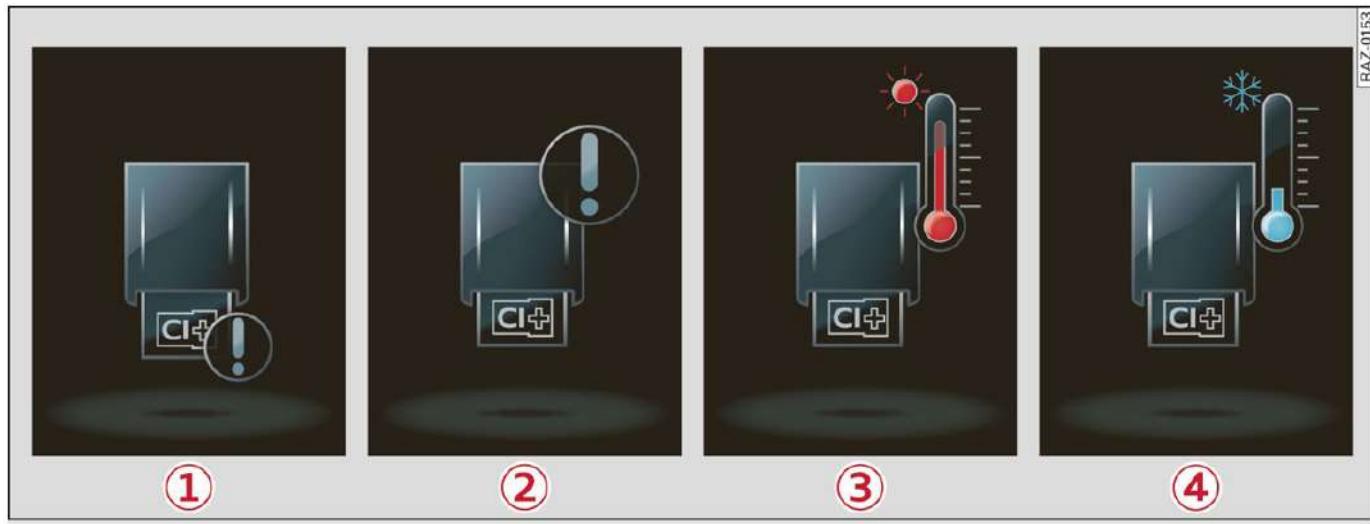


Fig. 176 Upper display: Notifications

Subject	Remedy
① CI+ module malfunction	Remove the CI+ module for a few seconds and then put it back into the CI+ slot. For more information, contact the provider of your CI+ module or a qualified workshop.
② CI+ slot malfunction	Your Audi dealer can provide you with further information if there is a prolonged malfunction.
③ CI+ module temperature too high	To protect your CI+ module from damage, the thermal cut-out switches the CI+ system off if the temperature is below freezing or above +50 °C. It is not possible to receive encrypted channels if the CI+ system is switched off.
④ CI+ module temperature too low	

RAZ-0153

Audi smartphone interface

Setting up¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone wirelessly* or via a cable to the MMI system via the Audi smartphone interface. Some of the content on your smartphone is displayed in an optimised screen format and can be operated via the MMI.

Important

The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

iPhone 5 or later with Lightning connector and operating system iOS 7.1.2 or higher, or:

Smartphone with Android Auto app and operating system Android 5.0 Lollipop or higher.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connected devices > Audi smartphone interface > New connection**.
- ▶ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇒ page 245 via a USB adapter ⇒ page 245, Fig. 168, or:
- ▶ To connect your iPhone wirelessly*, switch on the Bluetooth function and Wi-Fi on your iPhone. Call up the settings for CarPlay on the iPhone. Using the MMI, press on your smartphone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- ▶ To update the list, press Q.
- ▶ Follow any instructions given by the system.
- ▶ Please note any system queries on your smartphone.

Applies to MMI: If you declined the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto the first time you connected your smartphone, select the following from the home screen: **SETTINGS > Connected devices > Audi smartphone interface > a smartphone**.

- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

WARNING

Today's driving conditions require your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

CAUTION

Please observe the notes on Audi connect, particularly those relating to connection costs ⇒ page 202.

Note

- The functions you can use depend on a number of factors including:
 - The brand of your smartphone
 - The operating system version of your smartphone
 - The software version of the app in use
 - The USB adapter/cable and the correct connection
 - Your mobile network/service provider
 - The individual settings on your smartphone
- One or several of the factors listed above can result in your smartphone being incompatible with the Audi smartphone interface. We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of smartphone. For further information and support, please refer to the operating manual of your smartphone or contact its manufacturer.
- Please note that you must connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface in the front cabin to use the Audi smartphone interface.
- Wireless CarPlay* is not available in all countries.
- Wireless CarPlay* is available only if a specific option has been used to register your vehicle in the mobile network ⇒ page 203, *Embedded SIM card*, ⇒ page 203, *SIM card reader*. Make sure that the function

¹⁾ Not available in all countries.

⇒ [page 198, Switch on car phone/data](#)

module is switched on.

- If the smartphone you have connected has a voice control feature, you can control your smartphone using the external voice control system ⇒ [page 28](#).
- The menu language displayed on the MMI is based on the setting on your smartphone.
- Some of the MMI functions are not available when an Audi smartphone interface connection is active.
- You cannot use mobile devices via Bluetooth when an Apple CarPlay connection is active.

– If you have inserted your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* for making phone calls, the SIM card will be used exclusively for a data connection when the Audi smartphone interface and the car phone function* ⇒ [page 185](#) are active.

- Whether the Audi smartphone interface can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
- AUDI AG only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content of the services.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
Audi smartphone interface cannot be called up.	<p>Check the battery charge level on your smartphone. Check the USB cable and try using another one. Check whether Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in your country.</p> <p>Android Auto: Check that the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.</p>
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI fails.	<p>Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the Audi music interface ⇒ page 245.</p> <p>Apple CarPlay: Check that Apple CarPlay is activated on your smartphone.</p> <p>Android Auto: Check in the Android Auto app whether Android Auto allows new cars.</p> <p>Wireless connection: Call up the settings for Bluetooth and CarPlay on your smartphone. Delete your vehicle. Open the connection manager on the MMI ⇒ page 264. Delete your smartphone in the submenus Telephone 1 and Audi smartphone interface. Repeat the connection procedure. Restart the MMI ⇒ page 20. Restart your smartphone.</p>
Smartphone is not detected automatically.	<p>Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the Audi music interface ⇒ page 245.</p> <p>Check that the requirements for connecting a smartphone have been met.</p>

Further settings

System settings

Introduction

This chapter describes general settings. Information on specific settings can be found in the relevant chapter. The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Date and time

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > Date & time**.

Available settings:

- Set date and time automatically
- Date
- Time
- Date format
- Use 24h time format
- Automatic time zone
- Time zone
- Automatic summer time
- Manual summer time

Measurement units

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > Measurement units**.

Available settings:

- Speed
- Distance
- Temperature
- Pressure
- Consumption (electric motor)
- Capacity

Language and keyboard

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Language & keyboard**.

Language

You can change the language of the display, the navigation cues and the speech dialogue system.

Keyboard

Refer to **⇒ page 24**.

Sound

Important: An audio source must be selected.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Sound**.

Available settings:

- Treble
- Bass
- Balance/fader
- Speed-dependent volume control
- Subwoofer
- Surround level

Focus

You can optimise the sound playback for different positions in the passenger compartment.

3D sound

You can adjust the intensity of the 3D sound. The setting **Medium** provides optimum 3D sound for all sources.

Announcements and sounds

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Announcements & sounds**.

Available settings:

- Spoken cue volume
- Greeting sound



WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.



Note

The volume is automatically adjusted to a preset level when you switch on the MMI.

Bluetooth

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings > Bluetooth**.

Bluetooth

You can set whether the system is visible to other Bluetooth devices. To connect a new Bluetooth device, the **Visible** setting must be selected. If **Invisible** is selected, a Bluetooth connection can only be established to devices which have already been paired. You cannot connect a Bluetooth device if **off** is selected.

Bluetooth audio player

When this function is switched on, the profile will be connected automatically as soon as your Bluetooth audio player is within range.

Bluetooth name

The Bluetooth name is displayed and can be changed.

Software update

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > System maintenance > Software update**.
- ▶ If necessary, insert a storage medium with the update data into the appropriate drive
⇒ *page 252*.
- ▶ Press **Search for updates**.
- ▶ Select the appropriate update.
- ▶ Press **Next**.
- ▶ Follow the directions given on the display.



WARNING

- Only perform the installation when the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!
- In the event of installation errors, please contact a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.



CAUTION

The cost of the data connection for the software update is included in the price of Audi connect. Additional costs may be incurred if you use your own SIM card for the Internet

connection. Please always observe the information ⇒ *page 202*.

Note

The duration of this process depends on the size of the update.

Factory settings

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > System maintenance > Restore factory settings**.
- ▶ Select the functions individually, or:
- ▶ Select the option **Select all**.
- ▶ Press **Apply**. The factory settings will be restored. The key user will remain stored.
- ▶ To delete the key user as well, select **Remove key user**.
- ▶ To completely remove a smartphone which has been connected to the Audi smartphone interface, reset **Audi smartphone interface** and **Bluetooth**.

Note

- Please note that not only settings will be deleted when you do this; saved data may also be erased.
- The system may need to restart after the factory settings are restored. This may take a few seconds.

Connected devices

Connection manager

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connected devices**.

Possible menu items:

- **Telephone 1**
- **Telephone 2**
- **Data connection**
- **Audio player**
- **Wi-Fi hotspot**
- **Headset**

myAudi app

This function is available when the myAudi app is installed and running on your mobile device and the mobile device is connected to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.

Contacts

This function is available when your own mini SIM card for making and receiving calls is inserted in the SIM card reader*.

Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI
⇒ page 261.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information
⇒ page 202.

Connection options

Connecting a device

Important: The Bluetooth discoverability option must be activated for the MMI system
⇒ page 264 and the mobile device.

- ▶ Select a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▶ To search for and connect your mobile device, press the **New connection** button ⇒ page 186.
- ▶ Applies to SIM card reader: Insert your own mini SIM card into the SIM card reader*
⇒ page 188.

Selecting a connected device

- ▶ Select a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▶ Select your mobile device from the paired devices. The connection will be established.

Disconnecting a device

- ▶ Select a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▶ Press on the connected mobile device. The selected device will be disconnected from the MMI.

Further options

Additional options may be available depending on the function selected.

- ▶ Press and hold a Bluetooth device until the **Options** menu is displayed.
- ▶ Select an item from the menu.

Bluetooth profiles

You can switch the profiles on/off individually as desired.

Favourite*

Activate this function to set a paired mobile phone as the standard phone.

The standard phone will be prioritised over other Bluetooth devices and connected as soon as it is within range. This requires that the Bluetooth function of both the mobile phone and the MMI be switched on.

Legal information

General information

Software licence information can be found online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

Information on the MMI

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General**.

Licence periods

Version information

Legal information

Possible options:

- **Software information**
- **About Audi connect**

Audi smartphone interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Important: A smartphone must be connected to the MMI ⇒ page 261.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connected devices > Audi smartphone interface**.
- ▶ Press and hold an item until the corresponding options are displayed.
- ▶ Press **Legal information**.

Instrument cluster

Important: The vehicle must be stationary.

- ▶ Applies to vehicles with multi-function steering wheel: Select the vehicle functions tab on the instrument cluster \Rightarrow page 15.
- ▶ Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel until the display appears.

Possible options:

- **Motor code**
- **Software information**
- **Version information**

Head-up display

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Head-up display > Display contents > Show licence text on head-up display**. Information will be displayed for your licences.

Checking and topping up fluids

Motor compartment

General information

Extra caution is necessary when working on components in the motor compartment.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the motor compartment (e.g. when checking and refilling fluids). Always observe the warnings listed below and follow all normal safety precautions. The motor compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area .

! WARNING

- Switch off the ignition.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Select transmission position P (Park).
- Keep children away from the motor compartment.
- Never spill fluids in the motor compartment.
- Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.
- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the motor compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure.
- Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.
- Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.

! WARNING

The voltage of the high-voltage system is potentially lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted. A warning sticker is attached to the different parts of the high-voltage system. This is intended to warn you of the high voltage.

- Even when the ignition is switched off, potentially lethal voltages still exist in the high-voltage system.
- Never perform work on the orange-coloured high-voltage cables or the high-voltage components yourself. Work on the high-voltage system may only be performed by authorised workshops that have been approved for this type of work.

! CAUTION

When topping up fluids make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. Failure to do so will cause serious malfunctions or damage.



For the sake of the environment

Inspect the ground underneath your vehicle regularly so that any leaks are detected at an early stage. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected by a qualified workshop.

Opening/closing bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.



Fig. 177 Footwell: Release lever

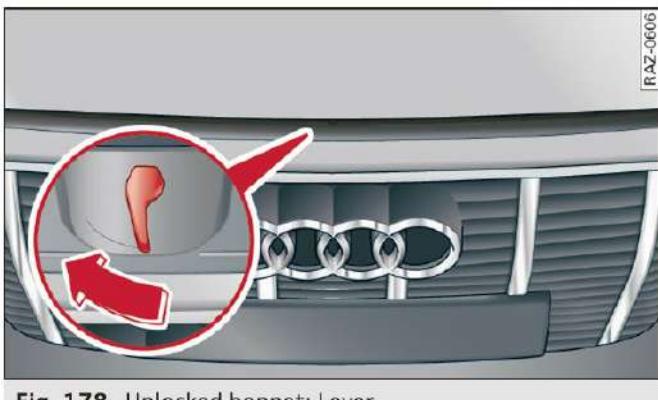


Fig. 178 Unlocked bonnet: Lever

The wiper arms should be resting on the windscreen: make sure they are not in a raised position. Otherwise the paint may get damaged.

Opening the bonnet

- ▶ With the door open, pull the lever ¹⁾ under the dashboard in the direction indicated by the arrow \Rightarrow Fig. 177.
- ▶ Lift the bonnet slightly \Rightarrow page 267.

- ▶ Press the release lever \Rightarrow Fig. 178 in the direction indicated (arrow). This will release the arrester hooks.
- ▶ Open the bonnet.

Closing the bonnet

- ▶ To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the spring pressure.
- ▶ Then let it drop into the catches; *do not press down*. \Rightarrow

Driver message

- Warning! Bonnet not locked. Stop vehicle and check bonnet lock**

The bonnet lock is not correctly engaged. Stop your vehicle without delay and close the bonnet.

WARNING

- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the motor compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- For safety reasons the bonnet must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving. After closing it always check that it is properly secured. It should not be possible to lift the front edges of the bonnet.
- Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

¹⁾ The symbol on the lever was still under development at the time of publication.

Motor compartment layout

Main components for checking and refilling

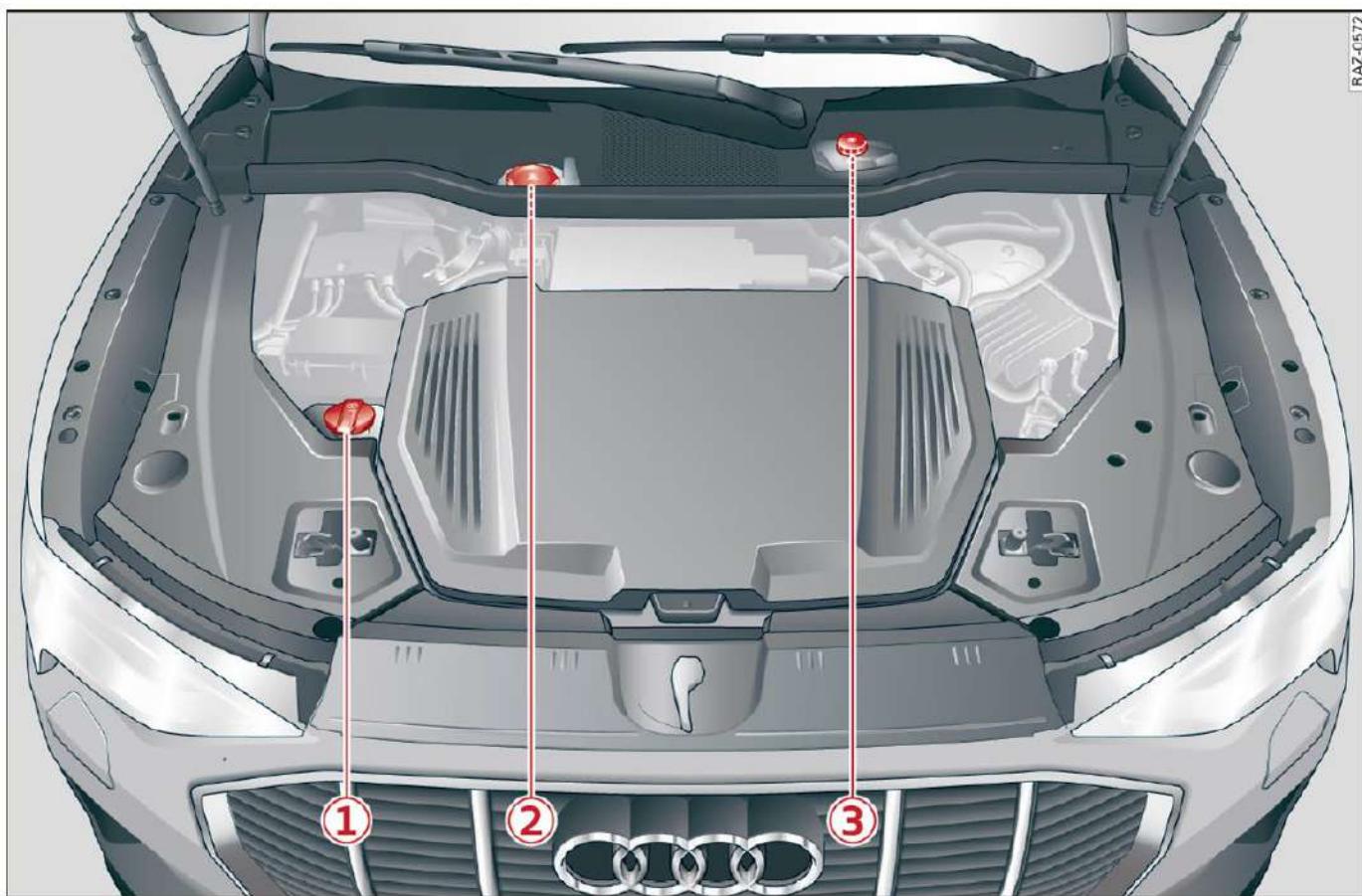


Fig. 179 Location of fluid containers

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 267.

- ① Windscreen washer container (⌚) ⇒ page 273
- ② Coolant expansion tank (⤒) under a cover ⇒ page 270
- ③ Brake fluid reservoir (○) under a cover ⇒ page 271

The coolant expansion tank and the brake fluid tank may be on the other side of the vehicle, depending on the export version.

Cooling system

Coolant

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of conditioned water and coolant additive. This coolant must not be changed.

We recommend that the coolant level should be checked occasionally.

Driver messages

- Electric drive: fault. Cooling system. Please contact workshop**

The coolant level is too low.

Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Do not add coolant. The vehicle must not be towed away. Obtain professional assistance.

- Electric drive: fault. Cooling system. Please contact workshop**

There is a fault in the cooling system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive contains anti-freeze and corrosion protection agent. Only use the following coolant additive:

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	TL 774 L

The amount of coolant additive which needs to be mixed with the water depends on the temperatures to be expected in the winter season. If the anti-freeze concentration is too low, the coolant can freeze and cause damage.

	Coolant additive	Frost protection
Hot regions	min. 40% max. 45%	min. -25 °C
Cold regions	min. 50% max. 55%	max. -40 °C

! CAUTION

- Have a qualified workshop check the cooling system before the winter season to make sure that the anti-freeze concentration is adequate for the conditions to be expected. This applies particularly if you drive into a colder climate zone.
- To prevent damage, do not use a different type of anti-freeze additive if the approved type of additive is not available. In this case use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive.
- Always top up with fresh, unused coolant.
- Radiator sealants must not be added to the coolant.

Coolant level

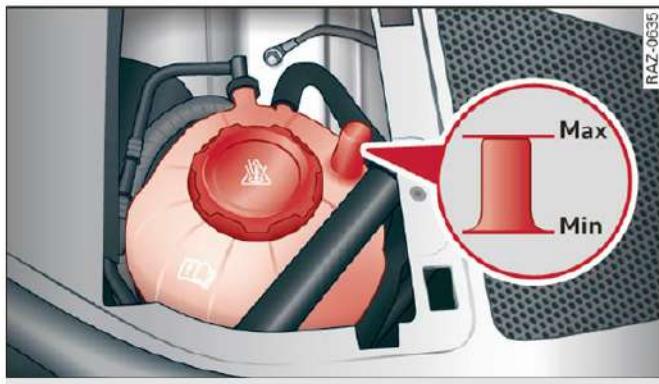


Fig. 180 Motor compartment: Coolant expansion tank

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 267, *General information*.

Checking the coolant level

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Switch off the ignition.

The coolant expansion tank is located underneath a cover in the plenum chamber. Slide the cover, which is located under the windscreen wiper on the front passenger's side, towards the windscreen and detach it ⇒ *page 269, Fig. 179*.
 ► Read off the coolant level using the float in the expansion tank. When the coolant is cold, the coolant level should be between the MIN and MAX marks ⇒ *Fig. 180*.

Topping up the coolant

Important: The coolant expansion tank must not be empty ⇒ !.

If you do need to top up the coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. We recommend mixing coolant additive with distilled water.

- Allow the coolant to cool down.
- Cover the cap on the expansion tank with a large, thick cloth.
- Carefully unscrew the cap anti-clockwise ⇒ !.
- Add coolant in the correct concentration ⇒ *page 269* until the float reaches the MAX mark.
- You should make sure that the fluid level remains stable. If necessary, add more coolant.
- Screw the cap on again tightly in the clockwise direction.

Any loss of coolant normally indicates a leak in the cooling system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the cooling system checked.

! WARNING

- The motor compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous place. Switch off the ignition and allow the cooling system to cool down. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇒ *page 267, General information*.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the motor compartment; there is a risk of being scalded. The cooling system is under pressure.

Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.

- The coolant and coolant additive can be a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children – risk of poisoning.

! CAUTION

- Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could have got into the cooling system – risk of damage! In this case, do NOT drive on. Obtain professional assistance.
- If you have to top up the coolant several times within a period of two months, you should drive to a qualified workshop – risk of damage!

Brake fluid

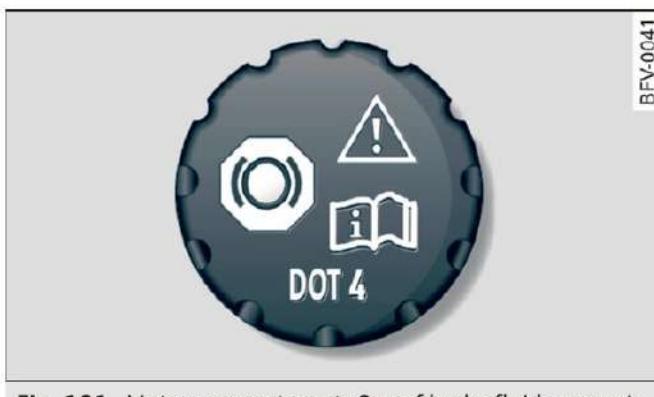


Fig. 181 Motor compartment: Cap of brake fluid reservoir

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 267, *General information*.

Checking brake fluid level

- ▶ Slide the cover, which is located under the windscreen wiper on the driver's side, towards the windscreen and detach it.
- ▶ Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇒ page 269, Fig. 179. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks ⇒ **!**.

The brake fluid level is also automatically monitored.

Driver message

- Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level**

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. Obtain professional assistance.

Having brake fluid changed

The brake fluid must be changed at regular intervals by a qualified workshop. The workshop can inform you about the service intervals for the brake fluid change.

! WARNING

- If the brake fluid level is under the MIN mark, the effectiveness of the brakes and therefore the safety of the vehicle may be impaired - risk of accident! Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if old brake fluid is left in the system. This would seriously impair the effectiveness of the brakes and the safety of the car – risk of accident!
- The brake fluid in your vehicle must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. If this brake fluid is not available, it is permissible to use an alternative high-quality brake fluid complying with the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6 (ISO 4925).

! CAUTION

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX mark, brake fluid may escape via the cap on the reservoir in certain circumstances and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Brake fluid must not be allowed to come into contact with the vehicle's body, otherwise it will attack the paintwork.

Electrical system

If the warning/indicator lamp / or lights up, there is a power supply or battery fault or a fault in the vehicle's electrical system.

- / **Electrical system: fault. Safely stop vehicle**

Switch off the ignition and do not drive on ⇒ **!**. Obtain professional assistance.

Electrical system: fault. No restart possible.

Please contact workshop

When you switch off the ignition it will not be possible to restart the vehicle. The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: fault. Please contact workshop

Switch off any electrical equipment you do not need. The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

If this message disappears after a while, the vehicle battery will have been sufficiently charged by the high-voltage battery while driving.

If the message does not disappear, you should drive to a qualified workshop.



WARNING

An electrical system fault can cause vehicle functions to fail, thus impairing the vehicle's stability – risk of accident! Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Battery

General notes on batteries

Because of the complexity of the power supply, any battery work, such as disconnection, replacement, etc. **must** be carried out by a qualified workshop $\Rightarrow \Delta$.

Several batteries using different technologies are fitted in your vehicle:

- 12 Volt vehicle battery (e.g. for basic supply)
 \Rightarrow page 273, *12 Volt vehicle battery*
- High-voltage battery (e.g. for electric drive, air conditioner) \Rightarrow page 111, *Introduction*

If the vehicle is not used for long periods

The 12 Volt battery gradually becomes discharged if the vehicle is left standing for long periods. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting or electric seat adjustment, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you activate the drive system.

Even though some systems are deactivated automatically, certain electrical equipment continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, this can result in total 12 Volt battery discharge. If the vehicle battery is allowed to discharge completely, an internal chemical reaction damages the battery irreparably. To avoid this, the battery should be recharged at least once a month by a qualified workshop \Rightarrow page 273. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

Winter conditions

Cold weather is very hard on the 12 Volt vehicle battery. For this reason, you should have the battery checked by a qualified workshop before the start of winter.



WARNING

Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.



CAUTION

If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the 12 Volt vehicle battery from frost. The battery will be damaged irreparably if it is allowed to freeze. Have the battery charged by a qualified workshop \Rightarrow page 273, *Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery*.

12 Volt vehicle battery

Meaning of warning symbols:

	Always wear safety glasses.
	Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and safety glasses.
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge!
	Always keep children away from batteries and battery acid.
	Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.

For the sake of the environment

Lead-acid batteries must not be disposed of together with ordinary household waste. They contain toxic substances including sulphuric acid and lead, in addition to recyclable materials. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery

It is not possible to run the vehicle if the 12 Volt vehicle battery is discharged. Do NOT charge the vehicle battery yourself. Please contact a qualified workshop.

CAUTION

Charging the vehicle battery requires specialist knowledge and specialist equipment.

- The vehicle battery must be charged by a qualified workshop only; otherwise serious damage to electronic components may result.
- The jump-start terminals in the motor compartment are intended for qualified personnel only.

Windscreen washer



B4M-0135

Fig. 182 Motor compartment: Cap of windscreen washer container

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 267, General information.

The container for the windscreen washer contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen and the headlight washer system ⇒ Fig. 182, ⇒ page 269. For the container capacity, please refer to ⇒ page 312.

Clean water should be used when topping up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets. Always add washer fluid to the water. In cold weather you should add anti-freeze to the water to prevent it from freezing.

Driver messages

Please add washer fluid

With the ignition switched off, top up the fluid for the windscreen washer and headlight washer system*.

CAUTION

- The anti-freeze concentration must be matched to the climate of the country in which you are driving. If the concentration is too high, damage to the car may result.
- Never put in radiator anti-freeze or other additives.
- Never use washer fluid which contains paint thinners or solvents as it can damage the paintwork.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.

There are two service interval display levels:

- **Inspection reminder:** After a certain mileage, a service reminder will appear in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on/off. The distance or time remaining will be shown briefly.
- **Inspection due:** When your vehicle is due for an inspection service, **Inspection due!** will appear briefly after you switch the ignition on/off.

Checking the service intervals

You can check the distance and time remaining until the next service inspection.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the display

Your qualified workshop resets the service interval display after each service.



CAUTION

Keeping to the correct service intervals is most important for the service life and residual value of the vehicle. Services must always be carried out promptly, even if the mileage is low.

Wheels

Tyres and rims

General notes

- ▶ Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.
- ▶ If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- ▶ Damaged rims or tyres must be replaced immediately.
- ▶ Keep grease and oil, etc. off the tyres.
- ▶ Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when refitted.
- ▶ When removed, the wheels should be stored flat in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.



WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum approved speed for your tyres. This causes the tyres to overheat and can even result in a blow-out – risk of accident!
- Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tyres lose their grip on black ice.



CAUTION

- Please note that summer and winter tyres are optimised for the prevailing road conditions at different times of year. We recommend that you use winter tyres during the winter months. At low temperatures, summer tyres lose their elasticity and grip, and braking performance also suffers as a result. Cracks can form in the tread block on summer tyres if they are used at very cold temperatures, and this can cause permanent damage to the tyres. An increase in rolling noise and tyre imbalance may result from this damage.

– Machined, polished or chrome-plated rims must not be used in winter conditions. The process used to manufacture these types of wheel rim does not provide adequate surface protection against corrosion, and the rims can be permanently damaged by road salt or similar.

New wheels or tyres

It is best to have all servicing of wheels and tyres performed by a qualified workshop, since they have the necessary special tools and replacement parts in addition to trained personnel.

- ▶ New tyres do not yet give maximum grip. When driving with new tyres, drive at moderate speeds and be especially careful during the first 500 km.
- ▶ All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and preferably the same tread pattern.
- ▶ Tyres should be replaced in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together).
- ▶ We recommend the use of Audi Genuine Tyres. If you wish to use other tyres, please note that the actual size can differ from the nominal size marked on the tyre ⇒ !.
- ▶ If you wish to purchase a different combination of rims and tyres than the ones fitted on the vehicle during production, it is advisable to consult a qualified workshop beforehand ⇒ !.

The sizes of the rims and tyres approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document¹⁾). The vehicle documents vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is registered.

If the spare wheel* is not the same type as the tyres fitted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or wide-section tyres) you should only use the spare wheel* if a puncture occurs, and then only for a short period of time. In this case, please drive with extra care. Refit a normal road wheel as soon as possible.

¹⁾ COC = Certificate of conformity

All four wheels must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as the driveline could otherwise be damaged by the differences in the wheel speeds. For the same reason, only use a spare wheel* which has the same rolling circumference as the normal road wheels.

Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the inner side of the wheel):

DOT ... 2218 ...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 22nd week of 2018.

Audi Genuine Tyres

Audi Genuine Tyres with the marking "AO" are specially matched to your Audi. When used properly, these tyres meet the highest standards in safety and handling. Your specialist retailer will be glad to provide more information.

! WARNING

- Do not use steel wheels which are 17 inches or larger. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- Use only tyre/rim combinations and matching wheel bolts approved by Audi. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use wheels from other vehicles. In certain cases, it is not even possible to use wheels from another vehicle of the same model.
- It is very important to ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre; with some makes of tyre the effective tyre size can differ significantly from the nominal dimensions, even though the tyres have the same size designation. Inadequate tyre clearance can result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle, causing a serious safety risk.
- Avoid running the car on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative,

you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.

- The use of run-flat tyres on your vehicle is NOT authorised! Unauthorised use can cause an accident or damage your vehicle.
- If wheel trims are fitted after the car is purchased, ensure that there is an adequate flow of air for cooling the brakes – risk of accident!

Tyre wear / damage

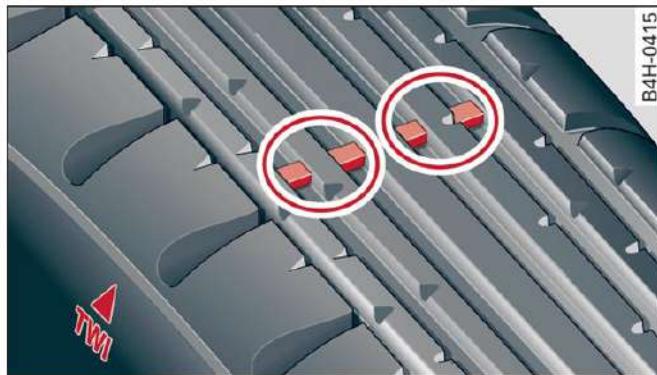


Fig. 183 Tyre tread: Tread wear indicators

Tyre wear

Inspect the tyres regularly for damage.

- The wear on under or over-inflated tyres is significantly higher.
- Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.
- If you notice excessive tyre wear, have the wheel alignment checked by a qualified workshop.
- Have your tyres rebalanced if steering wheel vibrations indicate an imbalance. Otherwise, the tyres and other parts of the vehicle may wear faster.

Tread wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators \Rightarrow Fig. 183 running across the tread at regular intervals. The letters "TWI" or triangles on the sidewall indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

The minimum tread depth¹⁾ is reached at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ⇒ .

Changing wheels round

Wheels should be changed round regularly to ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres. Fit the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice-versa. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

On tyres with a directional tread pattern, note the direction of rotation indicated on the sidewall ⇒ *page 296*.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce your speed immediately. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the car inspected.



WARNING

Insufficient tread depth or different tread depths on different wheels reduce safety. This is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of aquaplaning in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners. Braking is also adversely affected – risk of accident!

Tyre pressure

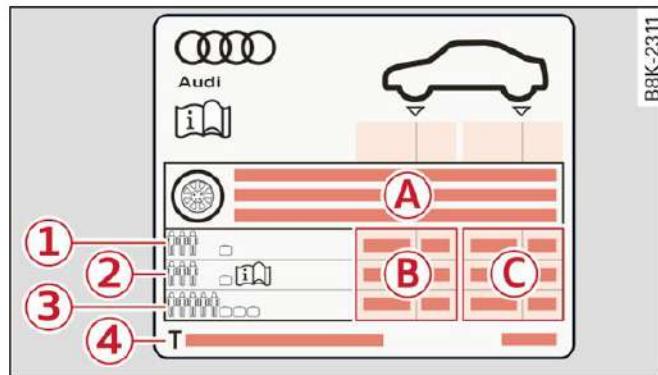


Fig. 184 B-pillar on driver's side: tyre pressure sticker

The correct inflation pressures for tyres fitted at the factory and for the spare wheel* are specified on a sticker. The sticker ⇒ *Fig. 184* is on the B-pillar (driver's side).

- Ⓐ Tyre size
- Ⓑ Tyre pressure for the front wheels
- Ⓒ Tyre pressure for the rear wheels
- ① Tyre pressure if vehicle is partially loaded
- ② Tyre pressure (comfort setting)* if vehicle is partially loaded (not available on all vehicles) If a maximum speed is given, it must not be exceeded.
- ③ Tyre pressure if vehicle is fully loaded
- ④ Tyre pressure for the spare wheel*

If you intend to drive the vehicle with a partial load, adjust the tyre pressures to the specified setting ①. However, if you prefer an extra-smooth ride you can select the comfort setting* ②. Should you wish to drive with a full load, you must increase the tyre pressure to the specified maximum ③ ⇒ .

Checking / adjusting the tyre pressures

- ▶ Check the tyre pressures at least once a month and, in addition, before starting a long journey.
- ▶ The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are *cold*. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.

¹⁾ Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

- ▶ Refer to the sticker \Rightarrow Fig. 184 for the correct tyre pressures according to the load the vehicle is carrying.
- ▶ If necessary, adjust the tyre pressure.
- ▶ Then store the new tyre pressures in the MMI \Rightarrow page 281, \Rightarrow page 283.
- ▶ Check the pressure of the spare wheel*. Keep the spare tyre inflated to the highest pressure approved for the tyre.

WARNING

Always adjust the tyre pressures to match your driving style and the load the vehicle is carrying.

- Excessive loads can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Under-inflated tyres flex more and can overheat at high speeds or when the vehicle is carrying a heavy load. This could cause a tyre blow-out and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Incorrect tyre pressures increase tyre wear and adversely affect vehicle braking and handling – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Replace any lost valve caps to prevent damage to the tyre valves.

For the sake of the environment

- Under-inflated tyres will increase the energy consumption.
- Driving with the tyre pressures adjusted to the comfort setting* may also result in increased energy consumption.

Note

We recommend always using the tyre pressure setting ① for partial loads and the setting ③ for full loads.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. A special adapter is required to turn the anti-theft wheel bolts* \Rightarrow page 294.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim flange* or bolted trim parts* consist of several components. A special technique is applied to bolt these components together. Never attempt to repair or dismantle them \Rightarrow .

WARNING

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened or serviced correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident! For the correct tightening torque, refer to \Rightarrow page 296, *After changing a wheel*.

- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs are always clean and free from grease.
- Only use wheel bolts that are designed to match the rims on your car.
- Always have damaged rims repaired by a qualified workshop. Never attempt to repair or dismantle rims yourself - risk of accident!

Loose wheel warning

Applies to: vehicles with loose wheel warning

Within the limits of the system, the loose wheel warning in the instrument cluster warns you if one or more of the wheels is no longer properly secured.

The loose wheel warning makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the vibration of the individual wheels. If the system detects one or more loose wheels, the driver is alerted by a warning lamp  and a message in the instrument cluster display. If only one wheel is affected, the display will indicate its position.

Driver messages

 **Wheel bolts loose. Please stop vehicle safely and check all wheel bolts.**

Loose wheel warning for at least one of the wheels \Rightarrow . Use the box spanner from the tool kit to check the wheel bolts of all the wheels right away. Have the tightening torques checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until \blacktriangleright

then, drive with caution. For the correct tightening torque, refer to \Rightarrow page 296, *After changing a wheel*.

Wheel check active. Please drive on carefully

After a driver message has been displayed and you have checked the wheel bolts, the system will check the wheels as you drive. This may take a few minutes.

Loose wheel detection: fault. See owner's manual

A system fault has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

- If a driver message is displayed, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the wheel bolts.
- Check your wheels for damage and have any damaged wheels inspected and/or replaced by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the driver message may not appear immediately.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the wheel bolts are properly secured.

Note

- If a malfunction occurs in the ESC system, the loose wheel warning may also be out of action.
- When driving with snow chains, a system malfunction can occur.

Winter tyres

In winter road conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. Due to their type of construction (width, rubber compound, tread pattern), summer tyres give less grip on ice and snow.

- Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.

- Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle.
- Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres \Rightarrow  *in General notes on page 275*. Your specialist retailer can advise you of the maximum speed for your tyres.
- After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures \Rightarrow *page 277*.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by ageing, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.



For the sake of the environment

Summer tyres should be fitted again as soon as possible; they give better handling on roads which are free of snow and ice. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce energy consumption.



Note

All-weather tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres. Please note that winter tyres with the  symbol are required by law during the winter season in some countries.

Snow chains

Snow chains will improve braking ability as well as traction in winter conditions.

- Snow chains can be used on the rear wheels only.
- Check that the snow chains are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; follow the instructions given by the manufacturer.
- Keep your speed below 50 km/h. Please observe the applicable local regulations.

For technical reasons, snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations (depending on model version):

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
8Jx19	34 mm	255/55

Only use snow chains with **fine-pitch links**. The links must not protrude more than 10.5 mm from the tyres (including tensioner).

You must remove the snow chains on roads which are free of snow; otherwise the vehicle's handling may be impaired and the tyres may be damaged.

WARNING

Unsuitable or incorrectly mounted snow chains can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Snow chains can damage the rim/hubcap* if they make direct contact with it. Remove the hubcaps* beforehand. Use snow chains which have a protective coating.
- If the air suspension* is defective you must NOT drive with snow chains as the vehicle is extremely low on the road. Driving with snow chains could cause severe damage to the wheel housings and other parts of the vehicle.

Note

When driving with snow chains, it may help to restrict the ESC ⇒ page 110.

Low-profile tyres

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a lower sidewall and provide a wider tread surface and rim diameter than other wheel/tyre combinations. This makes the car's handling more agile. However, the ride may be less comfortable on poor-quality roads and tracks, and rolling noise may be louder.

Low-profile tyres can be damaged more quickly than standard tyres, for example by heavy jolts, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. It is therefore particularly important to ensure that they are inflated to the correct pressure ⇒ page 277.

Drive with particular care on poor-quality roads to ensure that you do not damage the rims and tyres.

Make sure to check your wheels regularly (every 3,000 km) for damage such as blisters/tears on the tyre sidewalls or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy jolt, or if any damage occurs, you should have the rims and tyres checked and if necessary replaced by a qualified workshop.

Tyre wear occurs more quickly on low-profile tyres than on standard tyres.

Tyre pressure loss indicator

Tyre pressure loss indicator in instrument cluster

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

The tyre pressure loss indicator in the instrument cluster informs the driver if the tyre pressure is too low or a system malfunction has occurred.

The tyre pressure loss indicator makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the rolling circumference and the vibration of the tyres. If changes in the inflation pressure are detected on one or more tyres, the driver is alerted by an indicator lamp  and a message in the instrument cluster display. If only one tyre is affected, the display will indicate its position.

Each time you change a tyre, change the wheels round or change the tyre pressures on your vehicle (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa), you must store the new tyre pressures ⇒ page 281. Monitoring of the tyre pressures is based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle are given on the tyre pressure sticker ⇒ page 277, Fig. 184.

The rolling circumference and vibration can change and cause a tyre pressure warning if:

- The inflation pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
- The tyres have suffered structural damage.
- The wheels were changed or the tyre pressures were changed and the new tyre pressures were not stored ⇒ page 281.

- Only some of the worn tyres have been replaced.

Indicator lamps

– Loss of pressure on one or more tyres \Rightarrow Check and change or repair the tyre(s). Check and adjust the inflation pressures of all four tyres again and store the new tyre pressures \Rightarrow page 281.

TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) **Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual.** If **TPMS** appears and the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving, there is a fault in the system. Try to store the correct tyre pressures \Rightarrow page 281. In some cases the indicator lamp may not go out until you have driven the vehicle for a few minutes after storing the pressures. If the indicator lamp does not go out or if it comes on again after a short time, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

- If the tyre pressure loss indicator appears on the display, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyres and the tyre pressures.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct. For this reason you must check the tyre pressures regularly.
- Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the tyre pressure loss indicator may not appear immediately.

Note

- If a malfunction occurs in the ESC system, the tyre pressure loss indicator may also be out of action.
- When driving with snow chains, a system malfunction can occur.

– The tyre pressure loss indicator on your Audi is specially matched to "Audi Genuine Tyres" \Rightarrow page 275. We recommend that you use these tyres.

Storing tyre pressure settings

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

When you change a tyre or the tyre pressure on your vehicle, you must confirm the change on the MMI.

- Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load \Rightarrow page 277.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Tyre pressure > Store tyre pressures > Yes, store now.**

Note

Do not store the tyre pressures if you are driving with snow chains.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

The tyre pressure monitoring system keeps a check on the tyre pressures of the four road wheels while you are driving.

The system uses sensors to measure temperatures and pressures in the tyres. The sensors transmit the data to the control unit by radio.

The tyre pressure monitoring system displays the current pressures and temperatures of the tyres on the MMI while the vehicle is moving \Rightarrow page 282. In addition, it compares the current tyre pressures with the stored tyre pressures and warns you via the driver information system if it detects a discrepancy \Rightarrow page 282.

The system cannot check if the stored tyre pressures correspond to the recommended tyre pressures for your vehicle. You must store the new tyre pressures \Rightarrow page 283:

- after every adjustment to the tyre pressures, e.g. after changing the laden weight of your vehicle,
- after changing a wheel, or
- when using wheels with new wheel sensors.

WARNING

- The tyre pressure monitoring system helps the driver to monitor the tyre pressures. However, it is always the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyres are at the correct pressure.
- Never re-adjust the tyre inflation pressure when the tyre is hot. This can cause serious damage to the tyre or even a blow-out, which could result in an accident.
- Under-inflated tyres flex more than they should. This causes them to overheat. This can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out, which could result in an accident.
- The tyre pressure monitoring system cannot warn you of tyre damage or defects that could lead, for example, to a tyre blow-out. Perform a regular visual check of your tyres.

Note

- The sensors and valves do not have to be detached or changed round when fitting new tyres. Only the valve core needs to be replaced, and if necessary the valve and the electronic components in the wheel. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.
- After using the tyre repair kit*, the tyre pressure monitoring system may malfunction. Have the sensors renewed by a qualified workshop.

Displaying tyre pressures and temperatures

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

Important: The vehicle must be moving.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Tyre pressure > Display tyre pressures**.

The current tyre pressures are displayed in green, yellow or red on the MMI:

- **Green:** The tyre pressure is roughly the same as the reference value.
- **Yellow:** The tyre pressure is too low compared with the reference value.
- **Red:** The tyre pressure is much too low compared with the reference value.

The reference value is the last stored tyre pressure value ⇒ *page 283*.

Bear in mind that the tyre inflation pressure is also influenced by the temperature of the tyre. The tyre heats up while the vehicle is being driven and the tyre pressure will rise accordingly.

WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇒ *page 281*.

Note

The tyre pressures and temperatures are not shown in the display when the vehicle is stationary or during the initialisation phase. Horizontal dashes --- will appear instead of the pressure and temperature figures.

(!) Loss of tyre pressure

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

If the indicator lamp  lights up, the tyre pressure is too low compared with the reference value. Adjust the pressure of the relevant tyre(s) at the next opportunity and store the pressures ⇒ *page 283*.

If the indicator lamp  lights up and the message **Flat tyre! Safely stop vehicle. Please check all tyres and store pressures in MMI** appears, the tyre pressure has reached a critical level compared with the reference value. Avoid unnecessary braking and steering manoeuvres. Adapt your driving style to the prevailing conditions. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyre(s). If it is possible to continue driving, you should take the vehicle to a qualified workshop and have the defective tyre(s) repaired or replaced immediately.

WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇒ *page 281*.

Storing new tyre pressures

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

To enable the tyre pressure monitoring system to work reliably, it is important to store the correct pressure settings.

You should always store the tyre pressures if new sensors are fitted or after changing the pressures when carrying a different amount of passengers or luggage.

- ▶ Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇒ *page 277*, *Fig. 184*. Only adjust and store the inflation pressure of the tyres when they are at approximately ambient temperature. If the tyre temperatures are higher than the ambient temperature, the inflation pressures should be increased by approx. 0.2 bar above the pressures specified on the tyre pressure sticker.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Tyre pressure > Store tyre pressures > Yes, store now**.
- ▶ If the new tyre pressures do not appear on the MMI, you will need to drive for about 10 minutes so that the sensor signal from the wheels can be received again.

During this initialisation phase, **--.--** will be shown on the pressure and temperature display and some functions of the tyre pressure monitoring system will not be available. The system will warn you only if the pressure of one or more tyres is below the minimum reference pressure.

If the indicator lamp  lights up and the message **Tyre pressure: wheel change detected**. **Please check all tyres and store pressures in MMI** appears, the system has detected that the sensor positions have changed because of a wheel change or that new sensors have been fitted. Store the new tyre pressures.

WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇒ *page 281*.

Possible malfunctions

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

If the tyre pressure monitoring system is inoperative, the indicator lamp  will appear in the instrument cluster display together with the message **Tyre pressure: fault**. **See owner's manual**.

If the indicator lamp  appears after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving and the indicator lamp  flashes for approximately one minute and then remains lit, there is a fault in the system. This fault can have the following causes:

- If the display appears at the end of the initialisation process, this means that the system cannot detect the wheel sensors required to monitor the pressures. This can happen if one or more of the tyres fitted does not have a sensor or the sensors are incompatible.
- One of the wheel sensors or another component may not be working.
- Snow chains interfere with the signals transmitted by the sensors and can prevent the system from functioning properly.
- The tyre pressure monitoring system may be inoperative due to radio interference.
- Radio systems operating on the same frequency, such as radio headphones or two-way radios inside the vehicle, produce strong electromagnetic fields which cause temporary interference.

The indicator lamp  and the message will disappear as soon as the tyre pressure monitoring system is available again. If the fault persists and the indicator lamp  stays on, you should drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Care of vehicle and cleaning

General notes

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

The required car care products are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.



WARNING

- Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage health if misused.
- Car care products can contain toxic substances and must always be kept in a safe place out of reach of children.



For the sake of the environment

- Please choose care products that are not harmful to the environment.
- Surplus cleaning materials should not be disposed of together with ordinary household waste.

Washing the vehicle

The longer residues like insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap or road salt are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more damage they can do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in direct sunlight) further intensify the damage.

Before washing, soak heavy dirt with plenty of water.

Stubborn dirt, such as bird droppings or resinous tree sap, is best removed with plenty of water and a micro-fibre cloth.

After the period when salt is put on the roads, have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

High-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the spraying distance. Do not point the spray jet directly at the seals on the windows, doors, boot lid, bonnet or sun roof*, or at the tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors*, camera lenses* or the laser scanner*. Maintain a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not point the spray jet at the wall-holder clip*.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaner to remove snow and ice.

Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle or "dirt blasters".

The water must not be hotter than 60 °C.

Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle with water before washing.

Ensure that the windows and sun roof* are closed and that the windscreen wipers are switched off. Follow the car wash operator's rules and recommendations, especially if any accessories are attached to your vehicle.

If possible use a brushless car wash.

Washing by hand

Clean the car with a soft sponge or brush, starting on the roof and working down. Use solvent-free cleaning agents.

Washing matt-painted vehicles by hand

To avoid damaging the paintwork when washing the car, first remove any dust, sand and grit. Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are best removed using a special cleaning agent for matt-painted surfaces.

Apply the product with a micro-fibre cloth. Do not apply too much pressure to avoid damaging the paintwork.

Rinse the car thoroughly with water. Then clean the car with a neutral shampoo and a soft micro-fibre cloth.

Rinse the car with lots of water again and then let it dry in the air. Remove any water stains with a chamois.

WARNING

- Follow the rules and recommendations of the car wash operator and do not wash the vehicle with the ignition switched on – risk of accident!
- To avoid cutting yourself on sharp metal parts, always wear suitable protection when cleaning the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches.
- After the car has been washed, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads – risk of accident! The brakes should be dried by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent damage. Always use the electrical power control to fold the mirrors in/out on vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors*.
- Compare the track width of your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails for the wheels in the car wash. Otherwise

there may be a risk of damaging the wheel rims and tyres.

- Compare the height and width of your vehicle with the available height and width when entering and driving through the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the vehicle.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight – otherwise the paint can be damaged.
- The decals* must not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner – risk of damage!
- Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. – they can damage the surfaces.
- Matt-painted vehicle parts:
 - Do not use polish or wax – otherwise the paintwork can be damaged.
 - Never use car-wash programmes that include wax coatings. This could spoil the matt finish.
 - Do not attach any stickers or magnet labels to matt-painted parts as these could damage the paintwork when they are removed.



For the sake of the environment

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. This prevents oily water from getting into the public drains.

Notes on cleaning and care

For cleaning and care of individual components on the vehicle, please refer to the tables below. These are recommendations only. If you have

special questions or certain components are not listed, please ask your qualified workshop. Please also refer to the notes .

Cleaning the exterior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Wiper blades	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner  page 58
Headlights/ rear lights	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}
Sensors/ camera lenses	Dirt/deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning agent Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent
	Snow/ice	Small brush/solvent-free de-icer spray
Laser scanner	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free cleaning agent
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} ; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Paintwork	Paint damage	Refer to the vehicle data sticker for the paint no. and touch up using a paint pen ⇒ page 312
	Surface rust	Surface rust remover, apply wax afterwards; contact your qualified workshop with any questions
	Corrosion	Have it removed by your qualified workshop
	Water no longer pearls off clean paint-work	Apply wax (at least twice a year)
	Paint has lost its shine, gloss cannot be restored by waxing	Treat with a suitable polish; finish with wax coating if polish does not contain wax compounds
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent ^{a)} and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as painted parts ⇒ page 284
Decals	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}
Audi e-tron charging system	Dirt/deposits	Soft, dry cloth
Wall-holder clip	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent

^{a)} Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

Cleaning the interior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Windows	Dirt/deposits	Glass cleaning agent, then wipe dry
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)}
Plastic parts	Dirt/deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} ; solvent-free plastic cleaning agent if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed with a soft brush
Controls and displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft brush, then soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}
Seat belts	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} (allow to dry before retracting)

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Fabrics, leatherette, Alcantara	Surface dirt	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild detergent ^{a)}
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply mild detergent ^{a)} , dab off dissolved grease or colour particles with absorbent cloth; if necessary treat with water
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Special stain remover (dab off with absorbent fabric); if necessary treat with mild detergent ^{a)}
Natural leather	Fresh dirt/stains	Cotton cloth with mild detergent ^{a)}
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather Dried stains: grease removal spray
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather
	Care of vehicle	Regularly apply leather-care cream with ultra-violet protection and impregnating compound; if necessary use special colour leather cream
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as plastic parts

^{a)} Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreens. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.

WARNING

- Never immerse the Audi e-tron charging system or the connectors in water.
- Only clean the Audi e-tron charging system when the operating unit is fully disconnected from the electricity grid and from the vehicle.

ted from the electricity grid and from the vehicle.

CAUTION

– Headlights/rear lights

- Never clean the headlights/rear lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
- Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol. This could cause the glass to crack!

– Wheels

- Do not use paint polish or other abrasive agents.
- If the protective paint coating on the wheel rim is scratched or damaged by

stone chips etc., the damaged area should be touched up without delay.

– Camera lenses

- Never remove snow and ice from the camera lens using warm or hot water – danger of cracks appearing on the lens.
- Never clean the camera lens with cleaning agents which are abrasive or contain alcohol – danger of scratches and cracks.

– Laser scanner

- Never use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the laser scanner – danger of scratches and cracks.

– Windows and windscreen

- Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
- To avoid damaging the heating element, do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window.

– Ornamental trim/mouldings

- Do not use chrome cleaning agents.

– Paintwork

- The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before applying polish/wax – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
- Do not polish/wax the vehicle in direct sunlight – this can damage the paint!
- Do not attempt to polish out surface rust deposits – this can damage the paint!
- Remove cosmetics and sun lotion immediately – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.

– Decals

- Do not use any powder-based or abrasive cleaning products – risk of damage!
- Do not polish matt or printed decals – otherwise the decals could be damaged.
- Do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice from windows to which decals have been applied – this could damage the decals.

– Displays/instrument cluster

- Before cleaning, ensure that the displays and the instrument cluster are switched off and cool. To switch off the upper and lower display, select the following on the home screen of the MMI: **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > MMI > Screen cleaning**.
- The displays/instrument cluster and the surrounding trim must not be cleaned with a dry cloth – this can scratch the surfaces!
- Do not let any liquid get between the instrument cluster and the trim – risk of damage!

– Control consoles

- Do not let any liquid get inside the control consoles – risk of damage!

– Seat belts

- Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
- Do not use chemical cleaning agents, corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp instruments to clean the seat belts or their components – this can damage the belt webbing!
- If you find any damage to the belt webbing, the belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, have the belt in question replaced by a qualified workshop.

– Fabrics/leatherette/Alcantara

- Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leatherette/Alcantara fabrics.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
- Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
- Please make sure you close any velcro fasteners, e.g. on your clothing, as these could otherwise damage the upholstery.

– Natural leather

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leather fabrics.
- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
- Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
- Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

– Wall-holder clip

- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or fluids containing alcohol – risk of discolouration!

i Note

- It is much easier to remove dead insects if the car has been waxed recently.
- Regular waxing can help protect against surface rust.
- The decals undergo an ageing process (e.g. becoming brittle) due to various environmental factors. Excessive exposure to sunlight may cause irregularities in the colouring of the decals.

Taking the vehicle out of service

If you wish to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. Here you will receive advice on necessary measures, for example regarding corrosion protection, servicing and storage. In addition, please observe the general notes on the vehicle battery ⇒ page 272.

Mobility

General notes

- If your vehicle experiences technical problems, stop the car well away from moving traffic. If you have a flat tyre, you should park the car on a level surface. Be particularly careful if you are on a slope.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch the hazard warning lights on.
- Put on your high-visibility vest.
- Place the warning triangle in a visible location.
- Instruct all passengers to leave the car when it is safe to do so. They should wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).



WARNING

You should note the procedure described above for your own safety and that of other road users.

Equipment

High-visibility vest

Applies to: vehicles with high-visibility vest

The factory-supplied high-visibility vests are located in the storage compartment in the front right door.

In some countries, the high-visibility vests may be stowed elsewhere.

Warning triangle

Applies to: vehicles with warning triangle



Fig. 185 Boot lid: Warning triangle

The factory-supplied warning triangle is attached to the inside of the boot lid.

- To open the cover, turn the catch ⇒ Fig. 185 and fold down the cover.
- Pull the warning triangle out of the retainer.

The retainer on the boot lid is specifically designed to hold the warning triangle supplied as an Audi Genuine Accessory.

First-aid kit

Applies to: vehicles with first-aid kit

The first-aid kit is located underneath the floor panel or behind the right storage net in the luggage compartment. If required, the storage net can be pushed down along the guide rails on the sides.

Fire extinguisher

Applies to: vehicles with fire extinguisher

The factory-fitted fire extinguisher is accommodated in the front passenger's footwell.

In some countries, the fire extinguisher may be stowed elsewhere.

- Open the strap to remove the fire extinguisher.
- To secure the fire extinguisher, put it in the holder and fasten the strap.

Check how the fire extinguisher works before you need to use it. The instructions for use are shown on the fire extinguisher.

WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not secured properly it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must be replaced with a new one after use or once it has reached its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.

Tool kit / tyre repair kit / jack

Applies to: vehicles with tool kit, tyre repair kit and jack



Fig. 186 Motor compartment: Storage area

Please refer to the safety notes \Rightarrow page 267, *General information*.

The tool kit, jack*, tyre repair kit* and compressor* are stored under the floor panel in the storage area in the motor compartment.

- ▶ Open the storage compartment \Rightarrow page 82.
- ▶ Take out any objects stowed in the compartment.
- ▶ Take out the floor panel.

i Note

The jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Tyre repair kit

Preparations

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- ▶ Please refer to the important safety notes \Rightarrow page 290.
- ▶ Apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Select transmission position P.
- ▶ Check whether a repair is possible using the tyre repair kit \Rightarrow page 291.

Using the tyre repair kit

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit



Fig. 187 Tyres: Irreparable tyre damage

Repaired tyres are only suitable for temporary use. Replace the damaged tyre as quickly as possible \Rightarrow **A**.

If the tyre was damaged by an object, such as a nail, do not remove it from the tyre.

The tyre repair kit can be used at outside temperatures down to -20°C .

The tyre repair kit must NOT be used:

- On cuts and punctures larger than 4 mm ①
 \Rightarrow Fig. 187.
- If the wheel rim has been damaged ②.
- if you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre ③.

In these cases, you should seek professional assistance.

! WARNING

- Please note that the tyre repair kit is not suitable for use in every situation and should only be used as a temporary measure.
- Do not allow the sealant to come into contact with your eyes, skin or clothing.
- If you do come into contact with the sealant immediately rinse the eyes or skin affected with clean water.
- Make sure you do not breathe in the fumes.
- If you accidentally swallow tyre sealant, immediately rinse your mouth thoroughly and drink a large amount of water. Do not induce vomiting. Immediately contact a doctor.

- Change clothing immediately if it becomes soiled with the tyre sealant.
- If any allergic reactions should occur get medical help immediately.
- Keep the sealant away from children.
- After using the tyre sealant the tyre pressure monitoring system* may malfunction or display incorrect values. Therefore, please drive carefully to the next available qualified workshop.

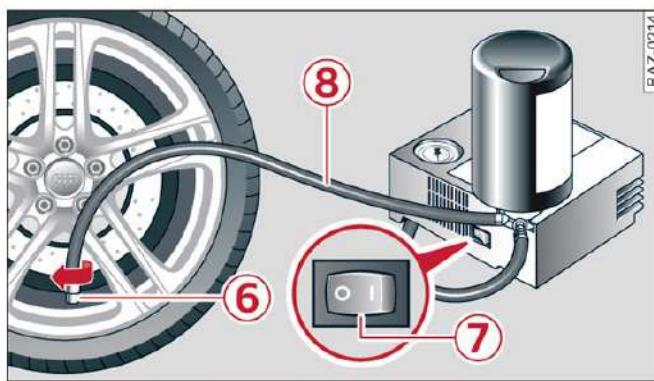


Fig. 189 Connecting the tyre repair kit (example)

i Note

- If sealant should leak out, leave it to dry. When it has dried, you can pull it off like a piece of foil.
- Observe the expiry date stated on the sealing compound can. Have the sealing compound exchanged by a qualified workshop.
- Interference to the radio reception may occur when using the compressor.
- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Tyre repairs

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

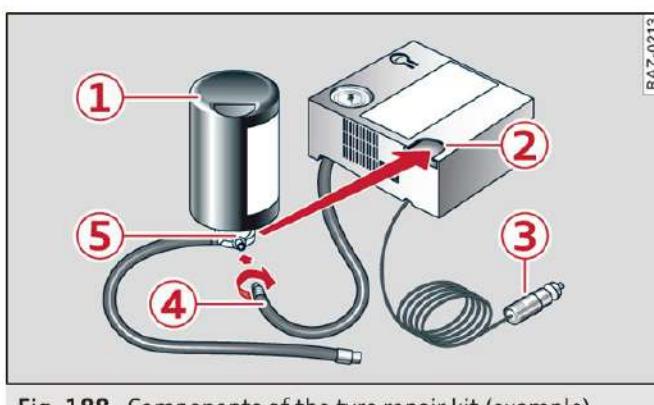


Fig. 188 Components of the tyre repair kit (example)

Important: The tyre repair kit must be at hand and ready for use ⇒ page 291.

Setting up the tyre repair kit

- Pull the connector (3) and the compressor hose (4) out from the bottom of the housing.
- Screw the compressor¹⁾ hose (4) onto the flange (5) of the tyre sealant can (1).
- Place the tyre sealant can (flange facing down) into the opening (2) on top of the compressor.
- Unscrew the dust cap from the valve of the damaged tyre.
- Screw the filler hose (8) onto the valve (6) ⇒ Fig. 189.
- Insert the connector (3) ⇒ Fig. 188 into a socket in the vehicle.
- Switch on the ignition.

Inflating the tyre

- Move the switch (7) ⇒ Fig. 189 on the compressor to position I.
- Pump the tyre up to 2.0 to 2.5 bar and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.
- If the tyre pressure remains lower than the value specified above, remove the filler hose and drive 10 metres forwards or backwards at a low speed so that the sealant can spread evenly in the tyre. Now pump the tyre up again ⇒ !.

! WARNING

- Please observe the manufacturers' safety notes on the compressor and the instructions supplied with the tyre sealant can.

¹⁾ Even if the compressor on your vehicle looks slightly different, it will be operated in much the same way.

- If it was not possible to build up a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar within 6 minutes this means that the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
- Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound.

i Note

Do not use the compressor for longer than 6 minutes at a time, as it could overheat. When the compressor has cooled down, you can use it again.

After repairing a tyre

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- ▶ Affix the sticker "max. 80 km/h", which is included in the tyre repair kit, to the dashboard where the driver will see it.
- ▶ After about 10 minutes, stop to check the tyre pressure.
- ▶ If tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar, the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.

! WARNING

After repairing a tyre please note the following points:

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
- Vehicle handling could be impaired.
- If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.



For the sake of the environment

A used can of sealing compound can be returned to your qualified workshop for disposal.

i Note

After repairing a tyre, remember to buy a new tyre sealant can at a qualified workshop.

Changing a wheel

Preparations

Certain preparations must be made before you change the wheel.

- ▶ Please refer to the important safety notes ⇒ *page 290*.
- ▶ Apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Select transmission position P.
- ▶ If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.
- ▶ Take out the tools ⇒ *page 291* and spare wheel ⇒ *page 296*.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with air suspension: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Air suspension: wheel change**.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.

! WARNING

If you have to use the jack* on a gradient or off-road track, block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of the wheel to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Removing the wheel bolt caps



Fig. 190 Wheel: Wheel bolts with caps

- ▶ Slide the plastic clip (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) onto the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇒ *Fig. 190*.
- ▶ Pull off the cap using the plastic clip.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

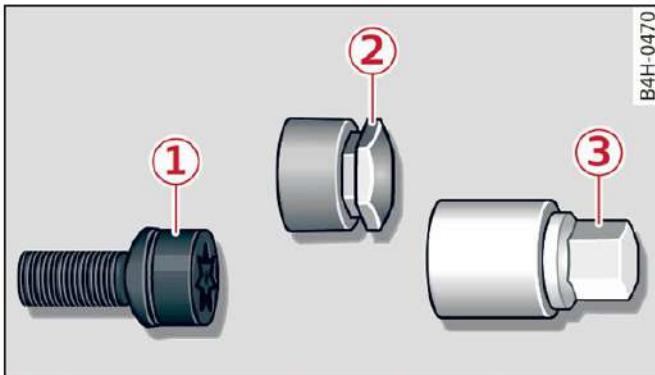


Fig. 191 Anti-theft wheel bolt with wheel bolt cap and adapter

To release the anti-theft wheel bolts, you need a special adapter (provided in the vehicle's tool kit).

- ▶ Remove the cap (2).
- ▶ Slide the adapter (3) all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt (1).
- ▶ Fit the box spanner (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the adapter (3).
- ▶ Loosen the wheel bolt ⇒ page 294.

i Note

Note the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – not in your vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, give the code number to your Audi dealer.

Loosening wheel bolts



Fig. 192 Wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

- ▶ Fit the box spanner (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the wheel bolt¹⁾.
- ▶ Turn the wheel bolt approx. one turn anti-clockwise. To apply the necessary torque, hold the box spanner near the end. If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

! WARNING

To avoid accidents, the wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack*.

Raising the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with jack

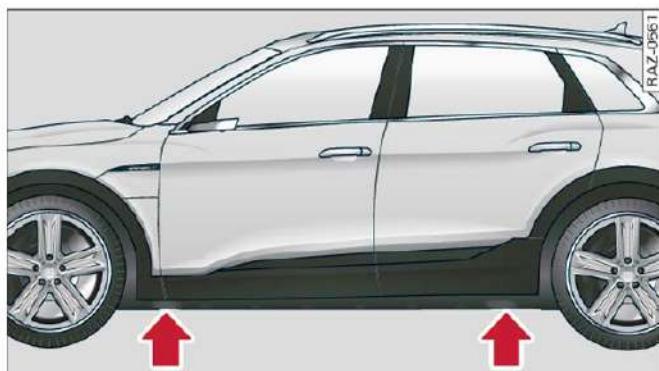


Fig. 193 Sills: markings

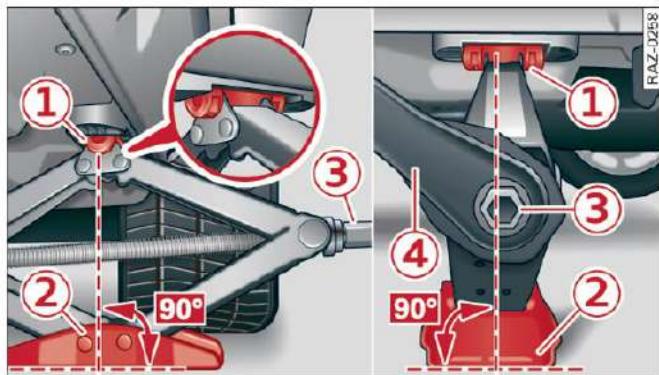


Fig. 194 Door sill: Applying the jack under the door sill

- ▶ Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground (the jack can be found in the vehicle's tool kit). If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface

¹⁾ An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇒ page 294.

- (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping \Rightarrow !.
- ▶ Locate the marking on the door sill closest to the wheel being changed \Rightarrow Fig. 193. The jacking point is located behind the marking on the door sill.
 - ▶ Wind up the jack under the jacking point on the underside of the door sill using the hexagon socket ③ (from the tool kit) until the cylindrical part of the arm ① \Rightarrow Fig. 194 of the jack is below the plastic mount.
 - ▶ Align the jack so that the cylindrical part of the arm ① fits in the plastic mount under the door sill and the base plate ② of the jack is flat on the ground. The base plate ② must be positioned vertically underneath the jacking point ①.
 - ▶ To raise the vehicle, insert the correct side of the ratchet handle ④ (from the tool kit) onto the hexagon socket ③.
 - ▶ Move the ratchet handle ④ back and forth in a clockwise direction until the wheel is clear of the ground.

! WARNING

- Ensure that no one is in the vehicle before you lift it - risk of injury!
- Make sure the jack is stable. If the ground underneath the jack is slippery or soft, the jack can slip or sink in - risk of injury!
- Use only the jack supplied with your vehicle to raise the vehicle. If you use a jack from a different vehicle, your vehicle may slip off the jack - risk of injury!
- Apply the jack only at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill and align it properly. Otherwise there is a risk of injury since the jack can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.
- Do not use the jack provided with the vehicle to lift any other vehicles or loads - risk of injury!
- Applies to vehicles with air suspension: The height of the parked vehicle can change as a result of variations in temperature and loading.
- Never switch on the power unit when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!

– If work has to be done under the vehicle, ensure that it is safely supported on suitable stands – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

The vehicle must not be lifted up on its sills. Only apply the jack at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill. Otherwise your vehicle could be damaged.

Taking off / putting on the wheel



Fig. 195 Wheel: Hexagonal socket for turning wheel bolts



Fig. 196 Wheel: Mounting pin in wheel bolt hole nearest to the top

Taking off the wheel

- ▶ Using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle (provided in the vehicle's tool kit), unscrew the top wheel bolt and place it on a clean surface \Rightarrow Fig. 195.
- ▶ Screw in the mounting pin (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) by hand in place of the wheel bolt \Rightarrow Fig. 196.
- ▶ Then unscrew the other wheel bolts.
- ▶ Take off the wheel \Rightarrow !. The mounting pin stays where it is.

Putting on the wheel

When putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern, refer to [page 296](#).

- ▶ Put on the wheel, using the mounting pin to guide it into place .
- ▶ Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly using the hexagonal socket.
- ▶ Then unscrew the mounting pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt lightly.
- ▶ Carefully lower the car with the jack*.
- ▶ Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence with the box spanner.

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. Before putting on the wheel, inspect the condition of the wheel and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before mounting the wheel.

WARNING

- Please observe the important safety information and notes on [page 275](#).
- Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. It is not possible to tighten the bolts to the required torque using the hexagonal socket - risk of accident!

CAUTION

When removing/fitting the wheel the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced and refitted as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction.

After changing a wheel

- ▶ Fit the hubcap or wheel bolt caps back on, as required.
- ▶ Put the tools and jack back in the luggage compartment.
- ▶ If the replaced wheel will not fit into the spare wheel well, stow it safely in the luggage compartment [page 82](#).
- ▶ Check the tyre pressure of the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
- ▶ Adjust the tyre pressures and store them in the MMI [page 281](#) or [page 283](#).
- ▶ The wheel bolts should be tightened to 160 Nm. Have this checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution.
- ▶ Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Collapsible spare wheel

Applies to: vehicles with collapsible spare wheel

The collapsible spare wheel is only intended for temporary use over short distances. After use, have it checked as soon as possible by a qualified workshop and, if necessary, replaced.

Please note the following restrictions when using the collapsible spare wheel. The collapsible spare wheel is designed specifically for this model. For this reason, do not use a collapsible spare wheel from a different type of vehicle.

The collapsible spare wheel is stowed under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

Important: The tools [page 291](#) and compressor must be unpacked and ready for use.

Removing

- ▶ Take hold of the handle and fold back the floor panel.
- ▶ Turn the plastic knob anti-clockwise.
- ▶ Take off the cover.
- ▶ Take out the collapsible spare wheel.

Pump up the collapsible spare wheel prior to use. ▶

Inflating

- ▶ Unscrew the valve cap from the collapsible spare wheel.
- ▶ Screw the compressor hose onto the tyre valve of the collapsible spare wheel.
- ▶ Plug the connector of the compressor into an electrical socket on the vehicle and switch it on.
- ▶ Run the compressor until the tyre pressure reaches the value listed on the tyre pressure sticker ⇒ *page 277, Fig. 184* ⇒ !.
- ▶ Screw the valve cap back onto the valve.

Stowing

- ▶ Unscrew the valve cap to release the air from the tyre.
- ▶ Wait a few hours before placing the collapsible spare wheel back in the spare wheel well. Only then can it be folded back completely and stowed safely.
- ▶ Then screw the valve cap back onto the valve.
- ▶ Secure the collapsible spare wheel with the cover and plastic knob.
- ▶ Fold the floor panel back down.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the collapsible spare wheel.

Should you have a puncture on one of the rear wheels when using snow chains, fit the collapsible spare wheel in place of one of the front wheels. You can then attach the snow chains to the wheel taken from the front and use this wheel to replace the punctured rear wheel.



WARNING

- Use the collapsible spare wheel in an emergency only and take extra care when driving if it is more than 6 years old.
- The compressor and the hose can become very hot during operation (risk of burns).
- The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the collapsible spare wheel – an incorrectly inflated tyre can increase the risk of accident.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h when the collapsible spare wheel is fitted – higher speeds can cause an accident.

- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering when the collapsible spare wheel is fitted – risk of accident!
- Never use more than one collapsible spare wheel on the vehicle at the same time – risk of accident!
- No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyres) may be fitted on the rim of the collapsible spare wheel.



CAUTION

Turn the compressor off after 6 minutes at the latest (risk of overheating). Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes before using it again.



Note

The ESC must not be restricted or deactivated when driving with the collapsible spare wheel ⇒ *page 110*.

Jump-starting

It is not possible to run the vehicle if the 12 Volt vehicle battery is discharged. The vehicle must not be jump-started in this case. Please contact a qualified workshop.



CAUTION

The vehicle battery must not be supplied with power via conventional jump leads.

- You must not jump-start your own vehicle nor any other vehicle; otherwise serious damage to electronic components may result.
- The jump-start terminals in the motor compartment are intended for qualified personnel only.

Towing away

General notes

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required to perform the work correctly.

Towing requires some experience. We recommend contacting a towing service to have the vehicle taken away.

You should only have your broken-down vehicle towed away by another vehicle in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow another vehicle.

Notes on towing vehicles

- The vehicle must not be towed faster than 50 km/h.
- The vehicle must not be towed further than 50 km.

Additional note on towing by breakdown truck

The vehicle may only be towed with the front axle raised. Do not wrap any kind of chain or rope around the brake lines.

Tow-bar / tow-rope

The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing, particularly if a tow-rope is used.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing off-road, there is always a risk that the anchorage points may be overloaded.

It is easier and safer to tow the vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of elastic synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

- There must not be anyone in the vehicle if it vehicle is taken away by a breakdown truck or a special car transporter - risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- If the warning lamp  lights up, there is a fault in the cooling system. The vehicle must not be towed away. The power unit may be seriously damaged.
- If it is not possible to tow the vehicle as described above (e.g. due to a gearbox failure or if the vehicle has to be towed further than 50 km), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.
- Towing a vehicle with the wrong axle raised can cause serious damage to the gearbox.
- The vehicle must not be towed in order to charge the high-voltage battery (through recuperation), as this can cause serious damage both to the vehicle towing and to the vehicle being towed.
- For technical reasons, the vehicle must not be tow-started.

i Note

- Switch Audi pre sense* off \Rightarrow page 165 if the vehicle is being loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. or being towed away. This prevents the pre sense* system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.
- Please observe the relevant local regulations when towing away.

Towing away

Please observe the important safety warnings on \Rightarrow page 298.

Preparations

- Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose \Rightarrow page 299, \Rightarrow page 299.
- Please ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted as it could otherwise unscrew the towline anchorage while the vehicle is being towed.
- The hazard warning lights of both vehicles must normally be switched on \Rightarrow page 52. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.



WARNING

- There is a high risk of accidents when towing, as the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.

Towing vehicle (front)

- ▶ Ensure that the tow-rope is taut before you drive off.
- ▶ Accelerate with particular care.
- ▶ Avoid unnecessary braking and manoeuvres.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

- ▶ Ensure that the ignition is switched on, the steering wheel is not locked, and that you can operate the turn signals, horn or windscreen wipers if necessary ⇒ .
- ▶ The brake servo only works when the ignition is switched on. The power steering only works when the ignition is on and the vehicle is moving¹⁾. Otherwise you will need to press the brake pedal significantly harder and apply more force to move the steering wheel.
- ▶ Release the parking brake ⇒ *page 99*.
- ▶ Select transmission position N.
- ▶ Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.

WARNING

If the vehicle has no electrical power, do NOT use a tow-bar or tow-rope to tow the vehicle.

Front towline anchorage

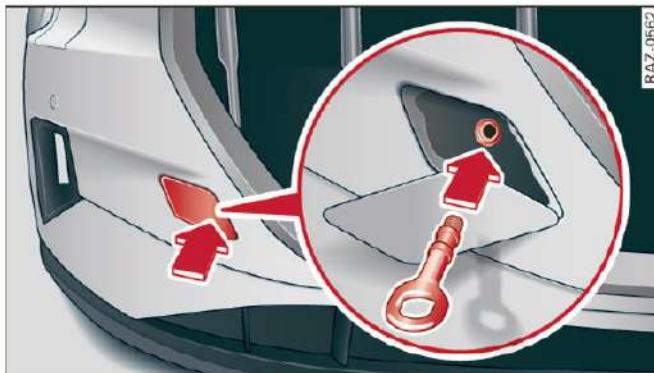


Fig. 197 Front bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located on the right side of the front bumper.

- ▶ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle's tool kit ⇒ *page 291*.

- ▶ Firmly press the cap inwards ⇒ *Fig. 197*. The cover cap will be released from the bumper.
- ▶ Screw the towline anchorage into the screw connection as far as it will go and tighten it with the box spanner.
- ▶ Put the towline anchorage back in the tool kit after use.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing - risk of accident!

Rear towline anchorage

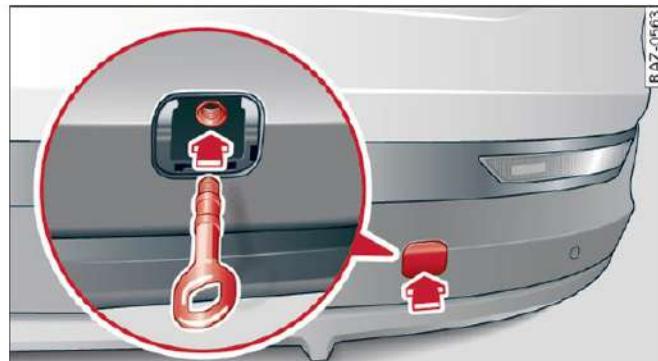


Fig. 198 Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

Vehicles with towline anchorage

Vehicles which do not have a factory-fitted towing bracket* have a connection for a towline anchorage on the right side of the rear bumper.

- ▶ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle's tool kit ⇒ *page 291*.
- ▶ Firmly press the cap inwards ⇒ *Fig. 198*. The cover cap will be released from the bumper.
- ▶ Screw the towline anchorage into the screw connection as far as it will go and tighten it with the box spanner.
- ▶ Put the towline anchorage back in the tool kit after use.

Vehicles with towing bracket*

- ▶ Fit the ball joint on the towing bracket ⇒ *page 130*.

¹⁾ Important: The vehicle battery must be adequately charged.

- ▶ Attach the tow-bar or the tow-rope to the towing bracket.

Vehicles which have a factory-fitted towing bracket* do **not** have a screw connection at the rear for the towline anchorage.

 **WARNING**

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing - risk of accident!

 **CAUTION**

To avoid damaging the towing bracket*, only use tow-bars with suitable attachments. If a tow-bar is not available, a tow-rope may be used.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Changing fuses

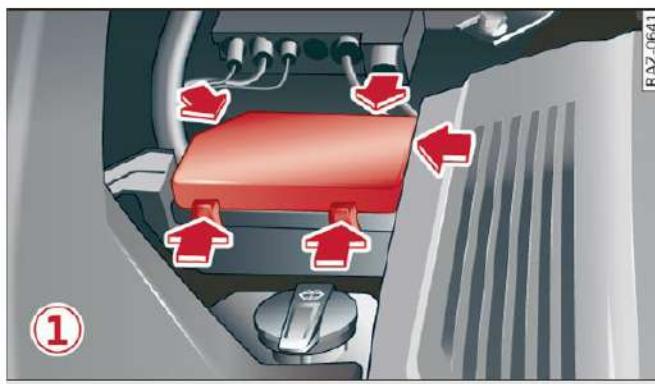


Fig. 199 Motor compartment, right-hand side: Fuse cover

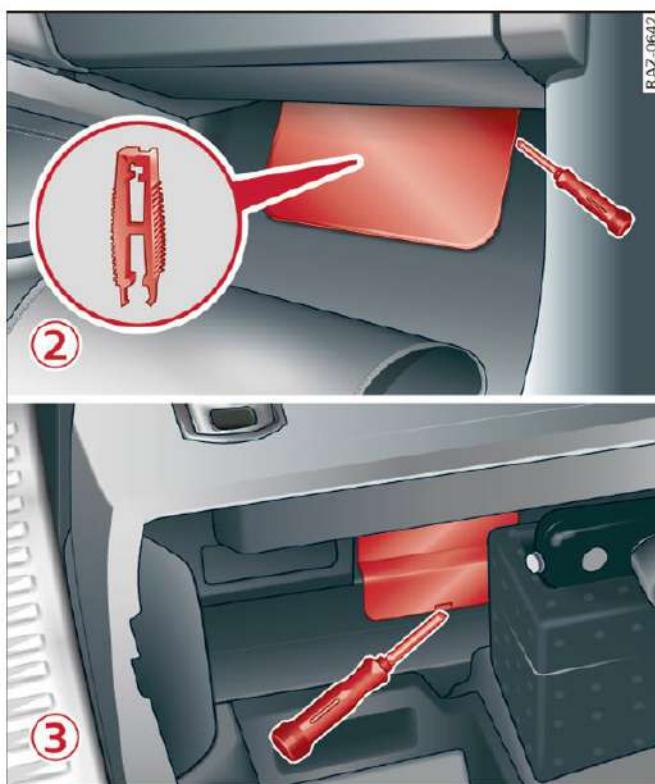


Fig. 200 Front passenger's footwell: Cover and clip. Luggage compartment, left-hand side: Cover

To see whether a fuse has blown, check whether the metal strip has melted.

The fuses are located in the motor compartment (right-side) ①, in the front passenger's footwell ② and underneath the luggage compartment (left-side) ③.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▶ Refer to the following tables to identify the fuse for the failed component.

- ▶ Take the screwdriver out of the vehicle tool kit → page 291.
- ▶ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ▶ If fitted, pull the coloured plastic frame out of the fuse carrier.
- ▶ Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- ▶ Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same current rating.
- ▶ Attach the plastic frame again if removed earlier.
- ▶ Put the cover back on.

Colour coding for fuses

Colour	Rating in amperes
black	1
grey	2
purple	3
pink	4
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red	10
light blue	15
yellow	20
white or transparent	25
light green	30
blue-green	35
orange	40

⚠ WARNING

Never attempt to repair a fuse or replace a blown fuse by fitting a fuse with a higher ampere rating. This could damage the electrical system - risk of fire!

! CAUTION

If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

i Note

– Free fuse locations are not shown in the tables below.

- Some of the items of equipment listed in the tables below are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

Fuses on right side of motor compartment

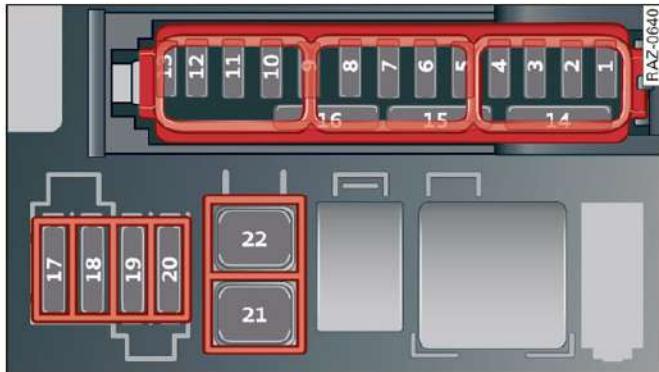


Fig. 201 Motor compartment, right-hand side: Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Charging flap
2	Air conditioner compressor
5	Charging system
7	Electric motor
10	Voltage transformer
11	Charging system
13	Thermal management
14	Control unit for wipers
15	Coolant pump (high-voltage battery)
16	Wipers
17	Thermal management
18	Thermal management
19	Thermal management
22	Stabilisation control (ESC), thermal management

Fuses in front passenger's footwell

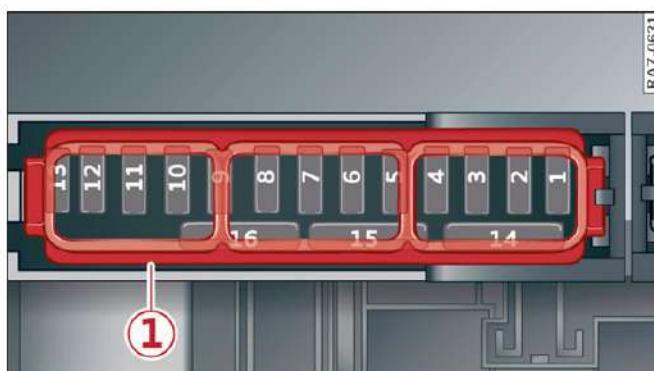


Fig. 202 Front passenger's footwell: Fuse carrier with plastic frame

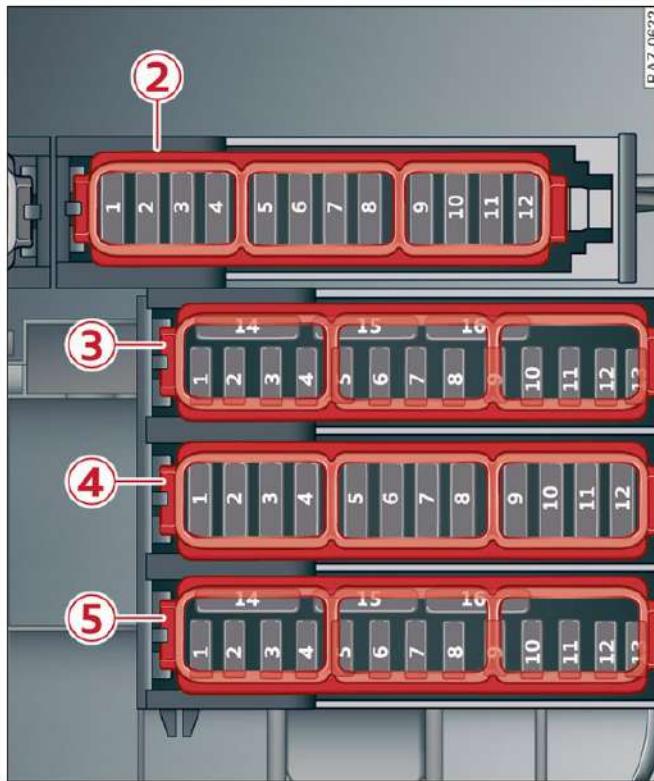


Fig. 203 Front passenger's footwell: Fuse carriers with plastic frames

The fuse allocation on RHD vehicles is a mirror image.

Fuse carrier ① (black)

No.	Electrical equipment
3	Air conditioner, perfume, ioniser
4	Head-up display
5	Audi music interface
6	CD/DVD drive, dash panel
7	Steering column lock
8	MMI display (front)
9	Instrument cluster

Fuse carrier ① (black)

10	Volume control
11	Light switches, switch panels
12	Steering column electronics
15	Steering column adjustment
16	Steering column electronics

Fuse carrier ② (black)

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Seat heating, front
2	Air conditioner
3	Headlight electronics (left-side)
4	Panorama sun roof
5	Door control unit, front left
6	Sockets
8	Dash panel
9	Headlight electronics (right-side)
10	Windscreen/headlight washer system
12	Parking lock

Fuse carrier ③ (red)

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Anti-theft alarm system
2	Drive system control unit
3	Emergency call system
4	Selector lever
5	Horn
6	Parking brake
7	High-voltage battery, battery monitoring control unit
8	Interior light (headliner)
10	Airbag control unit
11	Lumbar support (front left)
12	Diagnostic connector, light sensor/rain sensor
14	Door control unit, front right
15	Air conditioner, vehicle body electronics
16	Air conditioner blowers

Fuse carrier ④ (brown)

No.	Electrical equipment
2	Belt tensioner (front right)

Fuse carrier ④ (brown)

4	Belt tensioner (front left)
5	Air suspension
6	Right headlight
7	Left headlight
8	Door control unit, rear left
9	Door control unit, rear right
10	MMI infotainment control unit
11	Control unit for driver assist systems
12	Gateway control unit (diagnostics)

Fuse carrier ⑤ (black)

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Front seat ventilation, interior mirror, diagnostic connector
2	Sockets
3	External sound/interior sound
7	Active accelerator
8	Night vision assist
9	Adaptive cruise assist
11	Intersection assist, driver assist systems
16	Rear Seat Entertainment

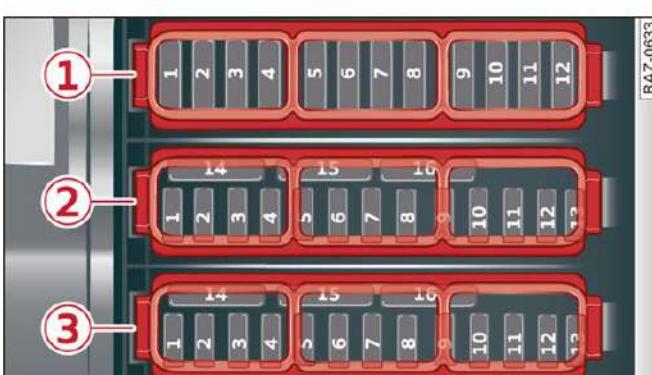
Fuses in luggage compartment

Fig. 204 Luggage compartment, left side: Fuse carrier with plastic frames

Fuse carrier ① (black)

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Towing bracket
3	Rear belt tensioner (front passenger's side)
4	Rear belt tensioner (driver's side)
5	Electrical socket for towing bracket

Fuse carrier ① (black)	
6	Towing bracket light (left-side)
8	Seat heating, rear
9	Rear light
11	Central locking system, rear window blind
12	Boot lid

Fuse carrier ② (black)	
No.	Electrical equipment
	Not used

Fuse carrier ③ (black)	
No.	Electrical equipment
1	Control unit for driver assist systems
2	Telephone, roof aerial
3	Lumbar support (front right)
4	Side assist
5	Service disconnect
6	Tyre pressure monitoring system
7	Air conditioning (interior)
9	A/C control console (rear)
10	TV tuner
11	Virtual exterior mirrors, vehicle unlocking/start (NFC)
12	Garage door opener
13	Reversing camera, surround view cameras
14	Rear light
15	Towing bracket light (right-side)

Bulbs

Note

Your vehicle is fitted with maintenance-free headlights and rear lights. If a bulb does need to be changed, however, please contact an Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Data protection

Image recording

Monitoring of surroundings

Applies to: vehicles with monitoring of surroundings

Certain vehicle functions require the detection and evaluation of the path travelled by the vehicle. For this purpose, permanently installed cameras detect objects in the area in which the vehicle is moving (e.g. obstacles, barriers). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the relevant control unit to do this.

The images from the camera are not recorded or stored. They are immediately transmitted to the relevant control unit in the vehicle for processing. The control unit analyses the current image from the camera using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software determines anonymous technical dimensions, such as the distance to objects. This control unit evaluates these technical dimensions and may allow the supporting systems to control the vehicle.

Note

The live images from the cameras and the anonymous technical dimensions are stored for a few seconds in the short-term memory. They do not allow any conclusions to be drawn on the identity of persons or vehicles.

Data recorders

General notes

Many of your vehicle's electronic components contain data recorders. These data recorders store technical information temporarily or permanently.

Vehicle control units

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control units for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. During normal driving, these vehicle control units store data which workshops require for diagnosis and repairs. This involves only certain data which are collected or stored for a very limited time when a control unit registers a system

event. No sounds, conversations or images from the vehicle are stored.

The data may be related e.g. to the vehicle's speed, direction of travel and brake system, or to the behaviour of the restraint systems in the event of an accident. Reading out and downloading the stored data requires special devices that must be connected directly to the vehicle.

On-board diagnostic system (OBD)

There is a diagnostic connection for reading out various control units and the event memory located in the driver's footwell. Information regarding the operation and status of the vehicle's electronic control units is stored in the event memory. The event memory should only be read out and erased by a qualified workshop.



WARNING

- Improper use of the connection socket for the on-board diagnostic system can lead to malfunctions which could cause in accidents and serious injuries.
- Only have the motor data read out by a qualified workshop.

Event data recorder

Event data recorder

Your vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR), the main purpose of which is to make it possible to reconstruct the behaviour of the vehicle systems in an accident situation. To this end, the EDR stores relevant data (e.g. seat belt status, speed, airbag parameters, time of accident etc.) pertaining to a period of a few seconds before an accident. This only occurs in accident or near-accident situations.

These data can help to better understand the circumstances in which accidents and injury occur. Please note that data from your vehicle will only be stored in the event of an accident or a near-accident situation. No data are stored in normal driving conditions. Furthermore, no personal data on the occupants or the accident location are stored. It is possible, however, that third parties, e.g. law enforcement agencies, may correlate the ►

stored data with personal data as part of an accident investigation.

Reading out data from the EDR memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the EDR. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Audi will not access the recorder remotely.

Assist system monitor

This vehicle is equipped with an assist system monitor (ASM) which collects data not stored by the EDR in the event of an accident. The main purpose of the ASM is to make it possible to reconstruct the role and behaviour of driver assist systems in accident situations. In addition to the data stored by the EDR, the ASM stores data related to the driver assist systems from a period of a few seconds before an accident or near-accident situation. The data recorded by the ASM will depend on the vehicle's equipment and may comprise information such as: status information from the driver assist systems (e.g. switched on/off, system events etc.), regulating input (e.g. from ESC, ABS, Audi pre sense* etc.) and driver assist system settings (e.g. speed settings).

Reading out data from the ASM memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the ASM. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the ASM.

Use of data

Audi can read out or provide third parties with the information stored in the data recorders or other similar data in the following circumstances in particular:

- If the vehicle keeper or lessee gives their permission; or
- If the police have made an official request; or
- If ordered to do so by a court of law or government agency.

Audi may, insofar as this is legally permitted, also use the data for analysis with respect to vehicle operation and safety performance, or may provide the data to third parties for research purposes.

Information transmitted

Data collection

Depending on the country, AUDI AG may collect data for the following purposes: optimisation of products and offers, public safety, provision of Audi connect vehicle control services and adjustments in line with customer expectations. The data collected and sent to AUDI AG for these purposes may include, for example, various data regarding technical functions, environmental data, driving data and usage data. The data are sent from the vehicle at the time they are collected.

Applies to MMI: Please refer to the MMI for further information on data collection. On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS > General > Legal information > About Audi connect**.

If you wish to opt out of data transfer to AUDI AG, please contact an Audi dealer for further information. You can also switch off data transfer in the privacy settings.

Privacy settings

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS > (Data management) > Privacy**.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

Location, vehicle and personal data are transmitted when using Audi connect services.

Allow data transmission

When the function is switched on, the data module for the use of all Audi connect services is active.

When the function is switched off, the data connection is restricted/deactivated (depending on equipment version). Most of the Audi connect services will be unavailable.

The following interfaces, if fitted, are not affected by this setting: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi connection, Audi smartphone interface (ASI), Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (e-tron), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC).

You can deactivate individual services for your vehicle at my.audi.com when you are logged into the vehicle as the key user \Rightarrow page 31. These deactivated services will not be available in the vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

CAUTION

Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used to connect to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Note

- If data transmission is restricted, data will still be transmitted to check licence periods.
- If data transmission is restricted, this has the following effects on the data transmitted by the Audi connect services and the emergency call function, if fitted.
- The emergency call function remains available in its entirety and data will still be transmitted.
- No data will be transmitted if an online roadside assistance call is activated; however a telephone call will be placed.
- If an Audi connect key has been assigned to a user, data will still be transmitted to ensure that the security of the service is maintained.
- Stored destinations (favourites, last destinations, etc.) will only be stored in the vehicle. If you allow data transmission again, these destinations will be synchronised with your myAudi account. If you do not want these destinations to be synchronised, delete them before you allow data transmission again.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

AUDI AG collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you provide in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the individual Audi connect infotainment services are provided and function properly. You can use our myAudi platform, for example, to activate further Audi connect infotainment services and to transfer data to and from your vehicle. You must register once in order to be able to connect your vehicle to the platform. AUDI AG collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you must provide for the registration as is necessary to ensure that AUDI AG can provide the services and that you can use them. Using the myAudi platform and your mobile phone, you can transmit data to your vehicle for the functions of your Audi connect infotainment services and allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from your vehicle.

If you activate certain information services included in your Audi connect infotainment portfolio, you can use the corresponding functions directly in your vehicle after entering your personal identification data (for example for access to social networks). In this case we pass on your identification data to the corresponding service provider. You can then access your personal content via a secure communication channel. This content is displayed and can be used in the vehicle. AUDI AG will not store your personal content. The necessary connection data are processed and used in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the services are provided and function properly.

Further information can be found on the MMI and the Internet at www.audi.com.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS > General > Legal information > About Audi connect.**

Information on EU Directive 2014/53/EU

Simplified EU declaration of conformity

Your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the Directive 2014/53/EU insofar as this is required by law. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available on the Internet at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo 

Further customer information

You can also find additional information e.g. product identifications at the Internet address www.audi.com/generalinfo.

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Maintenance, repairs and technical changes

Please read the safety information ⇒ page 267, *General information* and ⇒ page 294, *Raising the vehicle*.

General notes

The increasing complexity of vehicle technology and the applicable safety and environmental regulations mean that your options for performing repairs and making adjustments to your vehicle yourself are very limited.

Proof of servicing may be a condition for a claim within the guarantee/warranty period to remain valid.

Have work on your vehicle performed by a qualified workshop. This will help ensure that the functions, performance and safety of your vehicle are not impaired.

Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to require as little maintenance as possible. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance work is necessary to ensure that your vehicle remains safe, cost-efficient and reliable. Please contact a qualified workshop for precise information on vehicle maintenance.

Certain maintenance work should also be performed between the specified intervals in severe operating conditions, such as extremely low temperatures or in areas with a high dust concentration.

Special tools, measurement instruments and other workshop equipment available to qualified workshop staff are usually required for maintenance work or repairs. These guarantee that your vehicle and all its systems will function properly and be both reliable and safe. If work is not performed correctly, this may affect the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may even invalidate any claims you may wish to make under the guarantee/warranty.

Technical changes

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components, software, wiring or data transfer in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, systems which are not directly affected may also be impaired by the faults. This can seriously impair your vehicle's safety and lead to excessive wear of its components.

Depending on the country, this may also invalidate the vehicle's type approval. Qualified workshops have full information on the manufacturer-approved repair methods. They can also give advice regarding official regulations for the vehicle.

Some convenience features, such as one-touch signalling, single door unlocking and display messages can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If any functions are reprogrammed, the information in this Owner's Manual may no longer be relevant for the functions that have been changed. We recommend having the reprogramming carried out and approved by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

If maintenance work, repairs, or technical changes to the vehicle are not performed properly, this can cause serious injuries - risk of accident!

WARNING

A vehicle's motor compartment is a potentially hazardous area and working there can lead to serious injuries.

- Always exercise extreme caution when working in the motor compartment. Always keep to the generally accepted safety procedures and use your common sense. Never put yourself at risk of injury.
- Do not perform any work in the motor compartment if you do not fully understand the procedure or if you do not have suitable information, tools and equipment.
- If you are not sure how to proceed, have the work performed by a qualified workshop.

Work which is not performed properly can cause serious injuries.

CAUTION

- Maintenance work, repairs or technical changes which are not performed properly can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. corrosion).
- If emergency repairs have been performed, have your vehicle checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- Audi cannot assume any liability for damage to the vehicle caused due to these conditions not being adhered to.



For the sake of the environment

- You can play your part in looking after the environment through regular vehicle maintenance.
- Technical modifications to the vehicle can have an adverse effect on energy consumption.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when individual components or the entire vehicle are scrapped. This is particularly important because pyrotechnic components are fitted in various areas of the vehicle, such as in the airbags and belt tensioners. Your authorised dealer is familiar with the regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.

Note

Because of your vehicle's aluminium body concept, all servicing, repairs or other work on the car body must be carried out by an Audi workshop or a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. This ensures that the necessary repairs or servicing are performed properly and that only Audi Genuine Parts are installed on your vehicle. Serious damage (e.g. corrosion damage) can be caused to your vehicle if non-genuine replacement parts or accessories are used or if repairs are not performed properly.

Accessories and replacement parts

Take advice from a qualified workshop before purchasing accessories and replacement parts. We recommend that you have all work performed by an Audi workshop using Audi Genuine Parts and that you use Audi Genuine Accessories.

We cannot judge the reliability and suitability of non-genuine products or assume responsibility for them, even if they have been approved by an officially recognised technical testing authority or by the relevant authorities.

Any **retrofitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the vehicle and/or the way it is driven must be approved for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's approval symbol). A cruise control system is an example of this type of equipment.

If any **additional electrical equipment** is connected, but does not serve to control the vehicle itself, it must bear the **CE** mark (manufacturer conformity declaration in the European Union). Examples of such equipment include refrigerator boxes, computers or ventilator fans.

WARNING

- The use of non-approved accessories or the wrong replacement parts can cause damage to the vehicle - risk of accident!
- Never secure accessories (such as telephone brackets or cup holders) on airbag cover panels or in the areas around the airbags; this could cause injury if the airbag is triggered.
- Do not use number plate holders on the front bumper which vary from the holder fitted at the factory, and do not fit any additional holders.

CAUTION

An external aerial installed properly is required in order to operate radio transmitters inside the vehicle. If this is not the case, the increased electromagnetic radiation can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Please observe

the relevant local regulations and follow the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle data sticker

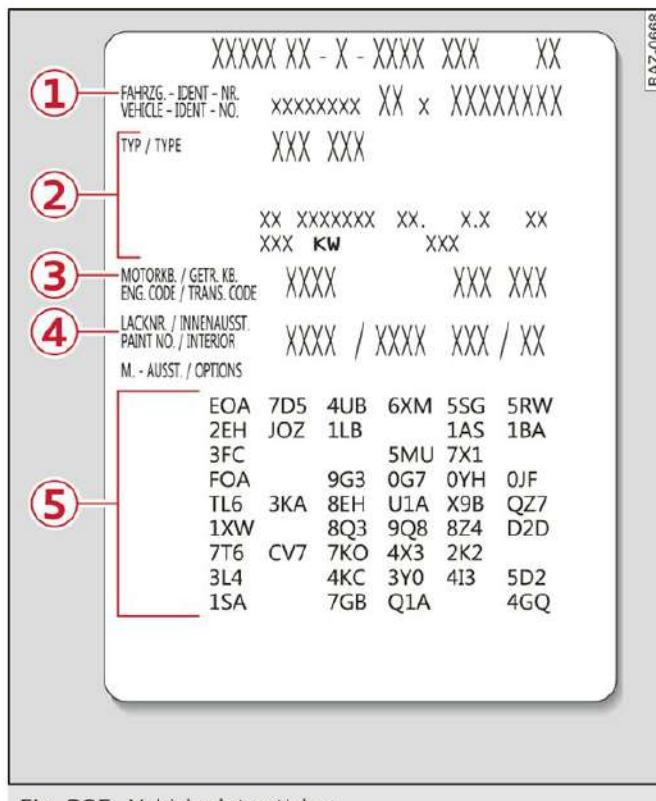


Fig. 205 Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker \Rightarrow Fig. 205 is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

One section of the vehicle data sticker is attached to the inside cover of this Owner's Manual before the vehicle is handed over.

The sticker lists the following data:

- 1** Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
- 2** Vehicle type / motor power / gearbox type
- 3** Motor and gearbox code
- 4** Paint No. / Interior equipment No.
- 5** Optional equipment codes

Chassis number

The chassis number can be found at the following locations:

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Car information**.
- On the vehicle data sticker

- At the front of the vehicle underneath the windscreen
- On the right side of the motor compartment

Type plate

The type plate can be found on the inside of the vehicle body on the right-hand side when the bonnet is open. Vehicles for certain export countries have no type plate.

Explanation of technical data

The figures for some markets may vary due to special equipment as well as different export versions and test methods.

Please note that the details listed in the vehicle's registration documents can be taken as correct.

Note

In cases where technical data are not listed, the figures were not available at time of publication.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

The figures were not available at time of publication.

Capacities

The figures were not available at time of publication.

Weights

The figures were not available at time of publication.

Motor data

The figures were not available at time of publication.

A

- A/C cooling mode 88
 ABS
 see Anti-lock brake system 108
 Accelerator 95
 Accessories 310
 Active lane assist
 see Lane departure warning 159
 see Lane guidance 159
 Adaptive cruise assist 150
 Cleaning sensors 285
 Predictive control 148
 Adaptive cruise control
 see Adaptive cruise assist 150
 Adjusting brightness 53
 Airbag system 70
 Deactivating passenger's airbag 73
 Air conditioner 87
 Air conditioning when unlocking 91
 Air distribution setting 89
 Air outlets, adjusting 90
 Air quality display 90
 Air recirculation mode 89
 Air suspension 106
 Air transport 111
 Alarm system
 see Anti-theft alarm system 36
 All-season tyres
 see All-weather tyres 279
 All-weather lights 49
 All-weather tyres 279
 Alpine roads 102
 AMI
 see Audi music interface 245
 Android Auto
 see Audi smartphone interface 261
 Anti-dazzle interior mirror 54
 Anti-freeze
 Coolant 269
 Windscreen washer system 273
 Anti-lock brake system 108
 Anti-theft alarm system 36
 Anti-theft wheel bolts 294
 Apple CarPlay
 see Audi smartphone interface 261
 Armrest (front centre) 64
 Ashtray 80
 ASR
 see Traction control system 108
 At home
 see Home address 225
 Audi adaptive light 49
 Audi connect
 see connect 202, 203
 Audi connect key 32, 39
 Safelock mechanism 36
 Audi connect key card 32, 37, 40
 Audi drive select 105
 Audi e-tron charging system (compact) 121
 Activating/deactivating PE conductor monitoring 121
 Changing/attaching mains cable 125
 Hooking in 126
 Limiting charging current 121
 Status and fault indicators 122
 Audi music interface 245
 Audio files 246
 Audi online manuals 6
 Audi phone box 189
 Audi pre sense 161
 Driver messages 165
 Audi side assist
 see Side assist 166
 Audi smartphone interface 261
 Legal information 265
 Audi virtual cockpit
 see Instrument cluster 14
 AUTO
 Air conditioner 88
 Automatic headlights 49
 Automatic air conditioner
 see Air conditioner 87
 Automatic wash and wipe 57
 Auxiliary air conditioner 90
 Auxiliary heating
 see Auxiliary air conditioner 90
 Average consumption 17
 Average speed 17
 Axle loads 312

B

- Background lighting 53
Bag hooks 82
Bandages
 see First-aid kit 290
Battery
 Charge level display 14
 Charging (12 Volt vehicle battery) 273
 High-voltage battery 111
 Vehicle battery (12 Volt) 272
 Winter conditions (12 Volt vehicle battery) 272
Battery (vehicle)
 see High-voltage battery 111
Battery, charging (mobile devices) 189, 245
Bicycle rack (trailer) 130
Blind (sun roof) 45
Blower 88
Bluetooth 204
 Audio player 243
 Connecting a device 265
 Connecting a mobile phone 186
 Deleting a device 265
 Device overview 264
 Disconnecting a device 265
 Displaying profiles 265
 Selecting a device 265
 Setting a favourite 265
Boost function 95
Boot
 see Luggage compartment 82
Boot lid
 Close button 42
 General information 41
 Opening/closing 41
 Opening/closing electrically 42
 Opening with foot gesture 43
 Releasing manually 43
Box spanner 291
Brake fluid
 Checking brake fluid level 271
Brakes 98
 Brake assist 109
 Brake fluid 271
 Emergency braking function 100
 New brake pads 98

Browser

- see Media centre 247
Bulbs, changing 304
Business address 225

C

- Calling up media 246
Call list 191
Capacities
 Washer fluid reservoir 312
Caps for wheel bolts, removing 293
Car care
 Washing/cleaning 284
Car keys 32
Car phone
 Serial number (IMEI) 198
 Switching on 198
 Using car phone function 185
Car transport 106, 111
Car wash 284
Central locking switch 34
Central locking system 32
 Adjusting settings 33
 Auto Lock 33
 Boot lid 41
 Convenience key 38
 Convenience open/close 45
 Driver messages 34
 Locking/unlocking doors manually 35
 Remote control key 38
 Vehicle keys 38
Certification 308
Changing bulbs 304
Charging
 see Power sources 80
Charging cable for public charging stations 120
Charging clip
 see Wall-holder clip 126
Charging indicator 116
Charging station search
 see Special destination 219
Charging system
 see Audi e-tron charging system (compact) 121
Charging time 113
Chassis number 312

Child lock	
DVD	251
Electric windows	44
Rear air conditioner console	44
Rear doors	44
TV	258
Child restraint system	73
Attaching with ISOFIX	77
Securing to top tether anchorage	78
Securing with seat belt	79
Cigarette lighter	80
CI+ (TV)	259
Cleaning	284
Cleaning/treating natural leather	287
Cleaning Alcantara	287
Cleaning carbon parts	286, 287
Cleaning controls and displays	286
Cleaning fabrics	287
Cleaning leatherette	287
Cleaning plastic parts	286
Clock	17
Closing	
Blind (sun roof)	45
Bonnet	268
Boot lid	41
Boot lid with foot gesture	43
Convenience close	45
Panorama sun roof	45
Power-operated boot lid	42
Windows	44
Coat hooks	82
Cockpit dimming	53
Collapsible spare wheel	
Inflating	296
Colour code	312
Coming home/leaving home	
see Entry/exit lights	51
Compartments	82
Conference calls	194
connect	202
Data plans	210
Data protection (infotainment)	307
Emergency call	212
Infotainment	203
Infotainment services	205
Online roadside assistance	213
Vehicle control services	207
Connected devices	
Device overview	264
Connections	
see Media	242, 246
Connect key	
see Audi connect key	39
Consumer information	309
Consumption	
Lowering	97
Consumption (energy)	17
Contacts	
Adding a destination	226
Calling up (business card)	192
Importing/exporting	199
Memory capacity	199
Updating in MMI	199
Convenience aux. A/C	91
Convenience key	32
Convenience close	45
Safelock mechanism	36
see also Vehicle keys	37
Convenience open/close	
Windows/panorama sun roof	45
Cooling mode	88
Cooling system	
Anti-freeze	269
Coolant level	270
Cornering light	49
Cross-traffic (intersection assist)	169
Cruise control system	
see Speed regulation systems	145
Cup holders	81
Current consumption	17
D	
Data plans	210
Data protection	307
Date	17
Date, setting	263
Daytime running lights	49
Deactivating passenger's airbag	73
Declarations of conformity	308
DEF (instrument cluster)	14
Demisting (windows)	89
Demo mode	
see Presentation mode	232

Destination from map	221	Easy exit function	63
Details	220	EDL see Electronic differential lock	108
Dimensions	312	EDR	
Dipped headlights	49	Event data recorder (EDR)	305
Directional tread (tyres)	296	Efficiency assist	147
Directory		Electrical system	271
Settings	198	Electricity see Energy	111
<i>see also</i> Contacts	192	Electric motor	
Display		Coolant	269
Cleaning	286	Electric range	227
Distance covered	17	Electric windows	44
Distance warning	158	Malfunction	44, 45
Doors		Electro-mechanical parking brake	99
Child lock	44	Electronic differential lock	109
Courtesy lighting	52	Electronic immobiliser	37
Locking/unlocking manually	35	Electronic stabilisation control	108
Servo-assisted closing/power-close function ..	32	Embedded SIM card	203
Door safelock	36	Emergency assist	170
Downhill assist function	103	Emergency braking function	100
Driver information system	15	Emergency call	193, 212
Drives		Emergency key	37
<i>see</i> Media	242, 246	Emergency running	96
Drive select		Energy	
<i>see</i> Audi drive select	105	Current consumption	17
Drive system		Lowering consumption	97
Audi drive select	105	Energy recovery	96
Driving away	93, 101	Entry/exit lights	51
Driving off-road	103	Environmental tips	
Driving on right/left	51	Leaks	267
Driving program	94, 157	ERA-GLONASS	213
Driving time	17	<i>see also</i> Emergency call	213
Driving tips		ESC	
Driving efficiently	97	<i>see</i> Electronic stabilisation control	108
Driving off-road	103	eSIM	
Driving through water	103	<i>see</i> Embedded SIM card	203
Hills and gradients	102	Event data recorder (EDR)	305
Dust filter		Exclude route	225
<i>see</i> Pollution filter	90	Exit warning	168
DVD drive (media drives)	243	Exterior lighting	49
E		Exterior mirrors	53
E-mail		Folding in (setting)	33
Message options	196	Virtual	55
Settings	196	External voice control	28
Easy entry function	63		
<i>see also</i> Easy exit function	63		

F

Factory settings

- Multi Media Interface 264
- Fastening rings 85
- Fast forward/rewind (media file) 246
- Fast route 217
- Favourites 237
 - Bluetooth 265
 - Navigation 219
 - Telephone 191
 - TV 256
- Ferry transport 106, 111
- File formats (media drives) 252
- Finding entries
 - see* Search function 250
- Fire extinguisher 290
- First-aid kit 290
- Flooded roads, tips for driving 103
- Footwell temperature 90
- Forward gear
 - see* Transmission positions 94
- Four-wheel drive
 - see* quattro 108
- Frequency band
 - see* Waveband 235
- Front cabin (overview) 8
- Front passenger's seat adjustment
 - From rear cabin 63
- Front window
 - see* Windscreen 57
- Functions on demand 206
- Fuses, changing 301

G

- Garage door opener 46
- Glass heating 91
- Glove box 82
- Gradients, driving on 102
- Greeting sound, setting 263

H

- Handbrake
 - see* Electro-mechanical parking brake 99
- Handsfree 185

- Hazard alerts 230
- Hazard warning lights 52
- Head-up display
 - Adjusting brightness 53
 - How to use 26
 - Setting 26
- Headlight range control 49
- Headlights
 - Headlight range control 49
 - Washer system 57
 - Washing 285
- Head restraints
 - Adjusting 66
 - Removing/installing 66
- Heated rear window 89
- Heated steering wheel 89
- Heating 87
- High-visibility vest 290
- High-voltage battery
 - Advanced charging settings 118
 - Audi e-tron charging system (compact) ... 121
 - Charging 112, 115
 - Charging cable for public charging stations .120
 - Charging connections on vehicle 112
 - Charging equipment 119
 - Charging indicator on vehicle 116
 - Charging methods 112
 - Charging time 113
 - Connecting charging cable 115
 - Driver message when charging 119
 - Quick-charging 112
 - Setting charging target 117
 - Setting timers 117
 - Transporting charging equipment 120
- High-voltage system 111
- Hill hold assist 101
- Hills, driving on 102
- Home address 225
- HomeLink
 - see* Garage door opener 46
- Home screen 19
- Horn 8
- Hotspot
 - see* Wi-Fi 209

I

Ignition	
Switching on/off	92
Immobiliser	
<i>see</i> Electronic immobiliser	37
Indicator lamps	
<i>see</i> Warning lamps	9
Inflation pressures	
Tyre pressure loss indicator	280
Tyre pressure monitoring system	281
Tyres	277
Inspection intervals	274
Instrument cluster	14
Changing views	15
Cleaning	286
Motor code	266
On-board computer	17
Operation	15
Personal profile	14
Selecting layout	15
Selecting tabs	15
Service interval display	274
Software information	266
Vehicle functions	16
Version information	266
Instrument lighting	53
Integrated help	20
Intelligent search	
Navigation	217
Interior lights	52
Interior mirror	54
Interior monitor	36
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers)	57
Internet	
<i>see</i> connect	202, 203
Internet radio	
<i>see</i> Online radio	238
Intersection assist	169
Ioniser	89
iPhone	
<i>see</i> Audi music interface	245
ISOFIX (attaching child restraint systems)	77

J

Jack	291, 294
Jacking points	294
Wheel change mode	293
Jump-starting	297

K

Key	
Not detected	93
Key-operated switch for passenger's airbag	73
Key card	
<i>see</i> Audi connect key card	40
Keys	32, 37
Audi connect key	37, 39
Audi connect key card	37, 40
Convenience open/close	45
Emergency key	37
Replacement keys	37
Replacing the battery	39
Safelock mechanism	36
Unlocking/locking	38
Vehicle code	37
Key user	31
Kick-down	95

L

Lane assist	
<i>see</i> Lane departure warning	159
<i>see</i> Lane guidance	159
Lane departure warning	159
Cleaning area around camera	285
Lane guidance	154
Language, setting	263
Laser scanner	135
Cleaning	285
Launch control	95
LED on vehicle charging connection	
<i>see</i> Charging indicator	116
Left-hand traffic	51
Legal information	
Licence periods	265
Software information	265
Software licences	265
Version information	265

Lights	49	Maximum speed	312
Exterior	49	Measurement units, setting	263
Interior	52	Media	242
Right-hand traffic	51	Drives	242
Light sensor/rain sensor		Media centre	247
Headlights	49	Media drives	
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers)	57	Formats supported	252
Load-through hatch	84	Memory card	
Load guard	85	SD card reader (MMI)	242
Locking/unlocking	32	Types/formats supported	252
By remote control	38	Memory function	69
In the lock	35	Memory list	
With convenience key	38	see Favourites	237
With the central locking switch	34	Menu language	
Luggage compartment	82	see Language, setting	263
Cover	84	Messages	195
Extending	84	Mileage recorder	16
Luggage rack		Resetting	16
see Roof carrier	81	Mirrors	
Lumbar support	61, 62	Adjusting exterior mirrors	53
M		Anti-dazzle setting	54
Mailbox	193	Make-up mirrors	56
Main beam headlights		MMI	
Main beam assist	50	see Multi Media Interface	20
Maintenance	309	Mobile network	
Maintenance intervals	274	Connection settings	199
Make-up mirrors	56	Mobile phone	
Malfunction, electric windows	44	see Telephone	185
Manual operation		Mobile phone tray	
Boot lid	43	see Audi phone box	189
Doors	35	Mode 3 charging cable	
Panorama sun roof	46	see Charging cable for public charging sta-	
Map		tions	120
Changing map scale	221	Motor	
Display	223	Power output	312
How to use	222	Motor braking effect	
Using a destination	221	see Recuperation	96
Map preview	220	Motor compartment	
Map update	228	Layout	269
Online	228	Opening/closing bonnet	268
SD card/USB connection	228	Safety information	267
Massage function	62	Storage area	82
Front	63	Motor start system	93
Matrix LED headlights	50	Motorway light	49
Matt paintwork, washing	284	Mountain passes	102
Mounting pin (for changing wheels)	291		

Multi-function steering wheel	Online Owner's Manual	6
Assigning function to button	Online radio	238
Buttons	Online roadside assistance	213
Operation	Online services	
Speech dialogue system	see connect	202, 203
Multi Media Interface	Online system update	264
Menus/symbols	Opening	32
Operation	Blind (sun roof)	45
Switching displays on/off	Bonnet	268
Music	Boot lid	41
see Media	Boot lid with foot gesture	43
Mute	Convenience open	45
myAudi	Panorama sun roof	45
myAudi navigation	Power-operated boot lid	42
	Windows	44
N		
Narrow road sections	Opening/closing	
Navigation	see Unlocking/locking	32, 38
Better route	Operation	
Changing map scale	Head-up display	26
Making a call	Instrument cluster	15
see also Map	Multi-function steering wheel	15
Navigation database	Multi Media Interface	18, 21
Version information	Speech dialogue system	27
Navigation (instrument cluster)	Text entry	24
Neutral	Touch display	18
see Transmission positions	Optional equipment code	312
Night vision assist	Options	
Cleaning camera	Media	250
Notification centre	Navigation	231
Number plate holder	Radio	239
	TV	257
O		
Off-road	Outside noise	97
see Driving off-road	Overtake prevention	158
Office address	Overview diagram (front cabin)	8
see Business address		
OFF (air conditioner)	P	
On-board computer	Paddle levers	
On-board diagnostic system (OBD)	Recuperation settings	96
Online destination	Paint damage	286
see Special destination	Paint number	312
Online map	Panorama sun roof	45
see Satellite map	Closing manually	46
Online media	Convenience open/close	45
	Opening quickly	46
	Park assist	182

Parking aids	172
Cleaning sensors/camera	285
Finding a parking space	180
Park assist	182
Parking system plus	172
Reversing camera	174
Settings	184
Surround view cameras	174
Trailer view	176
Parking and manoeuvring	172
Parking brake	
<i>see</i> Electro-mechanical parking brake	99
Parking lights	50
Parking lock	
<i>see</i> Transmission positions	94
Passenger's seat adjustment	
Front	63
Path descriptions	19
Pause (media file)	246
Pedals	95
Pedestrian detection	142
Performance (motor)	312
Perfume	89, 90
Personal route assist	224
Phone book	
<i>see</i> Contacts	192
Picture format (video)	248, 250
Playback (media)	246
Point of interest search	219
<i>see also</i> Special destination	219
Polishing	286
Pollen filter	
<i>see</i> Pollution filter	90
Pollution filter	90
Power-close function (servo-assisted door closing)	32
Power-operated boot lid	42, 43
Power meter	14, 16
Power sources	80, 245
Power steering	
<i>see</i> Steering	107
Power unit	96
Switching off in an emergency	92
Switching on/off	92
Prayer compass	233
Pre sense	
<i>see</i> Audi pre sense	161
Presentation mode	233
Pyrotechnic components	309
Q	
quattro	108
Selective wheel torque control	109
Quick-charging	112
Quick access buttons	
<i>see</i> Shortcuts	23
R	
Radio	235, 237
Radio text	239
Station list	235
Radio equipment	310
Radio Equipment Directive	308
Radio frequency	
<i>see</i> Waveband	235
Radio transmitter	310
Rail transport	106
Rain sensor/light sensor	
Headlights	49
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers)	57
Range	17
Range display	97
Range mode	97
Range potential	97
Range (electric)	227
Reading lights	52
Rear air conditioner console	
Child lock	44
Rear carrier systems	
Towing mode	130
Rear cross-traffic assist	179
Rear fog light	49
Rear lights	
Washing	285
Rear seats, folding down	84
Rear window heating	89
REAR (air conditioner)	88
Recuperation	17, 96
Releasing charging connector manually	118
Releasing charging unit cover manually	118

Remote control	
Garage door opener	46
Remote control key	32, 37
Convenience open/close	45
LED	39
Replacement keys	37
Replacing the battery	39
Safelock mechanism	36
Unlocking/locking	38
<i>see also</i> Vehicle keys	37
Repair kit	
Tyre Mobility System (tyre repair kit)	291
Repairs	309
Replacement keys	37
Replacement parts	310
Rest recommendation	141
Reverse gear	
<i>see</i> Transmission positions	94
Reversible floor covering	86
Reversing camera	174
Rewind (media file)	246
Rims	278
Washing	286
Roof	
<i>see</i> Panorama sun roof	45
Roof carrier	81
Roof load	81
Route guidance	
Stopping	222
<i>see also</i> Navigation	216
Route planner (e-tron)	222
Running in	
New brake pads	98
New tyres	275
S	
Safelock mechanism	36
Satellite map	227
Scrapage	309
Screen	
<i>see</i> Touch display	18
Screwdriver	291
SD card reader (MMI)	242
Search areas (special destination)	219
Search function	
Media	250
Radio	237
<i>see also</i> Intelligent search	217
Seat belts	66
Cleaning	286
Securing child restraint system	79
Seat heating	89
Sea transport	111
Seats	
Adjusting	61
Adjusting front seats	62
Cleaning	287
Folding down	84
Front passenger's seat adjustment	63
Head restraints	65
Massage function	62
Memory function	69
Resetting position	63
Storing seat profile	69
Seat ventilation	89
Selector lever	94
Self-help	290
Self-learning navigation	
<i>see</i> Personal route assist	224
Sensor view	135
Service interval display	274
Service Schedule (digital)	6
Servo-assisted closing (doors)	32
Setting charging target	117
Settings	263
Announcements and sounds	263
Bluetooth	264
Date and time	263
Language	263
Measurement units	263
Media	251
Navigation	232
Radio	240
Sound	263
Time zone	263
TV	258
Wi-Fi hotspot	209
Setup wizard	20
Shop	206
Shortcuts	23
Shuffle	248

Side assist	166	Steering wheel heating	89
Cleaning sensors	285	Stopover (navigation)	221
Side lights	49	Storage area in motor compartment	82
SIM card	203	Storage compartments	82
SIM card reader	188, 203	Streaming <i>see</i> Online media	244
Smartphone		Stretch net	82, 85
Wireless charging	189	Subtitles (DVD)	250
<i>see also</i> Telephone	185	Sun blind Rear window/rear doors	57
SMS		<i>see also</i> Blind (sun roof)	45
<i>see</i> Text messages	195	Sun roof <i>see</i> Panorama sun roof	45
Snow chains	279	Sun visors	56
Socket	80	Surround view cameras	174
Software		Suspension	106
Update	264	Audi drive select	106
Software information		Suspension control	106
Legal information	265	Swerve assist	164
Software version (MMI)		Switching between calls	194
Version information	265	Symbols Charging equipment	119
Sound adjustment	263	Navigation	222
Source overview	246	Traffic	229
Spare wheel		<i>see also</i> Warning lamps	9
<i>see</i> Collapsible spare wheel	296	SYNC (air conditioner)	88
Special destination	219	System settings	263
Speech dialogue system	27		
How to use	27		
Speed limit display			
<i>see</i> Traffic sign recognition	139		
Speed limiter			
<i>see</i> Speed regulation systems	145		
Speed limits			
<i>see</i> Traffic sign recognition	139		
Speedometer	14	Tailgate <i>see</i> Boot lid	41
Speed regulation systems	145	Technical changes	309
Speed warning function	139	Technical data	312
Starting on a hill		Telephone	185
<i>see</i> Hill hold assist	101	Answering/ending calls	194
Starting with jump leads	297	Audi phone box	189
Station memory		Connecting a mobile phone	186
<i>see</i> Favourites	237	Connecting a second phone	187
Steering	107	Dialling a number	193
Audi drive select	105	Disconnecting a mobile phone	189
Steering lock	92, 107	Options during a call	194
Steering wheel		Playing music	243
Electric adjustment	65	Settings	198
Manual adjustment	64	SIM card	188
<i>see also</i> Multi-function steering wheel	15	Television <i>see</i> TV	255

Temperature display (outside temperature)	16	Transmission positions	94
Temperature setting	88	Turn-off assist	164
Text entry	24	Turning light	49
Text messages		Turn signals	50
Message options	195	TV	255
Settings	195	Type plate	312
Throttle		Tyres	275, 291
see Accelerator	95	Changing	293
Tightening torque (wheel bolts)	296	Directional tread	296
Timers (high-voltage battery)	117	Inflation pressure	277
Time, setting	263	Loose wheel warning	278
TMC		Low-profile tyres	280
see Traffic information	229	Service life	276
Tone (sound)		Tyre pressure loss indicator	280
see Sound adjustment	263	Tyre pressure monitoring system	281
Tools	291	Tyre pressure (towing a trailer)	127
Top tether anchorage (securing a child restraint system)	78	Wear indicator	276
Torque			
Motor	312		
Wheel bolts	296		
Touch display			
Adjusting feedback	20	Unlocking/locking	
Operation	18	By remote control	38
Tow-away protection	36	In the lock	35
Tow-starting	298	With convenience key	38
Towing	127	With the Audi connect key	40
Air suspension	127	With the Audi connect key card	40
Rear carrier systems	130	Update (software)	264
Removable towing bracket	130	Usage tips	20
Trailer weight	127, 312	USB	
Towing away	298	Adapter	189
Towline anchorage	299	Connecting a mobile phone	186
TPMS		USB charging socket	80
Tyre pressure loss indicator	280	USB stick	
Tyre pressure monitoring system	281	see Audi music interface	245
Warning lamp	283		
Traction control system	109		
Traffic information	229, 230		
Traffic jam assist			
see Adaptive cruise assist	150		
Traffic sign recognition	139		
Trailer mode			
Trailer mode (navigation)	233		
Trailer stabilisation	129		
Trailer view	176		

Virtual exterior mirrors	55	De-icing windows	286
Voice control function		Defrosting windows	89
External	28	Rear window heating	89
Volume of announcements, setting	263	Seat heating	89
Volume, adjusting	29	Snow chains	279
W		Steering wheel heating	89
Wall-holder clip	126	Tyres	279
Warning lamps	9	Vehicle battery (12 Volt)	272
Warning triangle	290	Washing the vehicle	284
Washing	284	Windscreen washer system	273
Washing ornamental trim/mouldings	286	Winter tyres	279
Waveband	235	Wiper blades	58
Waxing	286	Wiper blades, changing	59
Weights	312	Wireless charging	
Wheel bolts	278	Audi phone box	189
Changing wheel(s)	293		
Wheel imbalance	276		
Wheels	275		
Changing	293		
Loose wheel warning	278		
Tyre pressure loss indicator	280		
Tyre pressure monitoring system	281		
Washing	286		
Wi-Fi			
Online media	244		
Settings	209		
Using hotspot	205		
Wild animal detection	142		
Window blind			
<i>see</i> Blind (sun roof)	45		
Windows			
Child lock	44		
Cleaning/de-icing	286		
Convenience open/close	45		
Defrosting	89		
Electric windows	44		
Opening/closing	44		
Windscreen			
Washing	57		
Windscreen washer system	57, 273		
Container capacity	312		
Windscreen wipers	57		
Winter conditions			
Auxiliary air conditioner	90		
Cooling system	269		

AUDI AG works continuously to develop and further improve all products and models. AUDI AG reserves the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. The Owner's Manual is based on the information available at the time of printing. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations or descriptions in this publication.

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right

to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85045 Ingolstadt, Germany

© 2018 AUDI AG



For the sake of the environment

This environmentally friendly paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

**Owner's Manual
Englisch 10.2018
4KE012720AB**



4KE012720AB

www.audi.com